



Marie de France

{2016~4}

GigaFrench

God, abortion and climate change



FLYING PUBLISHER

GIGA
FRENCH

Marie de France

GigaFrench

2016~4 Edition

This PDF is the 4th edition of *GigaFrench 2016*, presenting Level 1–7. More levels will be published in October 2016. For future updates, please check www.GigaFrench.com/updates.

You'll find many xxx in this manual. These are links to future chapters.

Marie de France

GigaFrench

God, abortion and climate change

2016~4 Edition

Flying Publisher

Cover Design:

Oliver Barbagallo – Milan

Illustration:

N. Allan – New York

Copy-Editing:

N.N. – Boston

Disclaimer

Language and grammar is an ever-changing field. The publishers and the author of *GigaFrench* have made every effort to provide information that is accurate and complete as of the date of publication. However, in view of the rapid changes occurring in language teaching, as well as the possibility of human error, this guide may contain technical inaccuracies, typographical or other errors. The information contained herein is provided “as is” and without warranty of any kind. The contributors to this book, including Flying Publisher and the author, cannot be held responsible for any errors or omissions or for results obtained from the use of information contained herein.

This work is protected by copyright both as a whole and in part.

© 2016 by Flying Publisher & MDF

ISBN: 978-3-924774-97-4

Published on July 14, 2016

Updated (page 44) on August 11, 2016

Welcome

GigaFrench is a free multimedia fast track into the heart of French and the French people. The 2016 Edition offers a refreshingly new approach to one of the most beautiful languages in the world.

To see if you qualify for *GigaFrench*, please check

- your past (page 6)
- your present (page 8)
- your future (page 9)

After successful admission, start on page 29. Most importantly, follow the audio download instructions on page 34 – you cannot study *GigaFrench* without the audio files being on your smartphone! Then continue with the ‘Turbo Master Class’ on page 48, a unique and unprecedented overview of French grammar and a central piece to *GigaFrench*’s total immersion strategy.

Welcome to France, welcome to French.

Marie de France

27 Messidor 224 – 14 July 2016

Admission

Depending on your time and previous knowledge, you can choose between a short overview and full immersion:

1. If you learned French earlier in life and if your time is limited, go through the main text at the beginning of each Level (page 29, 153, 233, 305, 349, 417, 465 and 483) and listen to the audio until you understand *every single word*.
2. If you have time for an in-depth discovery of the French language, go through each level until the end.

Before moving ahead, please check if you qualify for *GigaFrench*:

Admission: Your Past

The first condition for using *GigaFrench* is your past language experience. *GigaFrench* will be invaluable for you if...

1. You remember French from school (go directly to page 8).

GigaFrench will complete your knowledge with a vast range of subjects (God, climate change, abortion, junk food, etc.). New and powerful vocabulary will enable you to have passionate discussions with friends, family and colleagues.

2. You learned French many years ago but feel that you have forgotten almost everything.

Things we've learned in the past never disappear. They leave traces in your brain you can quickly reactivate. *GigaFrench* will help you retrieve your past knowledge, explaining everything from the beginning, though

progressing at a pace that is never boring. If you feel this is true for you, procede to 'Your Present', page 8.

3. You have never learned French before but you are Spanish, Portuguese or Italian or you are fluent in one of these languages.

French is a Romance language that descended primarily from Vulgar Latin – as did Spanish, Portuguese, Italian and Rumanian. The differences between these languages are certainly important, but the similarities are more important yet. For example, if you are familiar with Spanish, Portuguese or Italian, you know or can guess the meaning of more than 7,000 French words. Grammar, too, has more similarities than differences. In other words: *GigaFrench*'s fast track approach will suit your needs and help you make quick progress. If you feel this is true for you, procede to 'Your Present'.

4. You have never learned French before but you have learned English (because you are Chinese, Indian, Russian, Indonesian, Egyptian, etc.) and you are fluent in English.

As you have become fluent in English over the years, you know about the time scales, difficulties and pitfalls of learning a second or third language. With *GigaFrench*'s rationale and economic approach of French words and grammar, you will make extensive use of the language skills you have developed throughout your life.

Don't use *GigaFrench* if you are a native English speaker and have never learned another language. *GigaFrench*'s fast-track grammar presentation is too fast for you. We recommend you to use first other language manuals and come back later.

Admission: Your Present

If you sailed through Admission: Your Past, now consider if YOUR current objectives and preferences – what and how you want to learn – agree with OUR objectives and preferences and what we want to teach you. We certainly agree that a successful language method has to teach the four competences **reading, listening, speaking, and writing**. The only question is: Should these four skills be considered equal when starting a new language or should we prioritize one over the other?

If you are a pure-blood extrovert and prioritize talking and entertaining more than anything else in the world, think twice about following *GigaFrench*. We'll certainly ask you one day to start speaking, but we have good reasons to postpone 'oral language production' for a few weeks or months. Even worse, over the coming months, we'll prescribe you a few hundred lonely study hours with books and tablets. If you don't appreciate solitary study, *GigaFrench* may not be the right method for you. We are sorry if you have to leave us so early... ☹

If reading doesn't scare you, let us briefly explain why *GigaFrench* prioritizes reading. Of all language skills, **reading** is the crucial skill because everything else springs from that – good writing is a direct result of intense reading, listening can be outsourced to almost effortless exercises (see page 198), and correct speaking is the consequence of intense reading and listening. *GigaFrench's* focus is therefore on accelerating your transformation from a French illiterate to a French "scholar". Over the coming months, we want you to start reading newspapers, essays, novels and cartoons.

Our ultimate goal is to put you into an orbit of independent reading as quickly as possible. Whatever your favourite subject is – biology, medicine, earth sciences, literature, economics, law, architecture, history, psychology, sociology,

or any other topic – you’ll be able to read *any* text about it within months.

In parallel to reading, we’ll teach you ‘power listening’, an unconventional exercise which is necessary because speech produces 3 and more words per second (for a preview of this topic, see page 34). Our short-time goal is nothing else than a 100% comprehension of the articles we present to you and a perfect understanding of every single word. Only later will we ask you to start cautiously uttering your first French words. Please believe me, patience in speaking is paramount – the longer you wait, the Frenchier your accent will be (see page 311). Finally, we will request you one day to start writing in French, but that’s still months away.

In summary, using *GigaFrench* depends on your answer to the question: *To read or not to read*. If you feel uncomfortable with lots of reading, don’t continue. If you agree, go ahead to “Admission 3: Your Future”.

Admission: Your Future

A marked preference for reading and previous exposure to French (or, alternatively, being Italian, Spanish or Portuguese; or having excelled at studying other languages) are the first two conditions for using *GigaFrench*. The third condition is long-term commitment. You cannot learn any language if you don’t allocate a sufficient amount of time to your project and if you cannot guarantee daily learning. Consider one to two hours per day the default study time and 30 minutes the absolute minimum. If you are young and have plenty of time, five hours per day are manageable and, of course, our schedule of choice. Consider 7 study days/week the default value and 5 days/week mandatory. Depending on your previous knowledge and on which languages you have already learned during your life, allocate a total study time of 500 to 1000 hours (find more details on page 161).

If you are a busy professional and don't have even 30 minutes per day, change your priorities and give up on other activities. If you can't, don't start *GigaFrench*.

In summary, *GigaFrench* is for dedicated students. Your enthusiasm for exploring new worlds will finally meet up with efficiency. If you devote at least 30 to 60 minutes daily to serious study sessions, *GigaFrench* will be yours in months.

Admission

Admission: Your Past 6

Admission: Your Present 8

Admission: Your Future 9

1 God 29

Words 31

1.1 Power Listening 34

1.1.1 Rule #1: 30 minutes 34

1.1.2 Rule #2: AB Player 34

1.1.3 Background 35

1.1.4 Rule #3: Cutting 36

1.1.5 Details 39

1.1.6 Rule #4: Champagne 42

1.1.7 The benefits of Power Listening 44

1.1.8 Future Research 44

1.2 Turbo Master Class (1) 48

1.2.1 Peanuts 49

1.2.2 Hardcore French 59

1.2.3 Action words 66

1.3 First steps 72

1.4 Avoir 76

1.4.1 Avoir: Présent (*present tense*) 76

1.4.2 All you can have... 77

1.4.3 Action word timeline 79

1.4.4 Avoir: Imparfait (*imperfect tense*) 80

- 1.4.5 Avoir: Futur (*future tense*) 81
- 1.4.6 Avoir: Présent conditionnel (*hypothetical* “*what if*”) 83
- 1.4.7 Avoir: Subjonctif présent (present subjunctive tense) 84
- 1.4.8 Summary 85
- 1.4.9 Avoir (table) 86
- 1.5 Toolbox 88
- 1.6 Intermezzo 89
 - 1.6.1 ‘on’ (1) 89
 - 1.6.2 Stranger vs. Family (1) 90
- 1.7 Avoir: Composed tenses 90
 - 1.7.1 Introduction 90
 - 1.7.2 Faire to do/make 94
 - 1.7.3 Expressions with faire 97
 - 1.7.4 Past participles: how to get them 98
 - 1.7.5 Forty-nine action words 100
 - 1.7.6 eu 102
 - 1.7.7 Toolbox 2 107
- 1.8 Full timeline 107
- 1.9 Présent 108
- 1.10 Preview of Group 1 action words 110
- 1.11 Negation (I) 111
- 1.12 Dessert 113
- 1.13 Summary + Outlook 113
- 1.14 Word classes 115

- 1.15 Adjectives and Nouns 116
 - 1.15.1 Possessive adjectives 118
 - 1.15.2 Adjectives 119
 - 1.15.3 Nouns 121
- 1.16 Articles 122
 - 1.16.1 Definite article 122
 - 1.16.2 Indefinite article 124
 - 1.16.3 Partitive article 125
 - 1.16.4 Pronunciation Pitfalls 126
- 1.17 Outlook: Nouns and Adjectives 127
- 1.18 Jokers 127
 - 1.18.1 Adverbs 128
 - 1.18.2 Conjunctions 129
 - 1.18.3 Prepositions 131
 - 1.18.4 Jokers 1-21 133
- 1.19 Pronouns 135
 - 1.19.1 Relative pronouns: Qui & Que 137
- 1.20 Bits and Pieces 140
 - 1.20.1 One-word sentences 140
 - 1.20.2 Telling the hour 140
 - 1.20.3 Cardinals and Ordinals 141
 - 1.20.4 dont 141
 - 1.20.5 Silent Letters (1) 141
 - 1.20.6 Toolbox 3 143

1.21 Reading the News 143

1.21.1 Words 145

1.22 Bonjour 146

1.23 Free-Climbing 147

2 Climate Change 153

Words 156

2.1 Power Listening 159

2.2 Preview 160

2.3 Master Class (2) 161

2.3.1 Different degrees of knowing 161

2.3.2 How long does it take? 162

2.3.3 Shame or not shame 164

2.3.4 Further reading 164

2.4 être *to be* (Introduction) 164

2.4.1 Présent 166

2.4.2 Il est / Elle est 166

2.4.3 C'est / Ce sont 166

2.5 The Être Biotope 167

2.6 Être Timeline 172

2.6.1 Être: Imparfait (*imperfect tense*) 172

2.6.2 Être: Futur (*future tense*) 173

2.6.3 Être: Présent conditionnel 175

2.6.4 Être: Subjonctif présent 176

2.6.5 Être: Passé simple 176

2.6.6 Summary 177

- 2.6.7 Être (table) 179
- 2.7 Composed tenses with être 180
 - 2.7.1 Overview 180
 - 2.7.2 Sexual connotation 183
 - 2.7.3 Être: Composed Tenses 184
- 2.8 Passé composé versus imparfait 184
- 2.9 Forty-nine action words (2) 186
- 2.10 Irregular Future Stems (1) 192
- 2.11 'on' (2) 193
- 2.12 Negation (2) 194
- 2.13 Y avoir: There is... 196
- 2.14 Master Class (3) 198
- 2.15 Articles (2) 199
- 2.16 Nouns (2) 200
 - 2.16.1 Nationalities and languages 200
 - 2.16.2 Feminine nouns 203
 - 2.16.3 -s, -x, or -z 207
 - 2.16.4 -eau, -eu, or -au 207
- 2.17 Adjectives (2) 209
 - 2.17.1 Adjectives ending with a consonant 209
 - 2.17.2 Adjectives ending in -e 211
 - 2.17.3 Irregular adjectives: Categories 212
 - 2.17.4 Irregular plural of adjectives 212
- 2.18 Jokers (2) 213
 - 2.18.1 The next 21 jokers 213
 - 2.18.2 Adverbs (2) 214

- 2.18.3 Prepositions (2) 215
 - 2.18.4 The word “de” 216
 - 2.19 Numbers 13-79 218
 - 2.20 Asking a question 219
 - 2.20.1 Raise the pitch 219
 - 2.20.2 Est-ce que 220
 - 2.20.3 Inversion 220
 - 2.21 Bits and Pieces 221
 - 2.21.1 Question words 221
 - 2.21.2 Magic Words 222
 - 2.21.3 Silent letters (2) 223
 - 2.21.4 Toolbox 4 223
 - 2.21.5 Social Vocabulary 225
 - 2.22 Reading the News 225
-
- 3 Abortion 233
 - Words 236
 - 3.1 Power Listening 239
 - 3.2 Preview 240
 - 3.3 Master Class (4) 240
 - 3.4 Faire 242
 - 3.4.1 Expressions with faire (2) 244
 - 3.5 Subjonctif 245
 - 3.6 Action words, Group 1: Petting 246
 - 3.6.1 Présent 247
 - 3.6.2 Imparfait 248

- 3.6.3 Futur 249
- 3.6.4 Conditionnel présent 250
- 3.6.5 Subjonctif présent 251
- 3.6.6 Passé simple 254
- 3.6.7 Subjonctif imparfait 255
- 3.6.8 24 Endings 261
- 3.6.9 Caresser: simple tenses 262
- 3.6.10 Caresser: composed tenses 263
- 3.6.11 Most frequent Group 1 action words 264
- 3.6.12 Mental acrobatics 264
- 3.7 Forty-nine action words (3) 265
- 3.8 Irregular Future Stems (2) 268
- 3.9 Importance of the Présent 269
- 3.10 Présent: Ten Action Words (1) 269
- 3.11 Master Class (5) 272
- 3.12 Stranger vs. Family (2) 275
 - 3.12.1 Adjectives 275
 - 3.12.2 Past Participles 275
- 3.13 Possessive adjectives 276
 - 3.13.1 Singular 276
 - 3.13.2 Plural 278
 - 3.13.3 Exception 278
- 3.14 Personal pronouns 279
 - 3.14.1 Personal subject pronouns 279
 - 3.14.2 Personal object pronouns 280
- 3.15 Nouns (3) 286

- 3.15.1 Masculine nouns 286
 - 3.15.2 Plural: -ou, -al, -ail 289
 - 3.16 Adjectives (3) 290
 - 3.17 Jokers (3) 292
 - 3.17.1 The next 21 Jokers 292
 - 3.17.2 Adverbs (3) 293
 - 3.18 Numbers 80-100 294
 - 3.19 Bits and Pieces 296
 - 3.19.1 Days of the Week 296
 - 3.19.2 Months of the Year 296
 - 3.19.3 Silent letters (3) 297
 - 3.20 Reading the News 298
-
- 4 Junk Food 305
 - Words 307
 - 4.1 Power Listening 310
 - 4.2 Preview 311
 - 4.3 Master Class (6) 311
 - 4.4 Aller 313
 - 4.5 Aller – Composed tenses 314
 - 4.6 Futur Proche 315
 - 4.7 Subjonctif (2) 316
 - 4.8 Action words, Group 1 316
 - 4.9 Group 3, Type 1 317
 - 4.9.1 Dormir 320

- 4.10 Forty-nine action words (4) 321
- 4.11 Imperative: Orders and advice 324
- 4.12 Participé présent & Gérondif 325
- 4.13 Présent: Ten Action Words (2) 327
- 4.14 y & en 331
 - 4.14.1 y 331
 - 4.14.2 en 332
- 4.15 Nouns (4) 334
 - 4.15.1 Imports 334
 - 4.15.2 Irregulars 334
- 4.16 Adjectives (4) 335
 - 4.16.1 –ain, –ein 335
 - 4.16.2 –on, –en 336
 - 4.16.3 Vieux & beau 337
- 4.17 Jokers (4) 338
 - 4.17.1 The next 21 Jokers 338
 - 4.17.2 Adverbs 339
 - 4.17.3 Prepositions 341
- 4.18 Bits and Pieces 341
 - 4.18.1 Indefinite pronouns 341
 - 4.18.2 Capitalization 343
 - 4.18.3 Silent letters (4) 343
- 4.19 Reading the News 343

5 « Aesthetic » Medicine 349

Words 353

5.1 Power Listening 357

5.2 Preview 358

5.3 Venir 359

5.4 Subjonctif (3) 362

5.5 Action words, Group 2 362

5.5.1 Présent 363

5.5.2 Imparfait 363

5.5.3 Futur 364

5.5.4 Conditionnel présent 365

5.5.5 Subjonctif présent 366

5.5.6 Passé simple 367

5.5.7 Agir: simple tenses 368

5.5.8 Agir: composed tenses 369

5.5.9 Group 2: Frequent action words 370

5.6 Pronominal Action Words 372

5.6.1 Se caresser 374

5.6.2 Caresser: composed tenses 375

5.6.3 Negation 376

5.6.4 Imperative 376

5.6.5 Body parts 376

5.6.6 Reflexive PAWs 377

5.6.7 Reciprocal PAWs 377

5.6.8 Idiomatic PAWs 378

5.6.9 S'envoyer en l'air 379

- 5.7 Forty-nine action words (5) 380
- 5.8 Action Word + Action Word (1) 383
 - 5.8.1 No preposition 384
 - 5.8.2 de 385
 - 5.8.3 à 386
- 5.9 Participé présent (2) : Pitfalls 387
- 5.10 Sequence of Tenses 388
- 5.11 Présent: Ten Action Words (3) 390
- 5.12 If...then 392
- 5.13 Double Pronouns 393
 - 5.13.1 Give it to me 393
 - 5.13.2 y 395
 - 5.13.3 en 397
- 5.14 Pronouns and Impératif 397
- 5.15 dont 399
 - 5.15.1 Action word + *de* + *noun* 399
 - 5.15.2 Adjectif + *de* + *noun* 401
- 5.16 Adjectives (5) 402
 - 5.16.1 -eux 402
 - 5.16.2 -eur 403
- 5.17 Jokers 404
 - 5.17.1 The next 21 404
 - 5.17.2 Adverbs (5) 405
 - 5.17.3 Prepositions 405
- 5.18 Bits and Pieces 406
 - 5.18.1 Emphasis 406

5.18.2 Ordinal Numbers (1) 408

5.18.3 Silent letters (5) 410

5.19 Reading the News 410

6 Tourism 417

Words 420

6.1 Power Listening 423

6.2 Preview 424

6.3 Vouloir *to want* 425

6.4 Group 3: Prendre 426

6.5 Subjonctif (4) 429

6.6 Action Word + Action Word (2) 430

6.6.1 No preposition 430

6.6.2 de 430

6.6.3 à 431

6.7 Présent: Ten Action Words (4) 431

6.8 Past Participle 433

6.8.1 Past participles as adjectives 435

6.8.2 Direct object pronouns 435

6.8.3 que 437

6.9 Jokers 438

6.9.1 The next 21 Jokers 438

6.10 Adjectives (6) 439

6.11 Tout 440

6.11.1 Tout: pronoun 440

- 6.11.2 Tout: adjective 440
 - 6.11.3 Tout: adverb 442
 - 6.12 Possessive pronouns 443
 - 6.13 Quel 445
 - 6.14 Lequel, laquelle 446
 - 6.14.1 Lequel as an interrogative pronoun 446
 - 6.14.2 Lequel as a relative pronoun 447
 - 6.15 Celui – celle | ceux – celles 449
 - 6.16 h muet vs. h aspiré 451
 - 6.17 Comparisons and Superlatives 454
 - 6.18 Silent letters (6) 455
- 7 Nobel for Snowden 465
- Words 469
 - 7.1 Power Listening 471
 - 7.2 Preview 472
 - 7.3 Dire 473
 - 7.4 Pouvoir 474
 - 7.5 Falloir 475
 - 7.6 Group 3: Ouvrir 476
 - 7.7 Subjonctif (5) 478
 - 7.8 Irregular Future Stems (3) 478
 - 7.9 Action Word + Action Word (3) 481
 - 7.9.1 No preposition 481
 - 7.9.2 de 481

7.9.3 à 482

8 Brexit 483

Words 485

8.1 Power Listening 487

9 The Future 489

10 Appendix 491

10.1 Savoir 493

10.2 Voir 494

10.3 Devoir 495

10.4 Group 3: Attendre 496

10.5 Group 1: Sucer 497

10.6 S'en aller 498

10.7 Mettre 499

10.8 Rire 500

10.9 Group 3: Recevoir 501

10.10 Group 1: Manger 502

10.11 Vivre 505

10.12 Mourir 506

10.13 Group 1: Mener 507

10.14 Croire 510

10.15 Courir 511

- 10.16 Se Taire 512
- 10.17 Group 1: Préférer 513
- 10.18 Battre 518
- 10.19 Suivre 519
- 10.20 Group 1: Appeler 520
- 10.21 Boire 522
- 10.22 Naître 523
- 10.23 Group 1: Jeter 524
- 10.24 Connaître 526
- 10.25 Écrire 527
- 10.26 Group 1: Acheter 528
- 10.27 Lire 530
- 10.28 Conduire 531
- 10.29 Group 1: Payer 532
- 10.30 Valoir 535
- 10.31 Conclure 536
- 10.32 Group 1: Envoyer 537
- 10.33 Craindre 540
- 10.34 Plaire 541
- 10.35 Feminine nouns ending in -ion 542
- 10.36 Masculine nouns ending in -ism 546

Pronunciation rules for word endings

{AUDIO}

1. ə or mute	-e	-ois
2. e	-é	-oix
	-és	-oie
	-ée	-oit
	-ées	12. œr
	-er (verb)	-eurs
	-ez	13. ɛr
	-ai (verb)	-ère
3. ɛ	è	-air
	ê	-aire
	-ais	-airs
	-ait	14. ǎ
	-aient	-an
	-aie	-en
	-aies	-ant
4. ɥ	-u	-ants
	-us	-ent
	-ue	-ents
	-ues	-and
5. o	-au	-ands
	-aux	-end
	-eau	-ends
	-eaux	15. ɔ̃
6. u	-ou	-on
	-oup	-om
	-oups	-ons
	-out	-ond
	-ous	-ont
7. ø	-eu	16. jɔ̃
	-eux	-ion
	-eue	-ions
	-eues	17. ě
8. i	-ie	-un
9. ɥi	-ui	-in
10. ø or œ	eu, œu	-ain
11. wa	-oi	-ein
		19. jœ̃
		-ien
		-iens
		-ient
		20. uœ̃
		-uin

1 God



Copyright © 2016 N. Allan – Paris

2016~4 Edition

{ GigaFrench.com/level01 } **Dieu**

| Dieu existe-t-il ? Inégalités, injustices, violences, tortures, viols, meurtres, guerres, génocides, la shoah, l'esclavage... Impardonnable, n'est-ce pas ? On vous dira que Dieu se planque pour mettre les hommes à l'épreuve et les amener à choisir entre le bien et le mal. En tout cas, si moi je vous jouais des tours pareils, vous me traiteriez de sadique !

Regardez l'histoire de l'humanité et les innombrables crimes commis au nom de Dieu ! Et regardez le présent : des États qui persécutent au nom d'un Dieu, torturent et tuent au nom d'un Dieu, et refusent aux femmes le droit d'avorter, toujours au nom d'un Dieu.

Pauvre Dieu, nom de Dieu, aurait-il tout foiré ? Souhaitons-lui – à ce petit Dieu qui ne serait qu'un pauvre diable – de ne pas exister car nous le jugerions pour crimes contre l'Humanité. Nous avons guillotiné Louis XVI pour moins que cela.

Does God exist? Inequality, injustice, violence, torture, rape, murder, war, genocide, the Holocaust, slavery.. Unpardonable, isn't it? People will tell you that God hides to put men to the test and get them to choose between good and evil. In any case, if I played those tricks on you, you would call me a sadist.

Look at the history of humanity and the countless crimes committed in the name of God! And look at the present: States that persecute in the name of a God, torture and kill in the name of a God, and deny women the right to abortion, always in the name of a God.

Poor God, bloody hell, would he have screwed it up all? Let's wish him – this little God who would just be a poor devil – not to exist because we would put him on trial for crimes against humanity. We guillotined Louis XVI for less than that.

Words

{AUDIO}

le dieu	god	le bien	the good
exister	to exist	et	and
existe-t-il?	does he exist?	le mal	the evil
une inégalité	disparity	en tout cas	in any case
une injustice	injustice	si	if
la violence	violence	si moi je	if I (<i>stressed</i>)
la torture	torture	jouer	to play
le viol	rape	jouer des tours	to play tricks
le meurtre	murder	si je vous jouais	if I played tricks
la guerre	war	des tours	on you
le génocide	genocide	pareil	such, like that
la shoah	holocaust	me	me
l'esclavage <i>m.</i>	slavery	traiter de	to call
impardonnable	unpardonable	vous me	you would call
n'est-ce pas?	isn't it?	traiteriez de	me
		le sadique	sadist
on	here: people	regarder	to look at
vous	you	regardez !	look!
on vous dira	people will tell you	une histoire	history, story
que	that	de	of
se planquer	to hide	l'humanité <i>f.</i>	humanity
<i>fam.</i>		innombrable	countless
pour	in order to, to	le crime	crime
mettre à	to put to the test	commis	committed
l'épreuve		au nom de	in the name of
un homme	man	le présent	present
les hommes	here: people	un État	state
les	here: them	qui	who
amener	here: to get	persécuter	to persecute
à	here: to	torturer	to torture
choisir	to choose	refuser	to deny
entre	between	la femme	woman

Further reading

- Moralistic gods, supernatural punishment and the expansion of human sociality. *Nature* 2016.
<http://www.nature.com/nature/journal/v530/n7590/full/nature16980.html> – accessed 18 March 2016.
- Why big societies need big gods. *Science Magazine* 2015.
<http://news.sciencemag.org/archaeology/2015/08/feature-why-big-societies-need-big-gods> – accessed 18 March 2016.
- Complex societies evolved without belief in all-powerful deity. *Nature* 2015.
<http://www.nature.com/news/complex-societies-evolved-without-belief-in-all-powerful-deity-1.17040> – accessed 18 March 2016

If you just want to expand your French vocabulary, read the next section on ‘Power Listening’ and go straight ahead to the next level and find a text about climate change (see page 153). This is *GigaFrench light*. If you are more serious about learning French, go through the following pages. Again, listen to the audios until you can discern every single word and you know the examples and dialogues by heart. Burn the sentences into your brain. Being at ease with hundreds of sentences will soon make French feel strangely familiar to you...

1.1 Power Listening

Have you ever studied French in school, but never lived in France? Then you know that 3 or 5 years of school lessons are not enough to understand French people in real life.

We now propose a radically different experience. If you follow our advice, you'll understand the MP3 audio files (just listening, without reading the text) of the articles about God, climate change (page 153), abortion (233), junk food (305), 'aesthetic' medicine (349), tourisme (417), Edward Snowden (465) and Brexit (483) in less than a month. (Download the *GigaFrench* MP3 audio files from www.gigafrench.com/download.) We will help you conquer, perhaps for the first time in your life, a French "island of total understanding". From there on out, exploring further territories of understanding will be smooth sailing.

If you have never studied French, follow our advice anyway. It will take you a few more weeks, but in less than two months, you'll understand all *GigaFrench* texts, too.

1.1.1 Rule #1: 30 minutes

Learning a foreign language is a rigorous daily exercise, not unlike going to the gym. You will need at least 30 minutes to devote to *GigaFrench*, 30 minutes every day, five days a week. If you don't have 30 minutes a day, it will be almost impossible to learn French, or any other language for that matter.

1.1.2 Rule #2: AB Player

You'll need to install on your smartphone a so-called *AB Player*. With the *AB Player*, you'll cut a *GigaFrench* audio file into portions of 2, 3 or 4 seconds and listen to these portions 5, 10 or even 15 or 20 times (examples: [slow audio](#), [normal audio](#)). While listening, you will read the French text

and check constantly the English translation (see page 36 for a detailed description).

Install one of these AB repeat player on your mobile device:

- Google Android: **AB Repeat Player**
www.hiv.net/abandroid
- Apple IOS: **Simple A-B Repeat**
www.hiv.net/abios

The *AB Repeat Player* for Android smartphones is superior to the Simple A-B Repeat for iPhone. If you have an iPhone, try and arrange for an Android phone (even used and old).

The *Repeat Player* is essential for working with the *GigaFrench* audio files that you'll download from <http://www.gigafrench.com/download>. Without these audios and without the *Repeat Player* you can't fully exploit the potential of *GigaFrench*. ☺

1.1.3 Background

Before starting *GigaFrench's* Power Listening, consider a fundamental point of language learning: **Listening is harder than reading**. The reason is speed. When you listen to a native French speaker, you'll hear three or more words per second. If there is only one key word you don't know, the sentence will remain opaque and unintelligible forever. All you'll see are the backlights of the 'sentence-train', without time for a second guess and nobody giving you additional clues. You'll never catch that train again.

On the contrary, when you read your first French articles you can stop the train at any time and linger on single words until you control, guess or remember their meaning (one second, five seconds, 10 seconds – at your speed). Furthermore, after studying a text a few times, you'll also dispose of some subtle clues to understanding, for example the number of letters in a

word, the position on the page, the vicinity of other words, etc. The consequence: while an approximate knowledge of French words is sufficient for reading, it is not sufficient for listening. Listening requires a 100% knowledge of all words.

You'll soon learn that perfect comprehension of speech requires more than just a few listening rounds. Don't be surprised if you need to listen to an article 10, 20 or even 50 times – today, tomorrow, next week – until you can distinguish **every single word!** This intense repetition is perfectly normal for anyone who wants to get the best results. If you are curious to know more, find details on page 161.

1.1.4 Rule #3: Cutting

Power Listening consists of cutting an audio file into portions of 2, 3 or 4 seconds and listening to these portions 5, 10 or even 15 or 20 times (examples: [slow audio](#), [normal audio](#)). As you listen, read the French text and check the English translation constantly. In this way you'll be able to:

1. figure out which word corresponds to which sound;
2. learn the meanings of the words;
3. memorise the spelling of the words.

To “cut” your audio file, use the “AB” button (see figure below). At first, you may listen to every single portion of an audio up to 10 times – the playing time of an audio of 2 minutes thus would be 20 minutes (let's call this an **AB round**).

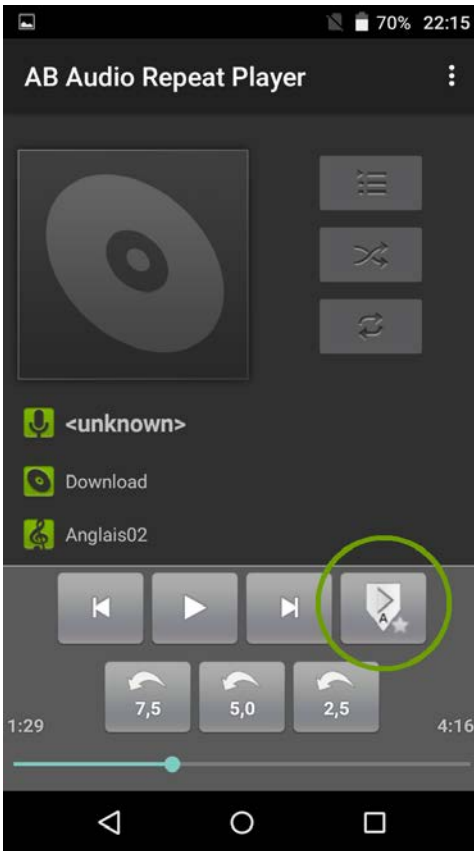


Figure 1.1 – Screenshot of the *AB Repeat Player* (<http://www.hiv.net/abandroid>). The AB button is inside the green circle.

The first round of 20, 25 or 30 minutes is just the beginning. You may repeat this exercise 5, 10 or more times for every single audio file. We advise you to repeat an audio file the next day, two days after, and then at intervals of 3 to 5 days.

Do not stop before reaching your goal: to understand **every single word** and guess the correct spelling **without reading the text, with eyes closed**. In less than a month you'll do it!

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
1	GigaFrench										
2	Start	22. Jun									
3	Minutes per lesson (total)										
4	Total (hours)	15,1	120	120	120	120	120	115	105	85	
5											
6	Lesson (minutes)										
7		Total	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	
8	22. Jun	30	30								
9	23. Jun	40	10	30							
10	24. Jun	45	5	10	30						
11	25. Jun	45		5	10	30					
12	26. Jun	45			5	10	30				
13	27. Jun	45				5	10	30			
14	28. Jun	45					5	10	30		
15	29. Jun	45						5	10	30	
16	30. Jun	40	25							5	10
17	01. Jul	40	10	25							5
18	02. Jul	40	5	10	25						
19	03. Jul	40		5	10	25					
20	04. Jul	40			5	10	25				
21	05. Jul	40				5	10	25			
22	06. Jul	40					5	10	25		
23	07. Jul	40						5	10	25	
24	08. Jul	35	20						5	10	
25	09. Jul	35	10	20							5
26	10. Jul	35	5	10	20						
27	11. Jul	35		5	10	20					
28	12. Jul	35			5	10	20				
29	13. Jul	35				5	10	20			
30	14. Jul	35					5	10	20		

Figure 1.2 – Worksheet. Daily documentation of the time dedicated to Power Listening for each lesson.

Documenting your Power Listening times in a worksheet will help you check your progress. In the example above (Figure 1.2), daily listening time is about 40 minutes. If you have time, add another lesson or two until you reach 60 minutes a day. In our personal experience, 60 minutes is easy; 120 minutes requires a certain discipline; and 180 minutes or more is possible only if no other important activities are happening around you.

1.1.5 Details

1.1.5.1 First approach

Download the *GigaFrench* MP3 audio files from www.gigafrench.com/download. Before starting your Power Listening program (i.e., cutting the audio into portions from 2 to 4 seconds and listening to them with the AB Repeat Player), we advise you to listen to the entire audio once or twice while reading the English translation. This way, you'll get familiar with the content of the text.

If you already know some French, listen to the entire audio file once or twice while reading the French text. That will give you a feeling of what you know and what you still have to learn.

1.1.5.2 Slow audio, normal audio

Each *GigaFrench* text comes with two audio versions: slow and normal. We recommend to start with the slow version but as soon as you can, work only with the normal speed audio. For the final test of "total understanding" you should, of course, use the normal audio.

1.1.5.3 Parallel learning

Are you

- on public transport?
- in your car?
- at the beach?

Are you

- going to the market?
- jogging?
- cooking?

In all these situations put on your headphones and listen to the *GigaFrench* audios files. There are two modes:

1. Hyper-focused mode
2. “Standby” mode

Both methods are precious. If you are hyper-focused, you’ll obviously learn faster. But also listening in “stand-by”, in parallel to other activities, has many advantages. Are you performing a complicated culinary recipe? Or are you doing a bit of handiwork around the house? Put your headphones on! “Something” will always reach your brain, for example the sound of the words, the music of the language and, more rarely, the meaning of a word. In any case, when you study French (with the *GigaFrench* PDF or book, with other grammars or while doing exercises), don’t do it without your headphones and the *GigaFrench* sound in your ears!

1.1.5.4 Close your eyes

After working several times on a text, do your first test of understanding. Put a sentence into an AB loop, close your eyes and listen. If you do not understand the meaning of every

single word, open your eyes and read the sentence again. Today it may not have gone perfectly; don't worry, in a few days you'll succeed.

1.1.5.5 Second approach

After a few AB rounds, you will know the texts by heart, at least the English version. At this point, we advise you to intersperse normal listening sessions. Select the "Repeat a single file" mode and listen to the same audio file from start to finish 4, 5, 6, up to 7 times. As you listen, always read the French text.

1.1.5.6 Examination in bed

It's almost midnight, you are with your partner in bed, have turned off the light and are starting to fall asleep. Put your headphones on briefly and listen to a text. Can you, yes or no, understand every single word? If you cannot, continue studying the text until you can. As you can see from Figure 1.3, you'll reach full understanding of a text after only 5/10 rounds. The discovery of your "first islands of complete understanding" are marked in blue.

1.1.5.7 Better understanding of words

In our experience, you cannot understand 100% of a spoken script if you do not know all the words. We recommend that you check the *GigaFrench* word lists regularly.

1.1.5.8 Friends

It is easier to learn with friends. If you have friends or family who want to learn French, present them with the *GigaFrench* Power Listening Program and explain the benefits to them. In particular, teach them how to use a worksheet to document their progress. Describe the extraordinary feeling of conquering, one after the other, these "islands of total understanding".

Russian

		Minutes per lesson (total)																	
22. Jun		79	107	148	212	183	208	184	186	162	137	154	138	97	130	103	118	78	118
Total (hours)		42,4																	
Days		31																	
Mean		1,37																	
		Lesson (minutes per day)																	
Total		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18
22. Jun	20	20																	
23. Jun	30		30																
24. Jun	40	10		30															
25. Jun	122		10	42	70														
26. Jun	175	20	25	20	45	65													
27. Jun	124	2	2		25	35	60												
28. Jun	65							65											
29. Jun	125				10	10	20	15	70										
30. Jun	108	2	3	12	12	12	12	15	15	25									
01. Jul	45									20	25								
02. Jul	0																		
03. Jul	95								20	20	30	25							
04. Jul	75									15	20	40							
05. Jul	30										15	20	40						
06. Jul	75													30					
07. Jul	55																	55	
08. Jul	67														15	12	40		
09. Jul	59												25	14					20
10. Jul	90											15							15 60
11. Jul	82	10	10	10		30												22	
12. Jul	106	5	5	16	15		17											15	15 18
13. Jul	135		5	10	10			30	30	30	20								
14. Jul	63	3	5									35	20						
15. Jul	30			5	10									15					
16. Jul	179		10	8	33	20	20	33	20	25	10								
17. Jul	77			5	5						10	15	15	12	15				
18. Jul	82				13	18	23	14											14
19. Jul	100	2	5	3						18	12	19	18	13	10				
20. Jul	84					5	23	6								12	10	14	14
21. Jul	123					25	10	17	16	15	15	15	10						
22. Jul	81	5	7												15	12	16	14	12

Figure 1.3 – The first 30 days of learning Russian. Worksheet of a 40+ year-old adult with no previous experience of Russian. Study of a manual of 18 texts (total audio time: 43 minutes). Daily average of Power Listening: 1' 22". The discoveries of the “first islands of total understanding” are marked in blue.

1.1.6 Rule #4: Champagne

The day you clearly understand all the words of an audio file without reading the text, you will have achieved something important: conquering your **first island of total understanding**. It is a day you will remember all your life. Celebrate with champagne! 😊

Now copy the audio file of the chapter you are on into a separate playlist on your smartphone. Over the coming weeks, the playlist will start to grow. Make it a habit to listen to your new playlist while you are in your car, on public transport,

during other activities (cooking, jogging, etc.), even while enjoying a siesta. We have known people who used language audio files as “sleeping pills” to fall asleep faster! Give it a try... 😊



Palais Royal Power | © Copyright: Marie de France

1.1.7 The benefits of Power Listening

The “collateral” benefits of Power Listening are spectacularly surprising:

1. *Power Listening* is always *Power Reading*. The new language is being pressed into your brain both via your ears and via your eyes with high pressure. (**"Full volume on all channels!"**)
2. To understand the sound of a text you have to know all the words. Power Listening is therefore an excellent way to **quickly learn French words**.
3. Listening to short portions of an audio file 50, 100 or more times will end up giving you an intuitive knowledge of important aspects of French grammar. You'll certainly need to study a more complete French grammar later, but many rules you come across then will be very familiar. In any case, **grammar will be easier and more pleasant**.
4. We recommend that you listen to the *GigaFrench* audios for a month or two and that you don't speak. Give your brain time to absorb the correct pronunciation of single words and the characteristic French sound of sentences. If you begin to speak only after a few months of intense listening, **you'll have a more genuine French accent**.

1.1.8 Future Research

Our previous experiments with the *Power Listening/Power Reading* method indicate that the time until complete understanding of a 45-minute audio program (word for word, “freehand”, without having the text in front of you) in a language you don't know is largely language-independent. One of our subjects, an adult German native speaker (40+ years), needed 60 hours of *Power Listening/Power*

Reading over a period of two months for languages as diverse as Norwegian, modern Greek and Russian.

If the number of hours (60) and the learning period (two months) are pretty constant values for different languages in the same test person, we should examine A) whether these results can be reproduced in other people to see if there is truly a “constant of secondary language acquisition”, B) whether this constant applies only to languages of our own language family (here: Indo-European languages) or also to languages of other language families such as Turkish or Japanese, C) how large the interpersonal variation is, and D) how age influences learning speed. In particular, the following questions need to be answered:

1. Can other students achieve the same result (60 hours/2 months) with just 15 hours of *Power-Listening/Power Reading* in 14 days?
2. Might other students need 180 hours spread over a period of 6 months?
3. Is an 18-year-old graduate student faster than a 62-year-old?
4. Can 80-year-olds learn foreign languages?

People on the street who like thinking aloud about language aptitude and language deficits are certainly inclined to accept huge differences in language acquisition. The reality is probably more banal and no more impressive than the natural variation of *Homo sapiens* penis length when erect (see Figure 1.5 and the Wikipedia article “[Human penis size](#)”).

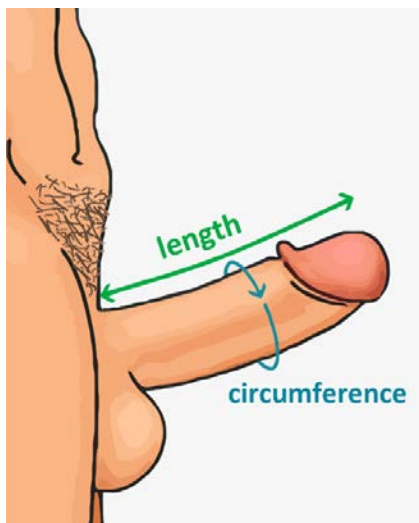


Figure 1.5 – How to measure? Scientific measurement of the erect penis. Mean length: 13.1 cm (5.16 in). Ninety percent of all penises were longer than 10.3 cm (4.06 in) and shorter than 15.7 cm (6.18 in). Veale D, Miles S, Bramley S, Muir G, Hodson J. *Am I normal? A systematic review and construction of nomograms for flaccid and erect penis length and circumference in up to 15,521 men.* BJU Int 2015; 115:978-86. Free full-text article: <http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1111/bju.13010/full>. Accessed August 7, 2016.

See also:

Nick Evershed. *What is the average penis size? Find out with this interactive graphic.* The Guardian, March 5, 2015: <https://www.theguardian.com/news/datablog/2015/mar/05/what-is-the-average-penis-size-find-out-with-this-interactive-graphic>. Accessed August 7, 2016.

In spring 2017, we expect the results of further tests (Power tests, not penis tests!). In the meantime, I'd bet that the human brain is largely hardwired to accommodate languages. Babies nicely show that our brain is also hardwired to learn *any language*; moreover, they do it in comparable time periods. Until proven otherwise, we should therefore maintain the

hypothesis that all humans have virtually equivalent linguistic basic skills that usually differ – as does penis length – by not more than $\pm 20\%$. With this assumption, the answer to questions 1, 2 and 3 above would be “No”. Does one student need 60 hours to understand a 45-minute Russian language audio word for word? If so, their less fortunate friends will have to study a little longer, some 70 hours, while the luckier ones will do it in about 50 hours. With that, everyone’s happy!

1.2 Turbo Master Class (1)

Learning a second or third or fourth language is a huge construction site. It is also an immense chaos and doubly so because you have to improve on two entirely different competences: listening and reading. One information stream enters your brain through your ears and the other stream through your eyes. As you'll see later, that makes an enormous difference (see page 198).

What feeling do you have when listening to the audio www.hiv.net/God? Phonological porridge, isn't it? And what do you feel when you see the 8 different colours in the text about 'God'?

1. Action word	4. Article	7. Conjunction
2. Noun	5. Pronoun	8. Preposition
3. Adjective	6. Adverb	

{AUDIO} Dieu existe-t-il ? Inégalités, injustices, violences, tortures, viols, meurtres, guerres, génocides, la shoah, l'esclavage... Impardonnable. n'est-ce pas ? On vous dira que Dieu se planque pour mettre les hommes à l'épreuve et les amener à choisir entre le bien et le mal. En tout cas, si moi je vous jouais des tours pareils, vous me traiteriez de sadique ! Regardez l'histoire de l'humanité et les innombrables crimes commis au nom de Dieu ! Et regardez le présent : des États qui persécutent au nom d'un Dieu, torturent et tuent au nom d'un Dieu, et refusent aux femmes le droit d'avorter, toujours au nom d'un Dieu. Pauvre Dieu, nom de Dieu, aurait-il tout foiré ? Souhaitons-lui – à ce petit Dieu qui ne serait qu'un pauvre diable – de ne pas

exister car nous le jugerions pour crimes contre l'Humanité.
 Nous avons guillotiné Louis XVI pour moins que cela.

Dare say it: Tumultuous letter flatulence! Flatulence is mere appearance, though. The secret is that a word is not a word, as the colours nicely show. Words are of different types, so-called 'parts of speech'.

For the phonological porridge, check the instructions on page 34. As for the chaotic word salad, give me your hand, follow me and let's put order into the chaos in less than 25 pages. We'll first distinguish between easy and tough, peanuts and hard core.

1.2.1 Peanuts

Peanuts are the easy part of French, so easy that you should master them in less than a month. Peanuts include

- 'Jokers'
- articles
- pronouns

The defining feature of peanuts is that they are **content-insensitive**: you'll read, hear, say and write them in conversations and writings about ANY subject. In 10 pages you will see that buying stocks in peanuts is your best French lifetime investment ever.

1.2.1.1 Jokers

Jokers comprise three ‘parts of speech’ (or word classes): *adverbs*, *conjunctions* and *prepositions*. If you don’t know what these words mean, that’s fine; in GigaFrench, we’ll call them ‘jokers’. They have two favorable assets:

1. Jokers are invariable (you’ll appreciate this feature when you start struggling with the first *variable* words...);
2. Jokers, like the article and pronoun peanuts, are few in number (less than 250, that is, less than 0.25% of all French words) and can be learned in a month.

Throughout this manual, we’ll present jokers by order of frequency. The following word cloud shows the Top 21:



Word cloud 1.2 – Jokers 1-21.

Although the Top 21 represent only about 10% of all French jokers, they account for 70% of those you’ll ever hear and see. The 7 most frequent jokers are **de**, **et**, **que**, **ne...pas**, **qui**, **dans**, **pour**. Frequent words are short.

Check immediately the smartphone exercise www.hiv.net/firstjokers and learn the first 7 jokers now! It will take you only a few minutes, perhaps less. Ideally, you would learn all 21 words between today and tomorrow at www.GigaFrench.com/jokers01.

{AUDIO}

1	de	of, from, in, about, by, etc. (multiple translations)	prep
2	à	to, at, from, etc. (multiple translations)	prep
3	et	and	conj
4	ou	or	conj
5	qui	who, which	adv
6	que	whom, that; what; than	adv
7	où	where	adv
8	avec	with	prep
9	sans	without	prep
10	ne...pas	not	adv
11	dans	in, among	prep
12	pour	for; in order to	prep
13	sur	on	prep
14	sous	under	prep
15	plus	more	adv
16	comme	like; because, since	conj
17	tout	everything, anything	adv
18	si	yes; if; so	conj, adv
19	bien	well	adv
20	il y a	there is, there are; ago	adv
21	par	by, through	prep

Word lists are not perfect because many words have more than one translation. As a result, word lists have been considered fuzzy and out of focus and have been *verboden* for decades. It is certainly true that it is hard to learn words out of

context; it is equally true, though, that it may be even harder to decipher an article without having a clear idea of the words used in the text. Fortunately, with smartphone technology, word lists are being rehabilitated. Today, smartphone-powered memory exercises are surprisingly efficient memory boosters. We'll present them to you throughout this manual.

Please find the entire joker list, the audio file and more smartphone exercises on our web page www.GigaFrench.com/jokers. We would like you to know the first 42 jokers in three days and the rest in three weeks.

Without the jokers, the first colourless areas are appearing in the 'God' article. Let's immediately continue and take the purple words out of the game.

{AUDIO} Dieu existe-t-il ? Inégalités, injustices, violences, tortures, viols, meurtres, guerres, génocides, la shoah, l'esclavage... Impardonnable, n'est-ce pas ? On vous dira que Dieu se planque pour mettre les hommes à l'épreuve et les amener à choisir entre le bien et le mal. En tout cas, si moi je vous jouais des tours pareils, vous me traiteriez de sadique !

Regardez l'histoire de l'humanité et les innombrables crimes commis au nom de Dieu ! Et regardez le présent : des États qui persécutent au nom d'un Dieu, torturent et tuent au nom d'un Dieu, et refusent aux femmes le droit d'avorter, toujours au nom d'un Dieu.

Pauvre Dieu, nom de Dieu, aurait-il tout foiré ? Souhaitons-lui – à ce petit Dieu qui ne serait qu'un pauvre diable – de ne pas exister car nous le jugerions pour crimes contre l'Humanité. Nous avons guillotiné Louis XVI pour moins que cela.

1.2.1.2 Articles

{AUDIO} Articles, shown in purple, are the baby pool of the peanuts group. There are just 9 of them and all are easy to learn.

The English *the* has three French equivalents: **le** for boys, men or other masculine words; **la** for girls, women or other feminine words; and **les** for more than one boy, one girl, one woman or one men. In summary: *the* = **le, la | les**. On page 122, we'll go into the details. For now, be it sufficient to present the following number/gender scheme:

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular	le	la
	Plural	les	

The English *a* has two French equivalents: **un** for masculine nouns (a boy, a men, etc.) and **une** for feminine nouns (a girl, a woman, etc.). In summary: *a* = **un, une**, or:

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular	un	une

Finally, see a peculiar phenomenon which affects only the articles **le** and **les**. These two words are immediately cannibalized and engulfed by the jokers **de** *of, from* and **à** *to, for*. In the process, the non-existing ~~de+le~~ becomes **du**, ~~de+les~~ becomes **des**, ~~à+le~~ becomes **au** and ~~à+les~~ becomes **aux**.

		le	les
Number	de +	du (de+le)	des (de+les)
	à +	au (à+le)	aux (à+les)

The next word cloud demonstrates that the so-called ‘definite’ articles **le, la | les** are the Top 3:



Word cloud 1.3 – French articles

Look at the ‘God’ article without jokers and articles. Let’s *tout de suite* rush to eliminate the pronouns.

{AUDIO} Dieu existe-t-il ? Inégalités, injustices, violences, tortures, viols, meurtres, guerres, génocides, la shoah, l'esclavage... Impardonnable, n'est-ce pas ? On vous dira que Dieu se planque pour mettre les hommes à l'épreuve et les amener à choisir entre le bien et le mal. En tout cas, si moi je vous jouais des tours pareils, vous me traiteriez de sadique !

Regardez l'histoire de l'humanité et les innombrables crimes commis au nom de Dieu ! Et regardez le présent : des États qui persécutent au nom d'un Dieu, torturent et tuent au nom d'un Dieu, et refusent aux femmes le droit d'avorter, toujours au nom d'un Dieu.

Pauvre Dieu, nom de Dieu, aurait-il tout foiré ? Souhaitons-lui – à ce petit Dieu qui ne serait qu'un pauvre diable – de ne pas exister car nous le jugerions pour crimes contre l'Humanité. Nous avons guillotiné Louis XVI pour moins que cela.

1.2.1.3 Pronouns

You certainly know what **je t'aime** means: *I love you*. In what is undoubtedly one of the major advances in human civilisation, you have

1. the so-called *personal subject pronoun je I*
and
2. the so-called *personal object pronoun te you*

Let's delve a few inches beneath the pronoun surface. Take, for example, the outstanding **désirer**. Of course, in France, **désirer** *to want, to desire* is most often used in the pretty exclusive sexual sense of *wanting to kiss, caress, suck and make love*.

{AUDIO}

Je te désire.	I want you .
Tu me désires.	You want me .
Il la désire.	He wants her .
Elle le désire.	She wants him .

Nous vous désirons.	We want you (plural).
Vous nous désirez.	You want us .
Ils les désirent.	They (boys, men) want them (boys, girls, men, women).
Elles les désirent.	They (girls, women) want them (boys, girls, men, women).

The preceding table showing **personal subject pronouns** (PSPs) in red and **personal object pronouns** (POPs) in blue is one of the most important tables you'll see in your entire French lifetime. Listen to the audio and learn all sentences by heart now! (Yes, please!)

The table holds another suite of gems: the bold-faced endings of **désirer**: **-e, -es, -e | -ons, -ez, -ent**. In English, you need to modify the present tense of *want* only when associated with *he* and *she*; in this case, you add an *-s*: *he/she wants*. In French you have different endings all over the place. Note that the six endings **-e, -es, -e | -ons, -ez, -ent** are a **pillar of the French language!** Again, memorize them before this day ends – you'll see them later again and again and again.

Give me time for just two more words, **lui** and **leur**, shown in green in the following table. You'll use **lui** (instead of 'le/la') and **leur** (instead of 'les') with words like **résister à** *to resist* that take indirect objects in French. (More about that on page 279.) The equivalents for **lui** in German are *ihm/ihr*, in Italian *gli/le* and in Spanish *le*. The equivalents for **leur** in German is *ihnen*, in Italian *gli* or *loro* and in Spanish *les*.

{AUDIO}

Je te résiste.	I am resisting* you .
Tu me résistes.	You are resisting me .
Il lui résiste.	He is resisting her .
Elle lui résiste.	She is resisting him .
Nous vous résistons.	We are resisting you (plural).
Vous nous résistez.	You are resisting us .
Ils leur résistent.	They (boys, men) are resisting them (boys, girls, men, women).
Elles leur résistent.	They (girls, women) are resisting them (boys, girls, men, women).

* Note that the French language has no equivalent for the English continuous tense. Translate the continuous tense with the French present tense.



Word cloud 1.4 – 15 personal pronouns | Relative frequency as calculated from 17 novels by Émile Zola.

The news of the day: The 15 personal pronouns **je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles, me, te, le, la, les, lui, leur** alone represent 70% of all French pronouns you'll ever hear and

see. The remaining 40+ pronouns are sometimes tricky, but relatively easy to master.

The ‘God’ article without jokers, articles and pronouns. What do you see?

{AUDIO} Dieu existe-t-il ? Inégalités, injustices, violences, tortures, viols, meurtres, guerres, génocides, la shoah, l’esclavage... Impardonnable, n’est-ce pas ? On vous dira que Dieu se planque pour mettre les hommes à l’épreuve et les amener à choisir entre le bien et le mal. En tout cas, si moi je vous jouais des tours pareils, vous me traiteriez de sadique !

Regardez l’histoire de l’humanité et les innombrables crimes commis au nom de Dieu ! Et regardez le présent : des États qui persécutent au nom d’un Dieu, torturent et tuent au nom d’un Dieu, et refusent aux femmes le droit d’avorter, toujours au nom d’un Dieu.

Pauvre Dieu, nom de Dieu, aurait-il tout foiré ? Souhaitons-lui – à ce petit Dieu qui ne serait qu’un pauvre diable – de ne pas exister car nous le jugerions pour crimes contre l’Humanité. Nous avons guillotiné Louis XVI pour moins que cela.

Fifty percent of the words are gone, the fog has lifted. With all soft parts hammered out, only granite remains: nouns, adjectives, action words. The language landscape comes into focus.

The 50% percentage – give it some points more, some points less – is a rather constant value, not only in French but in most other European languages. In other words, around 300 French peanuts always account for 50% of any subset of 100,000 possible French words in any given text. Do you arrive at the same conclusion as I do? Yes, indeed, you’re right: You should know these words rather this week than next week! Learning the peanuts as soon as possible is one of the best

investments you can ever make in your future French skills. You'll see that many peanuts are difficult to memorize, but you'll have to go through it now! You can! And we'll help you!

1.2.2 Hardcore French

Everything you have been announced until now – 200+ jokers, a handful of articles, 60+ pronouns – is manageable (i.e., 'learnable') in less than a month. But now, with nouns, adjectives and action words, rocky times are looming over the horizon. Your French honeymoon is over. See for yourself:

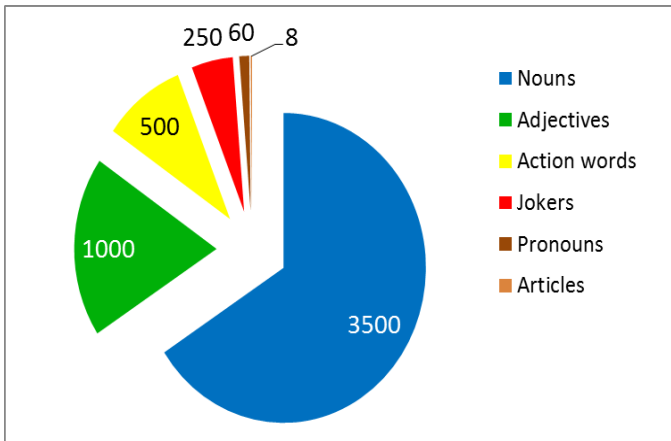


Figure 1.1 – Number of words to learn

What you see is the hard truth of language learning: There are thousands of words in your books, tablets or smartphones – but they are just there and they not in your brain. Worse: you'll have to transfer them into your brain one by one and make stay them there for years, possibly forever.

If you are Italian, Spanish or Portuguese, the numbers shown in Figure 1.1 represent entirely new words you will need to learn. ('Entirely new' means that you cannot infer the meaning from similar words of your own language.) If you don't speak any of these languages, you may probably need to multiply the indicated numbers by 1.5 to 2. In other words, you have on the study table in front of you 3500 and 7000 nouns, 1000 to 2000 adjectives and 500 to 1000 action words. We'll show you later how to cope with this monstrous task.



Figure 1.2 – Relative importance of different word classes (parts of speech). Nouns, adjectives and action words represent more than 98% of all French words you will know on day. Peanuts (adverbs, conjunctions, prepositions), pronouns and articles are of minor importance.

1.2.2.1 Nouns

Providentially, the formal management of French nouns is straightforward. You have two forms: the singular form and the plural form and they differ by the final *-s* of the plural:

le soleil	the sun
les soleils	the suns

That's like in English. Unlike in English, the final *-s* of French nouns is hardly ever pronounced. So how do French

people know if someone talks about *one* apple, *one* condom or *one* baby vs. *two or more* apples, condoms and babies? It's the article that makes the difference! You'll usually hear only from **le** and **la** if someone talks about *only one* person or thing or place (singular); and from **les** that she is talking about *more than one* person, thing or place. We'll show you later how the difference between romantic love and group sex may depend entirely on the definite articles **le** and **les** (see page 126).

As always, exceptions govern the rule, some nouns have irregular plurals (**cheval** horse – **chevaux** horses), others have slightly different feminine forms (**boulangier** baker – **boulangère** lady baker). However, all in all, the management of nouns is uneventful.

The 'God' article without jokers, articles, pronouns and nouns:

{AUDIO} Dieu existe-t-il ? Inégalités, injustices, violences, tortures, viols, meurtres, guerres, génocides, la shoah, l'esclavage... Impardonnable, n'est-ce pas ? On vous dira que Dieu se planque pour mettre les hommes à l'épreuve et les amener à choisir entre le bien et le mal. En tout cas, si moi je vous jouais des tours pareils, vous me traiteriez de sadique ! Regardez l'histoire de l'humanité et les innombrables crimes commis au nom de Dieu ! Et regardez le présent : des États qui persécutent au nom d'un Dieu, torturent et tuent au nom d'un Dieu, et refusent aux femmes le droit d'avorter, toujours au nom d'un Dieu.

Pauvre Dieu, nom de Dieu, aurait-il tout foiré ? Souhaitons-lui – à ce petit Dieu qui ne serait qu'un pauvre diable – de ne pas exister car nous le jugerions pour crimes contre l'Humanité. Nous avons guillotiné Louis XVI pour moins que cela.

1.2.2.2 Adjectives

Adjectives are words like *seductive*, *excited*, *tired*, *small*, *big*, etc. In English, they are immutable and don't bother about number and gender. Be it a man, a woman, two men or three women, they'll always be *seductive*, *excited*, or *tired*. In English, adjectives are carved in stone.

Not so in French! French adjectives not only want to know if the noun it comes with is masculine (boys, men, etc.) or feminine (girl, women, etc.), they also want to know if there is only one (singular) or more than one (plural). Fortunately, the recipe is simple:

- add an **-e** if the noun is feminine
- add a final **-s** if the noun is a plural

This so-called **gender and number variability** is a key feature of French. We'll call it the **ES rule**. Let's put it into a table:

		Gender (Sex)	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number (How many?)	Singular		-e
	Plural	-s	-es

{AUDIO} When applying the **ES rule** to **séduisant** *seductive*, we get:

Il est séduisant.	He is seductive.
Elle est séduisante e .	She is seductive.
Ils sont séduisants s .	They are seductive (boys, men).
Elles sont séduisantes es .	They are seductive (girl, women).

Put into a table:

		Gender (Sex)	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number (How many?)	Singular	séduisant [seduizã]	séduisante [seduizãt]
	Plural	séduisants [seduizã]	séduisantes [seduizãt]

In brackets you see the transcription using the IPA (International Phonetic Alphabet). What do you notice?

1. The plural –s does not change the pronunciation.
2. The feminine –e does change the pronunciation if the final letter is a consonant (here the final –t– in ‘séduisant’).

Now let’s apply the **ES rule** to adjectives ending in –é, **excité** *excited* and **fatigué** *tired*:

Il est excité.	He is excited.
Elle est excitée e .	She is excited.
Ils sont excités s .	They are excited (boys, men).
Elles sont excitées es .	They are excited (girl, women).
Il est fatigué.	He is tired.
Elle est fatiguée e .	She is tired.
Ils sont fatigués s .	They are tired (boys, men).
Elles sont fatiguées es .	They are tired (girl, women).

Put into tables:

		Gender (Sex)	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number (How many?)	Singular	excité	excitée
	Plural	excités	excités

		Gender (Sex)	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number (How many?)	Singular	fatigué	fatiguée
	Plural	fatigués	fatiguées

Note that in these cases, the pronunciation of all four forms is identical ([ɛksite], [fatige]).

Irregular plural or feminine forms will be presented in due time (see pages 290, 335).

{AUDIO} A subspecies of adjectives are the so-called possessive adjectives, in English *my, your, his/her | our, your, their*. Where English has one word (for example, *my*), French has three words (for example, **mon, ma | mes**) or two words (for example, **notre | nos**).

	Singular		Plural
	Masculine	Feminine	
my	mon	ma	mes
your	ton	ta	tes
his/her	son	sa	ses
our	notre	notre	nos
your	votre	votre	vos
their	leur	leur	leurs

In total, the number of French possessive adjectives is 15.

Find the details on page 276.



Word cloud 1.5 – 15 possessive adjectives pronouns | Relative frequency as calculated from 17 novels by Émile Zola.

In conclusion, the management of adjectives, too, is uneventful. The ‘God’ article left with only the action words:

{AUDIO} Dieu **existe**-t-il ? Inégalités, injustices, violences, tortures, viols, meurtres, guerres, génocides, la shoah, l’esclavage... Impardonnable, n’**est**-ce pas ? On vous **dira** que Dieu se **planque** pour **mettre** les hommes à l’épreuve et les **amener** à **choisir** entre le bien et le mal. En tout cas, si moi je vous **jouais** des tours pareils, vous me **traiteriez** de sadique ! **Regardez** l’histoire de l’humanité et les innombrables crimes **commis** au nom de Dieu ! Et **regardez** le présent : des États qui **persécutent** au nom d’un Dieu, **torturent** et **tuent** au nom d’un Dieu, et **refusent** aux femmes le droit d’**avorter**, toujours au nom d’un Dieu.

Pauvre Dieu, nom de Dieu, **aurait**-il tout **foiré** ? **Souhaitons**-lui – à ce petit Dieu qui ne **serait** qu’un pauvre diable – de ne pas **exister** car nous le **jugerions** pour crimes contre l’Humanité. Nous **avons guillotiné** Louis XVI pour moins que cela.

1.2.2.3 Action words

In the ‘God’ article, the first action words are **exister** *to exist*, **être** *to be*, **dire** *to say*, **se planquer** *to hide*. With so few words left, you might think that you have done it, don’t you? Nothing could be more wrong! Now French trouble begins in earnest! The trouble is such that we’ll start a new chapter.

1.2.3 Action words

Action words are the most important word class because they change the world. They describe actions (**lire** *to read*, **écrire** *to write*, **baiser** *to fuck*), feelings or sensory perceptions (**sentir** *to feel*, **entendre** *to hear*), occurrences (**devenir** *to become*), or states of being (**être** *to be*, **exister** *to exist*). In grammar, they are usually known as ‘verbs’ – we’ll call them *action words* and include in this category the so-called ‘auxiliary action words’ **avoir** *to have* and **être** *to be*.

Action words are denser than other words because they convey three layers of information:

1. the action
2. the time of the action
3. the person who does it

As a result of this triple-layer, action words are true monster words. When you see them in a word list – for example as innocuous binaries such as **avoir** *to have*, **être** *to be*, **caresser** *to caress* – all you see is the tip of an iceberg. What you don’t see and sense, at least not during your first weeks of French training, is the iceberg’s hidden part – which is immense! For example, the hidden part of **avoir** *to have* consists of 40 different forms, 34 of which are essential: **eu, ayant, ai, as, a, avons, avez, ont, avais, avait, avions, aviez, avaient, aurai, auras, aura, aurons, aurez, auront, aurais, aurait, aurions, auriez, auraient, aie, aies, ait, ayons, ayez, aient, eus, eut,**

eûmes, eûtes, **eurent**, eusses, **eût**, eussions, eussiez, **eussent**. In other words, action words are ‘masters of disguise’. Your second major challenge in French is to unmask them.

1.2.3.1 Timeline and Sextets

{AUDIO} To cast a solid fundament for your future development of French action words, let’s first talk about your life and the people who populate it.

Qui es-tu? [ki ɛ-ty?]

D’où viens-tu? [du vjẽ-ty?]

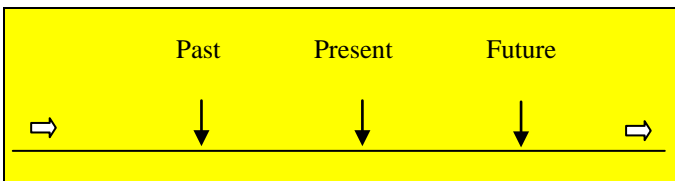
Que fais-tu ici? [kə fɛ-ty isi?]

Who are you?

Where do you come from?

What are you doing here?

These are the questions you are likely to hear at the beginning of your French genesis as soon as the people around you notice that you speak some French. To answer them, you will end up talking not only about your present, but also about past experiences and your future projects. **Past, Present, Future** – your life is a timeline.

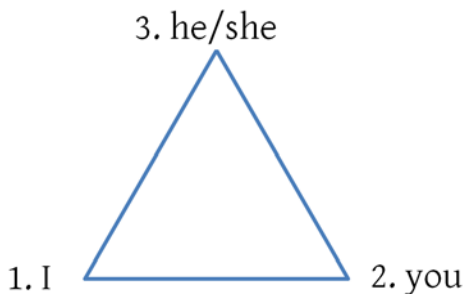


Of course, life *has been, is* and *will be* a succession of entangled and complex events, and you’ll need precise

instruments to narrate them. French **action words** (or verbs) have **14 time slots** to describe the events of your life.

Fortunately, only 9 are used in conversational French. You will see them all soon enough.

To populate your life timeline, you need people. Divide all the people on Earth into three groups: In Group 1, the pole position, there is nobody other than yourself and you refer to yourself as 'I'. Now divide the 7 billion other human beings into Groups 2 and 3. In Group 2, put the person you are currently talking to (you refer to him or her as 'you'), whereas in Group 3 you'll put the rest of the world, the people you may be talking about with your conversation partner (you'll refer to them as 'he/she').

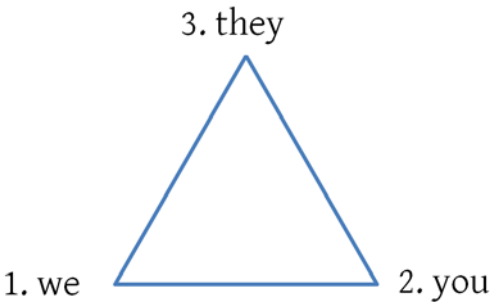


The result is a triangle. 'I' talks to 'you', 'you' responds; and 'I' and 'you' talk about 'he/she/it'.

In these cases, only one person is involved, so we call *I*, *you*, *he/she/it* '**singular** personal subject pronouns' (remember page 55). Here they are again:

je I
tu you
il/elle he/she (it)

A second triangle describes situations with more than one person. 'We' talk to 'you', 'you' responds, and together, 'we' talk about 'them'. In these cases, we use the so-called '**plural** personal subject pronouns' (*we, you, they*). Please note that the English *they* translates into **ils** when talking about boys, men and other *masculine* words and into **elles** when talking about girls, women and other *feminine* words:



nous we
vous you
ils/elles they

{AUDIO} Taken together, the three singular forms and the three plural forms condense into a *sextet*. Later, you will meet **hundreds** of these sextets, so try to become familiar with their structure: first the three singular forms **je I – tu you – il/elle he/she** and then the three plural forms **nous we – vous you – ils/elles they**.

Singular

1 st person singular	je/j *	[ʒə/ʒ]	I
2 nd person singular	tu	[ty]	you
3 rd person singular	il/elle	[il/ɛl]	he/she (it*)

Plural

1 st person plural	nous	[nu]	we
2 nd person plural	vous	[vu]	you
3 rd person plural	ils/elles	[il/ɛl]	they

* The French language has no true equivalent for *it*. Animals and inanimate objects are all either feminine or masculine.

Please note that **je** becomes **j'** when the following word starts with a vowel, for example, **j'aime** *I love*. The same is true for all French two-letter words ending in an *-e* (**je, ce, de, le, me, ne, se, te**): drop the final *-e* and add an apostrophe (**j', c', d', l', m', n', s', t'**) whenever the following word starts with a vowel (a-, e-, i-, o-, u-) or the semi-vowel *y*.

{AUDIO} All this sounds familiar, doesn't it? Remember the **red** *personal subject pronouns (PSPs)* from our previous discussion of pronouns:

1 st person singular	Je te désire.	I want you .
2 nd person singular	Tu me désires.	You want me .
3 rd person singular	Il/Elle la désire.	He/She wants her .
1 st person plural	Nous vous désirons.	We want you (plural).
2 nd person plural	Vous nous désirez.	You want us .
3 rd person plural	Ils/Elles les désirent.	They (boys, men/girls, women) want them (boys, girls, men, women).

That's it!

1. You are familiar with the mechanics of **action word sextets** and
2. You know that there is more than one timeslot on your life timeline.

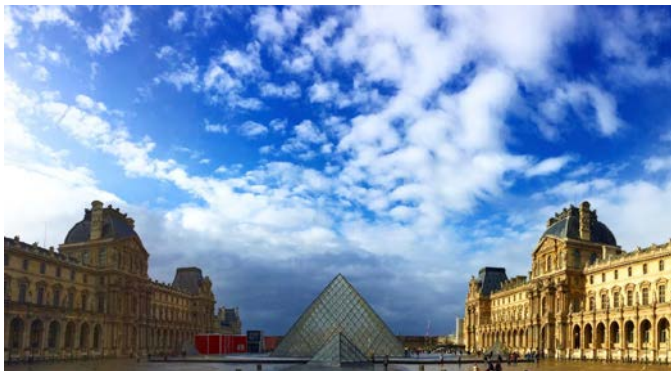
These are the basics. Now start French for real! First: **avoir** *to have*.

I. Action Words

1.3 First steps

With action words you'll discover words that change the world, for example **faire** *to do/to make*, **vouloir** *to wish*, **savoir** *to know*, **vivre** *to live*. In grammar, these words are known as 'verbs'. We'll call them *action words* and include in this category the so-called 'auxiliary action words' **avoir** *to have* and **être** *to be*.

{AUDIO} **Avoir** *to have* is the most important word in French. Please listen to the audio and learn the following four sextets (the first 4 of about 100 you'll need). First learn every single form, then memorize the 6-word sequences (for example **j'ai – tu as – il/elle a | nous avons – vous avez – ils/elles ont**).



Le Louvre | © Copyright: Marie de France

If you don't know (or don't remember) what **j'ai – tu as – il/elle a | nous avons – vous avez – ils/elles ont** mean, be patient – you'll discover it in a few moments. For now just burn the sextets into your brain. If you are new to French,

memorize the first two sextets. If you learned French before, memorize them all.

{AUDIO}

	Présent	Imparfait
j'	ai [e]	avais [avɛ]
tu	as [a]	avais [avɛ]
il/elle	a [a]	avait [avɛ]
nous	avons [avɔ̃]	avions [avjɔ̃]
vous	avez [ave]	aviez [avje]
ils/elles	ont [ɔ̃]	avaient [ave]

	Futur	Conditionnel prés.
j'	aurai [oʁe]	aurais [oʁɛ]
tu	auras [oʁa]	aurais [oʁɛ]
il/elle	aura [oʁa]	aurait [oʁɛ]
nous	aurons [oʁɔ̃]	aurions [oʁjɔ̃]
vous	aurez [oʁe]	auriez [oʁje]
ils/elles	auront [oʁɔ̃]	auraient [oʁɛ]

Alternative presentation:

Présent

j'**ai** – tu **as** – il/elle **a**
 nous **avons** – vous **avez** – ils/elles **ont**

Imparfait

j'**avais** – tu **avais** – il/elle **avait**
 nous **avions** – vous **aviez** – ils/elles **avaient**

Futur

j'**aurai** – tu **auras** – il/elle **aura**
 nous **aurons** – vous **aurez** – ils/elles **auront**

Conditionnel présent

j'**aurais** – tu **aurais** – il/elle **aurait**

nous **aurions** – vous **auriez** – ils/elles **auraient**

Action words are the most important word class. They describe actions (**lire** to read, **écrire** to write, **baiser** to fuck), feelings or sensory perceptions (**sentir** to feel, **entendre** to hear), occurrences (**devenir** to become), or states of being (**être** to be, **exister** to exist).

Remember that action words convey three layers of information: 1) the action, 2) the time of the action and 3) the person who does it. When you see them in a word list – for example **avoir** to have, **être** to be, **caresser** to caress – all you see is the tip of an iceberg. The hidden part of **avoir** to have? 40 different forms, 34 of which are essential: **eu, ayant, ai, as, a, avons, avez, ont, avais, avait, avions, aviez, avaient, aurai, auras, aura, aurons, aurez, auront, aurais, aurait, aurions, auriez, auraient, aie, aies, ait, ayons, ayez, aient, eus, eut, eûmes, eûtes, eurent, eusses, eût, eussions, eussiez, eussent.**



Word cloud 1.6 – The 14 most important French action words

In the coming hours you will learn the 34 words shown in bold 1) because they are the heart of French action words and 2) because action words are the heart of French grammar. You will do it step by step and

1. Discover the biotope of **avoir**
2. Check the *simple tenses* of **avoir** and realize the beauty of your first summary table
3. Use **avoir** to build the hugely powerful *composed tenses* and ‘fuck the rabbit’
4. Investigate the fabulous action word **faire** *to do/make*
5. Discover the all-important **participes passé** *past participles*
6. Revisit your **avoir** biotope with the power of composed tenses

7. Put 12 important French tenses ('time slots') on a timeline
8. Explore in more detail the **présent** *present tense* of a few important French action words.

Just 40 pages of action words basics. You can!

1.4 Avoir

As all action words, **avoir** *to have* has different *tenses* (dimensions of time, *time slots*; see below). Let's start with the most important one, the *present tense*, in French **présent**. The **présent**, like all other tenses you'll come across later, has three forms for the *singular* (when you name only one person: *I, you, she or he*) and three forms for the *plural* (when you talk about more than one person: *we, you, they*).

1.4.1 Avoir: Présent (*present tense*)

Singular

j'	ai	I	have
tu	as	you	have
il/elle	a	he/she	has

Plural

nous	avons	we	have
vous	avez	you	have
ils*/elles**	ont	they	have

* **ils** is *masculine* and used for boys, men or other masculine words

** **elles** is *feminine* and used for girls, women or other feminine words

This 2 x 3 *scheme* – we'll call it a *sextet* – is all-important because you'll have to become familiar with around 100 of them (20 by the end of Level 1 and 40 by the end of Level 3). If you feel uneasy with it, check page 67 again, 'Timeline and Sextets'.

1.4.2 All you can have...

{AUDIO} Let's briefly check the biotope of **avoir**. You'll use **avoir** to designate family and friends, material goods, helpful people, problems, etc. In the following examples, you will find a lot of new words such as **pénis, sœur, amant, maîtresse, chat, chien**, etc. Try and memorize as many of them as you can – and come back later for the words that won't enter your brain immediately. In any case, concentrate on **j'ai – tu as – il/elle a | nous avons – vous avez – ils/elles ont**.

1. Family, friends, pets, etc.

j'ai	un petit pénis	I have	a small penis
tu as	deux sœurs	you have	two sisters
il/elle a	trois amants	he/she has	three lovers
nous avons	quatre maîtresses	we have	four mistresses
vous avez	cinq chats	you have	five cats
ils/elles ont	six chiens	they have	six dogs

2. Material goods

j'ai	sept voitures	I have	seven cars
tu as	huit appartements	you have	eight apartments
il/elle a	neuf portables	he/she has	nine cell phones
nous avons	dix mille euros	we have	ten thousand euro
vous avez	onze tablettes	you have	eleven tablets
ils/elles ont	douze jeux vidéo	they have	twelve video games

3. Helpful people

j'ai	un boulanger extraordinaire	I have	an extraordinary baker
tu as	un médecin compétent	you have	a skilful doctor
il/elle a	un boucher de confiance	he/she has	a trusted butcher
nous avons	un pharmacien tout près	we have	a pharmacist nearby
vous avez	le meilleur chocolatier du monde	you have	the best chocolate maker in the world
ils/elles ont	un marchand de fruits et légumes exceptionnel	they have	a remarkable greengrocer

4. Hunger, thirst, fear, etc.

j'ai*	faim	I am*	hungry
tu as	soif	you are	thirsty
il/elle a	du retard	he/she is	late
nous avons	peur	we are	afraid
vous avez	raison	you are	right
ils/elles ont	tort	they are	wrong

* In these expressions, French uses **avoir** to *have* while English uses *to be*.

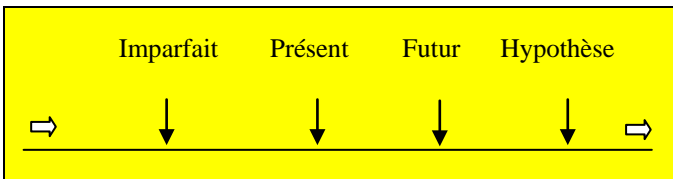
5. Problems, etc.

j'ai	un problème	I have	a problem
j'ai	mes règles	I have	my menstrual period
tu as	une hépatite	you have	hepatitis
il/elle a	le sida	he/she has	AIDS
nous avons	une dépression	we have	a depression
vous avez	une névrose religieuse	you have	a religious neurosis
ils/elles ont	une intoxication alimentaire	they have	food poisoning

Remember that in French, inanimate objects are all either feminine or masculine.

1.4.3 Action word timeline

Now let's do some time travel. The most fascinating aspect of action words is their extension in time. With action words, you time travel from things happening in the present, here and now, back to your experiences in the past, and fast-forward to your ideas for the future. **Imparfait, présent, futur** and **conditionnel présent** (hypothesis) are the most important time slots on your life timeline.



Let's make a short trip into the *past*, the *future* and the “*what if*” (*the hypothetical*). All you need is brain storage capacity for another 18 words. Are you ready? Let's travel back into the past.

1.4.4 Avoir: Imparfait (*imperfect tense*)

{AUDIO} The **imparfait** expresses habits, states of mind, environmental descriptions and how people and the world were in the past:

j' avais	un petit pénis	I had	a small penis
tu avais	deux sœurs	you had	two sisters
il/elle avait	trois amants	he/she had	three lovers
nous avions	quatre maîtresses	we had	four mistresses
vous aviez	cinq chats	you had	five cats
ils/elles avaient	six chiens	they had	six dogs

The last letters of the **avoir** forms appear in bold, they are called fittingly enough *endings*. For the **imparfait**, these endings are **-ais, - ais, - ait | -ions, -iez, -aient**. All you need to do is attach them to the stem **av-**.

While reading and listening to the **imparfait** of **avoir** you'll establish the following rules:

1. The 1st person singular (j' **avais**) and the 2nd person singular (tu **avais**) are identical.
2. The pronunciation of the three singular forms (**avais**–**avais**–**avait**) and the 3rd person plural (**avaient**) is identical [avɛ].

Please memorize the endings **-ais, - ais, - ait | -ions, -iez, -aient** now! The investment is worth it 1) because they are identical for all French action words in the **imparfait** tense; and 2) because you'll soon use them again to build the **conditionnel présent** (the hypothetical; see below, page 83).

In synthesis:

Singular

j'	avais	I	had
tu	avais	you	had
il/elle	avait	he or she	had

Plural

nous	avions	we	had
vous	aviez	you	had
ils/elles	avaient	they	had

Now combine *j'avais* – *tu avais* – *il/elle avait* | *nous avions* – *vous aviez* – *ils/elles avaient* with everything you've seen above (material goods, helpful people, hunger, problems, etc.; see page 77) – and let's fast-forward into the future.

1.4.5 Avoir: Futur (future tense)

{AUDIO} The **futur** describes events that have not happened yet, but are expected to happen:

j' aurai	sept voitures	I'll have	seven cars
tu auras	huit appartements	you'll have	eight apartments
il/elle aura	neuf portables	he/she'll have	nine cell phones
nous aurons	dix mille euros	we'll have	ten thousand euro
vous aurez	onze tablettes	you'll have	eleven tablets
ils/elles auront	douze jeux vidéo	they'll have	twelve video games

The endings of the *future tense* are **-ai, -as, -a** | **-ons, -ez, -ont** and you'll attach them to **aur-**, the *future stem* of **avoir** (more about *future stems* later).

While reading and listening to the **futur** of **avoir** you'll find that

1. The 1st person singular (*j'aur**ai***) and the 2nd person plural (*vous aur**ez***) sound identical [oʁe].

2. The 2nd person singular (tu aur**as**) and the 3rd person singular (il/elle aur**a**) sound identical [oʁa].
3. The 1st person plural (nous aur**ons**) and the 3rd person plural (ils/elles aur**ont**) sound identical [oʁɔ̃].

Memorize the 6 future endings **-ai, -as, -a | -ons, -ez, -ont** now, because they are identical for all French action words in the **futur**. In synthesis:

Singular

j'	aur ai	I will have
tu	aur as	you will have
il/elle	aur a	he or she will have

Plural

nous	aur ons	we will have
vous	aur ez	you will have
ils/elles	aur ont	they will have

Again, you can combine j'aur**ai** – tu aur**as** – il/elle aur**a** | nous aur**ons** – vous aur**ez** – ils/elles aur**ont** with the words you discovered earlier (family, friends, pets, helpful people, hunger, problems, etc.; see page 77).

By the way, have you noticed the similarity between the *future* endings **-ai, -as, -a | -ons, -ez, -ont** and the *present tense* of **avoir**: j'**ai** – tu **as** – il/elle **a** | nous **avons** – vous **avez** – ils/elles **ont**?

1.4.6 Avoir: Présent conditionnel (*hypothetical “what if”*)

{AUDIO} Sometimes we talk about things that haven't happened and aren't real but could happen or become real in the future. The French **présent conditionnel** expresses these hypothetical situations. **Si c'était vrai...** *if it were true...*

j' aurais	un problème	I would have	a problem
tu aurais	une hépatite	you would have	hepatitis
il/elle aurait	le sida	he/she would have	AIDS
nous aurions	une dépression	we would have	a depression
vous auriez	une névrose religieuse	you would have	a religious neurosis
ils/elles auraient	une intoxication alimentaire	they would have	food poisoning

The endings of the **présent conditionnel** are the same **–ais, –ais, –ait | –ions, –iez, –aient** you used with the **imparfait**. The only difference is that now you'll attach them to the *future stem aur–*.

While reading and listening to the **conditionnel présent** of **avoir** you'll find that

1. The 1st person singular (j'**aurais**) and the 2nd person singular (tu **aurais**) are identical.
2. The pronunciation of the three singular forms (**aurais–aurais–aurait**) and the 3rd person plural (**auraient**) is identical [oʁɛ].

In synthesis:

Singular

j'	aurais	I would have
tu	aurais	you would have
il/elle	aurait	he/she would have

Plural

nous	aurions	we would have
vous	auriez	you would have
ils/elles	auraient	they would have

Combine **j'aurais** – **tu aurais** – **il/elle aurait** | **nous aurions** – **vous auriez** – **ils/elles auraient** with everything you saw earlier (family, friends, pets, material goods, helpful people, etc.; page 77).

1.4.7 Avoir: Subjonctif présent (present subjunctive tense)

{AUDIO} Now take a one-minute look at the **subjonctif présent**. We can't tell you now why French needs it or what it means. Just make sure to have seen the sextet **que j'aie** – **que tu aies** – **qu'il/elle ait** | **que nous ayons** – **que vous ayez** – **qu'ils/elles aient**.

Singular

que j'	aie	that I have
que tu	aies	that you have
que il/elle	ait	that he/she has

Plural

que nous	ayons	that we have
que vous	ayez	that you have
que ils/elles	aient	that they have

Note that the pronunciation of the three singular forms (aie–aies–ait) and the 3rd person plural form (aient) is identical: a simple [ɛ].

1.4.8 Summary

Let's summarize the first four **avoir** sextets. The 24 words are a pillar of the French language, so no need to wait until tomorrow, memorize them now! Remember also to still know them in a week, and a month from now!

Présent

j'**ai** – tu **as** – il/elle **a** | nous **avons** – vous **avez** – ils/elles **ont**
I have, you have, he or she has / we, you, they have

Imparfait

j'**avais** – tu **avais** – il/elle **avait** | nous **avions** – vous **aviez** – ils/elles **avaient**
I, you, he or she had / we, you, they had
I, you, he or she used to have / we, you, they used to have

Futur

j'**aurai** – tu **auras** – il/elle **aura** | nous **aurons** – vous **aurez** – ils/elles **auront**
I, you, he or she will have / we, you, they will have

Conditionnel présent

j'**aurais** – tu **aurais** – il/elle **aurait** | nous **aurions** – vous **auriez** – ils/elles **auraient**
I, you, he or she would have / we, you, they would have

1.4.9 Avoir (table)

Let's put **présent**, **imparfait**, **futur** and **conditionnel présent** in a table. The table shows you also the **subjonctif présent** and the **passé simple**, two tenses we'll discuss later. Just take a quick glimpse at them. For the sake of completeness we also include the **subjonctif imparfait**, which is extremely rare.



Chocolat de Paris | © Copyright: Marie de France

Infinitif	avoir <i>to have</i>
Participe passé	eu
Participe présent	ayant
Impératif	aie ayons ayez

{AUDIO}

	Présent <i>Present: I have</i>	Imparfait <i>Imperfect: I had, I used to have</i>	Passé simple <i>Simple past: I had</i>
j'	ai	avais	eus
tu	as	avais	eus
il/elle	a	avait	eut
nous	avons	avions	eûmes
vous	avez	aviez	eûtes
ils/elles	ont	avaient	eurent

	Futur <i>Future: I will have</i>	Conditionnel prés. <i>Present conditional I would have</i>
j'	aurai	aurais
tu	auras	aurais
il/elle	aura	aurait
nous	aurons	aurions
vous	auriez	auriez
ils/elles	auront	auraient

	Subjonctif présent <i>Present subjunctive that I have</i>	Subjonctif imparfait <i>Imperfect subjunctive: that I had</i>
que j'	aie	eusse
que tu	aies	eusses
qu'il/elle	ait	eût
que nous	ayons	eussions
que vous	ayez	eussiez
qu'ils/elles	aient	eussent

1.5 Toolbox

Simple tenses

{AUDIO} You cannot continue studying French without being familiar with these 7 technical terms:

1	Présent	<i>Present</i>
2	Imparfait	<i>Imperfect</i>
3	Passé simple	<i>Simple past</i>
4	Futur	<i>Future</i>
5	Conditionnel présent	<i>Present conditional</i>
6	Subjonctif présent	<i>Present subjunctive</i>
7	Subjonctif imparfait	<i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>

In a dialogue with your friends and colleagues you'll hear or use these tenses either every minute (**présent, imparfait, futur**) or at not even 5-minute intervals (**conditionnel présent, subjonctif présent**).

The **Passé simple** and **subjonctif imparfait** are used in writing only; the latter is rare even in writing.

Outlook

Go briefly back to the **avoir** table and familiarize yourself with the layout. ‘Fully dressed’ action words are the cornerstone of *GigaFrench* and require an exceptional degree of flexibility and vivacity. To be in control of French action words, you’ll have to know a few dozen tables. Fortunately, they are only *apparently* hostile and forbidding. The more you see of them, the easier it will be to memorize the distinguishing features.

Progression will be dynamic. In Level 2, you’ll repeat the time-line exercise with **être** *to be*; in Level 3 comes **caresser** *to caress*; in Level 5 **agir** *to act*. The earlier you are able to sense (without thinking) the tenses (**présent – imparfait – passé simple – futur – conditionnel présent – subjonctif présent**), the faster will you master French. Invest now and start harvesting in a month!

1.6 Intermezzo

Before cashing in your fresh knowledge of **j’ai – tu as – il/elle a**, etc. and discover sexually promising composed tenses, let’s quickly deal with two of French’s important and easy eccentricities.

1.6.1 ‘on’ (1)

{AUDIO} The two-letter word ‘on’ is a so-called **indefinite pronoun**. Most often, it means *we*. Note that it is always accompanied by the 3rd person singular (in red):

On a faim ! (children coming home)	We are hungry!
On y va ?	Shall we go?
On a eu de la chance.	We were lucky.
Qu'est-ce qu' on peut faire ?	What can we do?

See more uses of **on** on page 193.

1.6.2 Stranger vs. Family (1)

You is not only *you*, and if you have learned any other language than English, you'll know that. In French, when you speak to just one person, 'you' is **tu**, but when you speak to more than one person, 'you' becomes **vous**. Thus, *you are crazy* translates into **tu es fou** [ty ɛ fu] when you talk to a crazy man and **vous êtes fous** [vuz-ɛt fu] when you deal with two or more crazy men.

In French, things are even more complicated because **tu** is for family members, children or close friends only. When speaking to a person you don't know (especially older people), or in formal situations, you must always use **vous** (+ the 2nd person plural of the action word) for both male and female, singular or plural: **vous avez** [vuz-ave] *you have*, **vous êtes** [vuz-ɛt] *you are*, **vous caressez** [vu kaʁese] *you caress*, **vous aimez** [vuz-eme] *you love*, **vous faites** [vu fet] *you do*. Find more on talking to strangers on page 275.

1.7 Avoir: Composed tenses

1.7.1 Introduction

Now make a giant leap forward. Combining **avoir** *to have* with nouns and declaring that you have material goods, family, friends, etc. (see page 77) is all well and good, but masturbatory Trumpism has an insipid aftertaste of autism and *ennui*. Fortunately, **avoir** has a double life. In its second and

far more prominent garment – in **combination with other action words** – **avoir** opens up a treasure grove of excitingly interactive behaviour. The true power of **avoir** lies in the combination with so-called *past participles*, for example **fait** *done/made*, **vu** *seen*, **pris** *taken*, **été** *been*. The trick is hilariously productive: take any of the forms from the **avoir** table above (j'ai, tu as, il/elle a, etc. on page 86) and combine them with the past participle of ANY French action words.

How powerful this procedure is can be seen from the following table. With just 9 *past participles* (**connu** *known*, **embrassé** *kissed*, **déshabillé** *undressed*, **chatouillé** *tickled*, **baisé** *fucked*, **oublié** *forgotten*, etc.) and 7 professions you can form 4.032 sentences or clauses.

{AUDIO}

1	j'ai	I have
	tu as	you have
	il a	he has
	elle a	she has
	nous avons	we have
	vous avez	you have
	ils ont	they have
	elles ont	they have
2	j'avais	I had
	tu avais	you had
	il avait	he had
	elle avait	she had
	nous avions	we had
	vous aviez	you had
	ils avaient	they had
	elles avaient	they had
3	j'aurais	I would
	tu aurais	have, etc.
	il aurait	
	elle aurait	
	nous aurions	we would
	vous auriez	have, etc.
	ils auraient	
	elles auraient	
4	Dommage...	
	<i>It's a pity that...</i>	
	que j'aie	I have
	que tu aies	you have
	qu'il ait	he has
	qu'elle ait	she has
	que nous ayons	we have
	que vous ayez	you have
	qu'ils aient	they have
	qu'elles aient	they have

**Participe
passé****connu**
*known*le lapin
*the rabbit*la lapine
*the lady rabbit***embrassé**
*kissed*le prof
*the teacher m.*la prof
*the teacher f.***caressé**
*caressed*le directeur
*the director m.*la directrice
*the director f.***déshabillé**
*undressed*le journaliste
*the journalist m.***chouchouté**
*pampered*la journaliste
*the journalist f.***chatouillé**
*tickled*le boulanger
*the baker*la boulangère
*the lady baker***aimé**
*loved*le boucher
*the butcher*la bouchère
*the lady butcher***baisé**
*fucked*le fromager
*the
cheesemonger***oublié**
*forgotten*la fromagère
*the lady
cheesemonger*1: Passé composé; 2: Plus-que-parfait;
3: Conditionnel passé; 4 : Subjonctif passé

You may find it useful to open the webpage www.hiv.net/pastparticiple, which will gradually introduce you to the magic of the 'rabbit' table.

To get the full power out of the remarkable composed tenses, let's again procede step by step:

1. Explore the full picture of **avoir + fait** (past participle of **faire to do/make**)
2. Discover frequent expressions with **faire**
3. Finding out how to produce *past participles*
4. Inspect the famous 7x7, the 49 most frequent action words
5. Complete the picture with the composed tenses of **avoir**

Attention

Please note that the past participle is the single most important feature of French grammar. It must therefore be as familiar to you as milk, bread and butter. So please repeat three times:

- *past participle* **participe passé**
- *past participle* **participe passé**
- *past participle* **participe passé**

☺!

1.7.2 Faire to do/make

The next table shows the so-called ‘composed tenses’ for the action word **faire**. The *past participle* of **faire** is **fait** *done/made*.

Concentrate on the three highlighted boxes showing the tenses of prime importance: the **passé composé**, the **plus-que-parfait** and the **conditionnel passé**.

Composed tenses consist of

- 1) derivatives of **avoir** (ai-as-a | avons-avez-ont, etc.)
or, rarely, **être** (see Level 2, page 164)
+
- 2) a *past participle* **participe passé**.

You have previously seen the simple **avoir** tenses **présent**, **imparfait**, **conditionnel présent**, etc. The corresponding composed tenses are **passé composé**, **plus-que-parfait** and **conditionnel passé**. It won’t take you more than a minute to get familiar with them.

{AUDIO}

	Passé composé <i>Perfect:</i> <i>I have done</i> <i>+ I did</i>	Plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect:</i> <i>I had done</i>	Passé antérieur <i>Preterit perfect:</i> <i>I had done</i> <i>(only in writing)</i>
j'	ai fait	avais fait	eus fait
tu	as fait	avais fait	eus fait
il/elle	a fait	avait fait	eut fait
nous	avons fait	avions fait	eûmes fait
vous	avez fait	aviez fait	eûtes fait
ils/elles	ont fait	avaient fait	eurent fait

	Futur antérieur <i>Future perfect:</i> <i>I will have done</i>	Conditionnel passé <i>Past conditional:</i> <i>I would have done</i>
j'	aurai fait	aurais fait
tu	auras fait	aurais fait
il/elle	aura fait	aurait fait
nous	aurons fait	aurions fait
vous	aurez fait	auriez fait
ils/elles	auront fait	auraient fait

	Subjonctif passé <i>Past subjunctive:</i> <i>that I did</i>	Subjonctif plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect subjunctive:</i> <i>that I had done</i> <i>(extremely rare)</i>
que j'	aie fait	eusse fait
que tu	aies fait	eusses fait
qu'il/elle	ait fait	eût fait
que nous	ayons fait	eussions fait
que vous	ayez fait	eussiez fait
qu'ils/elles	aient fait	eussent fait

In other words: As you become familiar with the **présent**, **imparfait** and **conditionnel présent** of the auxiliary action word **avoir**

- j'**ai** – tu **as** – il/elle **a** | nous **avons** – vous **avez** – ils/elles **ont**
- j'**avais** – tu **avais** – il/elle **avait** | nous **avions** – vous **aviez** – ils/elles **avaient**
- j'**aurais** – tu **aurais** – il/elle **aurait** | nous **aurions** – vous **auriez** – ils/elles **auraient**

you can build immediately the **passé composé**, the **plus-que-parfait** and the **conditionnel passé** of **faire** by just adding 'fait'...

- **Passé composé :**
j'**ai fait** – tu **as fait** – il/elle **a fait**
nous **avons fait** – vous **avez fait** – ils/elles **ont fait**
I, you, he/she did/made | we, you, they did/made
+
I, you have done/made, he/she has done/made |
we, you, they have done/made
- **Plus-que-parfait :**
j'**avais fait** – tu **avais fait** – il/elle **avait fait**
nous **avions fait** – vous **aviez fait** – ils/elles **avaient fait**
I, you, he/she had done/made | we, you, they had done/made
- **Conditionnel passé :**
j'**aurais fait** – tu **aurais fait** – il/elle **aurait fait**
nous **aurions fait** – vous **auriez fait** – ils/elles **auraient fait**
*I, you, he/she would have done/made |
we, you, they would have done/made*

1.7.3 Expressions with faire

{AUDIO} The French **faire** is used in a huge variety of expressions, often in combination with love, sport, housework. No need to say which action the French prefer.

faire l'amour	to make love
faire la sieste	to take a nap
faire un pompier	to give a blow job
faire les devoirs	to do homework
faire du sport	to do sports
faire du vélo	to go biking
faire du bateau	to go boating
faire des courses	to go shopping
faire la cuisine	to cook
faire la vaisselle	to do the dishes
faire la lessive	to do the laundry
faire le ménage	to clean the house
faire le lit	to make the bed
faire une promenade	to go for a walk
faire la fête	to party
faire le plein	to refuel

Let's do a final check of the three most important composed tenses – **passé composé**, **plus-que-parfait**, **conditionnel passé** – in France's preferred action:

{AUDIO}	Passé composé <i>Perfect: I (have) made love</i>	Plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect: I had made love, etc.</i>	
	j'	ai fait l'amour	avais fait l'amour
	tu	as fait l'amour	avais fait l'amour
	il/elle	a fait l'amour	avait fait l'amour
	nous	avons fait l'amour	avions fait l'amour
	vous	avez fait l'amour	aviez fait l'amour
	ils/elles	ont fait l'amour	avaient fait l'amour

	Conditionnel passé <i>Past conditional: I would have made love</i>	
	j'	aurais fait l'amour
	tu	aurais fait l'amour
	il/elle	aurait fait l'amour
	nous	aurions fait l'amour
	vous	auriez fait l'amour
	ils/elles	auraient fait l'amour

1.7.4 Past participles: how to get them

{AUDIO} As explained earlier, you will hear in a 10-minute dialogue the single elements of the various **avoir** sextet dozens of times, most often in combination with *past participles*. It is therefore crucial to understand how to form the *past participles*. As so often in French, you will just change the endings. For the biggest group of action words, those of **Group 1** which end in **-er** (there are more than 6,000 of them!), remove the **-er** to obtain the so-called root; then add **-é**. (Note that this does not change the pronunciation.) Some examples:

Infinitive		Root	Past participle	
to love	aimer	aim-	aimé	loved
to excuse	excuser	excus-	excusé	excused
to hope	espérer	espér-	espéré	hoped

Je l'ai aimé.	I loved him.
Elle l'a excusé.	She excused him.
Nous l'avons espéré.	We hoped so.

For **Group 2** action words (fewer than 300 words which comprise some of the words ending in **-ir**, see 362), cut the **-r**.

Infinitive		Past participle	
to think, to reflect	réfléchir	réfléchi	reflected, thought
to react	réagir	réagi	reacted
to succeed	réussir	réussi	succeeded

J'ai bien réfléchi.	I thought well about it.
Elle a très mal réagi.	I have given it some thought.
Nous avons réussi en tout.	She reacted very badly.
	We succeeded in everything.

Group 3 actions words are heterogeneous (see page 317) and have many different past participles. There are about 350 words in this third group.

Infinitive		Past participle	
to want	vouloir	voulu	wanted
to put	mettre	mis	put
to open	ouvrir	ouvert	opened

Je l'ai voulu et je l'ai eu.	I wanted it and I got it.
J'ai mis le pain sur la table.	I put the bread on the table.
Avez-vous ouvert la fenêtre ?	Have you opened the window?

1.7.5 Forty-nine action words

Now for the cherry on top. If you have the power and determination to learn the 49 most frequent French action words, do it now because soon you must know them all (yes, 100%). The following 7x7 words represent about 10% of the action words you'll learn over the next months. The relative importance of the Top 49 is shown in the word cloud.



Word cloud 1.7 – Action words 1-49

{AUDIO} If you are tired, learn at least 2x7 words because they represent 30% of all French action words you will hear throughout your entire life. The percentages in the table indicate the cumulative frequency. Group 3 and 2 **participes passé** are shown in blue and green.

Open www.gigafrench.com/actionwords01 for a quick smartphone check.

#*	Infinitive	Past participle	Infinitive	Past participle
1	faire*	fait	to do/make	done/made
2	dire	dit	to say	said
3	aller	allé (être**)	to go	gone
4	pouvoir	pu	can	could
5	voir	vu	to see	seen
6	savoir	su	to know	known
7	vouloir	voulu	to want	wanted
20.9%				
8	venir	venu (être)	to come	come
9	prendre	pris	to take	taken
10	devoir	dû	must	must
11	falloir	fallu	to have to	had to
12	passer	passé (être)	to pass	passed
13	parler	parlé	to speak	spoken
14	mettre	mis	to put	put
29.5%				
15	regarder	regardé	to look	looked
16	demander	demandé	to ask	asked
17	trouver	trouvé	to find	found
18	suivre	suivi	to follow	followed
19	croire	cru	to believe	believed
20	donner	donné	to give	given
21	penser	pensé	to think	thought
35.9%				
22	laisser	laissé	to leave	left
23	aimer	aimé	to love	loved
24	rester	resté (être)	to stay	stayed
25	tenir	tenu	to hold	held
26	arriver	arrivé (être)	to arrive	arrived
27	entendre	entendu	to hear	heard
28	sentir	senti	to feel/smell	felt/smelled
41.0%				

29	attendre	attendu	to wait	waited
30	connaître	connu	to know	knew
31	sortir	sorti (être)	to get out	got out
32	comprendre	compris	to understand	understood
33	sembler	semblé	to seem	seemed
34	devenir	devenu (être)	to become	become
35	ouvrir	ouvert	to open	opened

45.1%

36	revenir	revenu (être)	to come back	come back
37	partir	parti (être)	to leave	left
38	porter	porté	to carry	carried
39	rendre	rendu	to give back	given back
40	répondre	répondu	to answer	answered
41	appeler	appelé	to call	called
42	arrêter	arrêté	to stop	stopped

48.3%

43	vivre	vécu	to live	lived
44	chercher	cherché	to search for	searched for
45	paraître	paru	to appear	appeared
46	tomber	tombé (être)	to fall	fallen
47	lever	levé	to raise	risen
48	commencer	commencé	to begin	begun
49	finir	fini	to end	ended

51.2%

* The Top 10 French action words are all from Group 3 although this group comprises only around 350 words. Group 2 action words are rare.

** These action words form the composed tenses with **être**. See the details on page 180.

1.7.6 eu

Finally, we'll complete our *past participle* exercise with **j'ai eu** (*I had, I have had*). **Eu** is the *past participle* of **avoir**. A quick look is sufficient. Don't spend more than a minute on the following table:

{AUDIO}

	Passé composé <i>Perfect: I (have) had</i>	Plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect: I had had</i>	Passé antérieur <i>Pluperfect: I had had</i>
j'	ai eu	avais eu	eus eu
tu	as eu	avais eu	eus eu
il/elle	a eu	avait eu	eut eu
nous	avons eu	avions eu	eûmes eu
vous	avez eu	aviez eu	eûtes eu
ils/elles	ont eu	avaient eu	eurent eu

	Futur antérieur <i>Future perfect: I will have had</i>	Conditionnel passé <i>Past conditional: I would have had</i>
j'	aurai eu	aurais eu
tu	auras eu	aurais eu
il/elle	aura eu	aurait eu
nous	aurons eu	aurions eu
vous	auriez eu	auriez eu
ils/elles	auront eu	auraient eu

	Subjonctif passé <i>Past subjunctive: that I had</i>	Subjonctif plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect subjunctive: that I had had</i>
que j'	aie eu	eusse eu
que tu	aies eu	eusses eu
qu'il/elle	ait eu	eût eu
que nous	ayons eu	eussions eu
que vous	ayez eu	eussiez eu
qu'ils/elles	aient eu	eussent eu

Again: having seen the *simple tenses* of the auxiliary action word **avoir**

- j'**ai** – tu **as** – il/elle **a** | nous **avons** – vous **avez** – ils/elles **ont**
- j'**avais** – tu **avais** – il/elle **avait** | nous **avions** – vous **aviez** – ils/elles **avaient**
- j'**aurais** – tu **aurais** – il/elle **aurait** | nous **aurions** – vous **auriez** – ils/elles **auraient**

you can build the **passé composé**, the **plus-que-parfait** and the **conditionnel passé** within seconds. Just add 'eu'...

- **Passé composé :**
j'ai **eu** – tu **as eu** – il/elle **a eu**
nous **avons eu** – vous **avez eu** – ils/elles **ont eu**
I, you, he/she had | we, you, they had
or
I, you have had, he/she has had | we, you, they have had
- **Plus-que-parfait :**
j'**avais eu** – tu **avais eu** – il/elle **avait eu**
nous **avions eu** – vous **aviez eu** – ils/elles **avaient eu**
I, you, he/she had had | we, you, they had had
- **Conditionnel passé :**
j'**aurais eu** – tu **aurais eu** – il/elle **aurait eu**
nous **aurions eu** – vous **auriez eu** – ils/elles **auraient eu**
I, you, he/she would have had | we, you, they would have had

{AUDIO} The following examples make it immediately clear.

1. Family, friends, pets, etc.

j'ai eu	un petit pénis	I had	a small penis
tu as eu	deux sœurs	you had	two sisters
il/elle a eu	trois amants	he/she had	three lovers
nous avons eu	quatre maîtresses	we had	four mistresses
vous avez eu	cinq chats	you had	five cats
ils/elles ont eu	six chiens	they had	six dogs

2. Hunger, thirst, fear, etc.

j'avais eu*	faim	I had been*	hungry
tu avais eu	soif	you had been	thirsty
il/elle avait eu	du retard	he/she had been	late
nous avions eu	peur	we had been	afraid
vous aviez eu	raison	you had been	right
ils/elles avaient eu	tort	they had been	wrong

* In these examples, French uses **avoir** to *have* while English uses *to be*.

3. Problems, etc.

j'aurais eu	un problème	I would have had	a problem
tu aurais eu	une hépatite	you would have had	hepatitis
il/elle aurait eu	le sida	he/she would have had	AIDS
nous aurions eu	une dépression	we would have had	a depression
vous auriez eu	une névrose religieuse	you would have had	a religious neurosis
ils/elles auraient eu	une intoxication alimentaire	they would have had	food poisoning

Hold on a minute – this is a watershed in your life! For the first time ever, you have seen the complete picture of one single French action word.

Infinitif		avoir to have	
Participé passé	eu		
Participé présent	ayant		
Impératif	aie aies ayez		

[AUXILI]	Present		Imparfait		Passé simple	
	Present / I have	Imparfait / had / I used to have	Simple past / had			
j	ai	avais	eut			
tu	as	avais	eut			
il/elle	a	avait	eut			
nous	avons	avions	eûmes			
vous	avez	aviez	eûtes			
ils/elles	ont	avaient	eurent			

j	Futur		Conditionnel présent	
	Futur / will have	Present conditional / I would have		
j	aurai	aurais		
tu	auras	aurais		
il/elle	aura	aurait		
nous	aurons	auraient		
vous	aurez	auraient		
ils/elles	auront	auraient		

que j	Subjonctif présent		Subjonctif imparfait	
	Present / I have	Imparfait / had		
que j	aie	eusse		
que tu	aies	eusses		
qu'il/elle	ait	eût		
que nous	ayions	eussions		
que vous	ayiez	eussiez		
qu'ils/elles	aient	eussent		

j	Futur antérieur		Conditionnel passé	
	Future perfect / I will have had	Past conditional / I would have had		
j	aurai eu	aurais eu		
tu	auras eu	aurais eu		
il/elle	aura eu	aurait eu		
nous	aurions eu	auraient eu		
vous	auriez eu	auraient eu		
ils/elles	auraient eu	auraient eu		

que j	Subjonctif passé		Subjonctif plus-que-parfait	
	Past / I had	Past perfect / had I had		
que j	eusse	eusse		
que tu	eusses	eusses		
qu'il/elle	eût	eût		
que nous	eussions	eussions		
que vous	eussiez	eussiez		
qu'ils/elles	eussent	eussent		

Were you prepared for that? Did anyone tell you that French could be that complicated? Probably not. The French system of 14 tenses is shocking, indeed. But the worst is over. From now on, actions words will be yours!

1.7.7 Toolbox 2

Composed tenses

{AUDIO} Please dedicate a few minutes to these 7 technical words:

1	Passé composé	<i>Perfect</i>
2	Plus-que-parfait	<i>Past perfect</i>
3	<i>Passé antérieur</i>	<i>Preterit perfect</i>
4	<i>Futur antérieur</i>	<i>Future perfect</i>
5	Conditionnel passé	<i>Past conditional</i>
6	<i>Subjonctif passé</i>	<i>Past subjunctive</i>
7	<i>Subjonctif plus-que-parfait</i>	<i>Past perfect subjunctive</i>

The **passé composé** (for example ‘j’ai fait’, in English *I did* or *I have done*) is the most commonly used past tense in French. It expresses an action that has been completed either at the time you speak or at some known or unknown time in the past.

The **plus-que-parfait** (for example, ‘j’avais fait’ *I had made*) and the **conditionnel passé** (for example, ‘j’aurais fait’ *I would have made*) are also frequently used.

The futur antérieur (for example, ‘j’aurai fait’ *I will have made*; see Level xxx) is less common, as is the subjonctif passé (for example ‘que j’aie fait’ *that I made*; see Level xxx).

The *passé antérieur* and the *subjonctif plus-que-parfait* are rare and used almost only in literature and historical accounts. It is enough that you know that they exist.

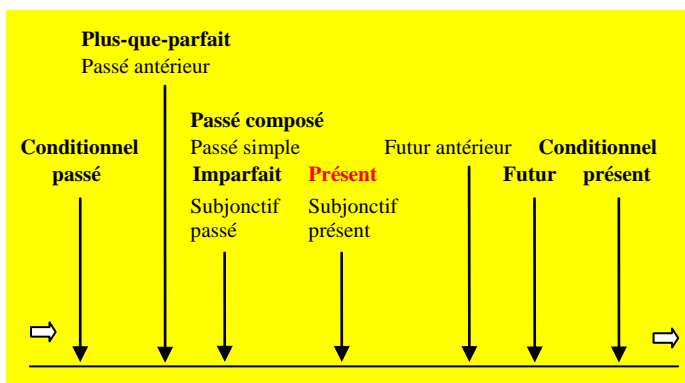
1.8 Full timeline

Time for a summary: The following illustration puts the 12 important French tenses (‘time slots’) on a timeline. If you feel confused, come back later; after a few weeks, the 12

tenses will look familiar. Seven tenses are an absolute must – now, today, before midnight. These are the glorious **présent**, **passé composé**, **imparfait**, **plus-que-parfait**, **futur**, **conditionnel présent** and **conditionnel passé**.

Some of the names sound complicated, but there are only 12 of them. In comparison with the thousands of French words you will learn in the future, that's next to nothing.

(The rare *subjonctif imparfait* and *subjonctif plus-que-parfait* are not included in the figure).



1.9 Présent

Of the 7 glorious tenses, one tense stands out and will require your constant attention: the **présent**. In French grammar, the present is more diversified than all other 13 tenses combined.

Pay particular attention to **être** *to be* and **caresser** *to caress*.

Être is almost as important as **avoir** (see page 164) and **caresser** is the prototype for more than 95% of all French action words, the so-called Group 1 action words ending in –**er** (see page 246).

{AUDIO}

	être <i>to be</i> <i>I am, you are, he/she is</i> <i>we, you, they are</i>	caresser <i>to caress</i> <i>I caress, you caress,</i> <i>he/she caresses</i> <i>we, you, they caress</i>	
je	suis	caresse	I
tu	es	caresses	you
il/elle	est	caresse	he/she
nous	sommes	caressons	we
vous	êtes	caressez	you
ils/elles	sont	caressent	they
Part. passé	été	caressé	
Page	164	246	

Faire *to do/make* is the third most important action word (see page 94 and 242); **agir** *to act* is a prototype for Group 2 action words (see page 362).

	faire <i>to do/make</i> <i>I do, you do, he/she does</i> <i>we, you, they do</i>	agir <i>to act</i> <i>I act, you act, he/she acts</i> <i>we, you, they act</i>	
je/j'	fais	agis	I
tu	fais	agis	you
il/elle	fait	agit	he/she
nous	faisons	agissons	we
vous	faites	agissez	you
ils/elles	font	agissent	they
Part. passé	fait	agi	
See page	242	362	

	aller <i>to go</i> <i>I go, you go, he/she goes</i> <i>we, you, they go</i>	savoir <i>to know</i> <i>I know, you know, he/she knows</i> <i>we, you, they know</i>	
je	vais	sais	I
tu	vas	sais	you
il/elle	va	sait	he/she
nous	allons	savons	we
vous	allez	savez	you
ils/elles	vont	savent	they
Part. passé	allé	su	
See page	180	493	

1.10 Preview of Group 1 action words

From the 49er table (page 100) you have learned dozens of Group 1 action words, those ending in **-er** and representing more than 90% of all action words. You certainly wonder how the simple tenses of Group 1 look. You'll find the full discussion in Level 3 (page 246, 'Petting'); in the meantime, have an hors-d'œuvre of *caressing* with **caresser**:

Infinitif	caresser
Participe passé	caressé
Impératif	caresse caressons caressez

{AUDIO}	Présent <i>I caress, etc.</i>	Imparfait <i>I caressed, etc.</i>
je	caresse	caressais
tu	caresses	caressais
il/elle	caresse	caressait
nous	caressons	caressions
vous	caressez	caressiez
ils/elles	caressent	caressaient

	Futur <i>I will caress, etc.</i>	Conditionnel présent <i>I would caress, etc.</i>
je	caresserai	caresserais
tu	caresseras	caresserais
il/elle	caressera	caresserait
nous	caresserons	caresserions
vous	caresserez	caresseriez
ils/elles	caresseront	caresseraient

1.11 Negation (I)

{AUDIO} Finally go a tiny step further. Put **n'** and **pas** around **ai-as-a | avons-avez-ont**. That gives you **n'ai pas – n'as pas – n'a pas | n'avons pas – n'avez pas – n'ont pas**. By doing so, you negate what you said earlier:

Singular

je	n'ai pas	I	do not have
tu	n'as pas	you	do not have
il/elle	n'a pas	he/she	does not has

Plural

nous	n'avons pas	we	do not have
vous	n'avez pas	you	do not have
ils/elles	n'ont pas	they	do not have

Note that whenever a French two-letter word ending in **-e** (je, ce, de, le, me, ne, que, se, te) comes before a vowel (a,e,i,o,u), the semi-vowel *y* or a mute *h* (more on that later), the final **-e** is replaced by an apostrophe: **j', c', d', l', m', n', qu', s', t'**. This is true also for **que** which becomes **qu'**.

Some examples:

		Statement is
Dieu existe.	God exists.	wrong
Dieu n'existe pas .	God doesn't exist.	right
Dieu a créé l'homme à son image.	God created man in his own image.	wrong
Dieu n'a pas créé l'homme à son image.	God didn't create man in his own image.	right
L'homme a créé Dieu à son image.	Man created God in his own image.	right
L'homme a inventé l'amour.	Man invented love.	right
Dieu est Amour.	God is Love.	right

In Level 2 (page 194), we'll go into the details of negatives.

1.12 Dessert

Do you want some exclusive action words? Look at this:

{AUDIO} Je lis, j'écoute, j'écris, je questionne, je réponds, je narre, je nomme, je discute, j'interpelle, je prie, je pense, j'apprends, j'enseigne, je jouis, je ris, je vis, donc je suis.
(Stéphane Zagdanski)

I read, I listen, I write, I question, I answer, I narrate, I name, I discuss, I call out, I pray, I think, I learn, I teach, I enjoy, I laugh, I live, therefore I am.

1.13 Summary + Outlook

Summary

Exploding an action word into 40 pieces is called *conjugation*. **Avoir**, the tip of the iceberg, is the *unconjugated form*; this unconjugated form is called *the infinitive*. The 40 forms **eu, ayant, ai, as, a, avons, avez, ont, avais, avait, avions, aviez, avaient, aurai, auras, aura, aurons, aurez, auront, aurais, aurait, aurions, auriez, auraient, aie, aies, ait, ayons, ayez, aient, eus, eut, eûmes, eûtes, eurent, eusses, eût, eussions, eussiez, eussent** are *conjugated forms* of **avoir**. French is clearly more complicated than English as it needs 40 words where English needs a judicious and fine-tuned cocktail of just 12 words (have, has, having, had, will, would, am, are, is, was, were, been).

Note that French infinitives are always single words while English infinitives are accompanied by the word *to*: **aller to go, venir to come**.

Outlook

The bad news: you'll have to master more than 30 different

forms for every single action word, be it **faire** to do/make, **aller** to go, **venir** to come, **vouloir** to want, **savoir** to know, **pouvoir** to be able to, **voir** to see – or any other of the 500 to 1000 French action words you’ll learn over the coming months. Although precise rules describe how to obtain these 30 different forms, it will take you months to interiorize them to a point where you can build them in ‘auto-pilot mode’, on-the-fly, without even thinking about it.

The good news: you cannot fail. Our brain is hard-wired to accomplish these acrobatic auto-pilot grammar tasks.

Persevere and you’ll succeed faster than you can imagine.

Today, you have learned 20 sextets (the 7 single and the 7 composed tenses of **avoir** + the **présent** sextets of **être**, **caresser**, **faire**, **agir**, **aller** and **savoir**). As the number of entirely distinct sextets does not exceed 100, you have already gotten 20% of all action word roadblocks out of your way. We’ll keep you updated on your progress.

II. Grammar

We said earlier that learning French consists of three fairly distinct tasks:

1. **Memorizing the meaning of thousands of words.** On page xxx, we’ll present you with more details.
2. **Mastering French action words.** The last 40 pages have shown you the complete picture of **avoir**. At every level we’ll repeat the exercise with other action words. Mastering them is the most painstaking part of French grammar.

3. **French ‘rest’ grammar.** All other aspects of French grammar taken together are less demanding than French action words.



From left to right: Montmartre, Champs-Élysées, Tour Montparnasse
© Copyright: Marie de France

1.14 Word classes

Grammar is about 1) words being stitched together to form sentences and 2) how some of the words get modified in the process. Let's start by grouping words into classes (you may also call them *parts of speech*). Almost all French words belong to one of the following 8 classes:

1. **action words** (7,000)
2. articles (10)
3. **adjectives** (11,000)
4. **nouns** (31,000)
5. adverbs (basic adverbs: 100)
6. conjunctions (50)
7. prepositions (40)
8. pronouns (70)

The numbers indicate how 50,000 words of a medium-sized dictionary would distribute among the 8 word classes. Note that action words, nouns and adjectives represent more than 99% of all French words. Our peanuts from page 49 – *adverbs, conjunctions, prepositions, articles and pronouns* – total less than 300.

The coming 20 pages will give you a short introduction to each word class.

1.15 Adjectives and Nouns

First, some English examples for adjectives and nouns:

- Adjectives: *legal, fundamental, big, green*
- Nouns: *abortion, right, door, apple*

Remember one of the fundamental principles of French grammar, the **gender and number variability** of some (not all) nouns and adjectives (page 62): an **-e** designates a feminine gender and an **-s** a plural. The table you will see again and again:

		Gender (Sex)	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number (How many?)	Singular		-e
	Plural	-s	-es

We called this scheme the **ES rule**. Let's explore it step by step:

Mon petit chéri est fatigué.

My little darling is tired.

and let's do a preliminary analysis:

1. **mon** *my* is a so-called *possessive adjective* which is used to declare ownership of things. When referring to people, *possessive adjectives* indicate relationship.
2. **petit** *little* is an *adjective* which describes qualities of people, animals and things;
3. **chéri** *darling* is a *noun*, a word that usually refers to a person, place, thing, or idea;
4. **est** means *is; and*
5. **fatigué** *tired* is, again, an adjective.

Now change gender and number of your little darling and see how the noun and the adjectives change. Note that

- the final **-s** is never pronounced
- all four variations of *chéri* (*chéri*, *chérie*, *chériss*, *chéries*) and *fatigué* (*fatigué*, *fatiguée*, *fatigués*, *fatiguées*) have the same pronunciation

{AUDIO}

1. One male

Mon petit chéri est fatigué.

My little darling is tired.

2. One female

Ma petite chérie est fatiguée.

My little darling is tired.

3. More than one male

Mes petits chéris sont fatigués.

My little darlings are tired.

4. More than one female

Mes petites chéries sont fatiguées.

My little darlings are tired.

Depending on the situation, the tone of these sentences may vary from sorrow to sympathy or veiled reproach. Typical situations include hard physical work, tough jobs, or sex.

1.15.1 Possessive adjectives

Managing possessive adjectives in French is only slightly more tricky than in English. Where English has one word – *my* –, French has three: **mon** – **ma** for singular nouns and **mes** for nouns in the plural. You'll use **mon** when your darling is a boy or a man (or for other masculine nouns); **ma** when your darling is a girl or a woman (or for other feminine nouns); and **mes** for nouns in the plural, regardless of their gender.

Mon petit chéri !	My little darling!	boy or man
Ma petite chérie !	My little darling!	girl or woman
Mes petits chéris !	My little darlings!	boys or men
Mes petites chéries !	My little darlings!	girls or women

		Gender (Sex)	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number (How many?)	Singular	mon	ma
	Plural	mes	

You will see later (page 276)

- **ton, ta, tes** *your*
and
- **son, sa, ses** *his/her*.

1.15.2 Adjectives

Let's analyse the word **petit** *little* in our four sentences.

Mon petit chéri !	My little darling!	boy or man
Ma petite chérie !	My little darling!	girl or woman
Mes petits chéris !	My little darlings!	boys or men
Mes petites chéries !	My little darlings!	girls or women

As you see, *little* remains unchanged throughout the four sentences because English adjectives are invariable and unaffected by gender or number.

Not so in French. In adjectives like **petit**, different *endings* indicate gender (sex) and number (how many?). You'll add

- **-e** when the corresponding noun is feminine singular (one female darling: **petite**)
- **-s** when the corresponding noun is masculine plural (two or more darlings: **petits**)
- **-es** when the corresponding noun is feminine plural (two or more female darlings: **petites**)

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular	petit	petite
	Plural	petits	petites

Or just the endings:

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular		-e
	Plural	-s	-es

Final reminder

Singular: one person, one thing, one idea, one place, etc.

Plural: more than one person, more than one thing, more than one idea, etc.

Masculine: a boy, a man or another masculine person, thing, idea, etc.

Feminine: a girl, a woman or another feminine person, thing, idea, etc.

1.15.2.1 Demonstrative adjectives

{AUDIO} A sub-species of adjectives are the so-called *demonstrative adjectives*, the equivalent of the English *this* and *these*. You'll use them to emphasize one specific person, animal, place, thing or idea.

ce petit Dieu	this little God	masculine singular
cette vierge	this virgin	feminine singular
ces petits Dieux	these little Gods	masculine plural
ces vierges	these virgins	feminine plural
cet homme, cet ange	this man, this angel	masculine singular

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular	ce (cet*)	cette
	Plural	ces	

* Use **cet** before **masculine** nouns beginning with a vowel (*a, e, i, o, u*), the semi-vowel *y* or a mute *h*: ange, homme, hôtel, hôpital, etc.

1.15.3 Nouns

Finally, let's check the noun in our four sentences: **chéri** *darling*. In French, as in English, you usually add an **-s** to mark the plural. Some (but not all) words add an **-e** to distinguish the feminine form.

Mon petit chéri est fatigué !	My little darling is tired!	boy or man
Ma petite chérie est fatiguée !	My little darling is tired!	girl or woman
Mes petits chéris sont fatigués !	My little darlings are tired!	boys or men
Mes petites chéries sont fatiguées !	My little darlings are tired!	girls or women

Again, add

- **-e** when the noun is feminine singular (one lady darling: **chérie**)
- **-s** when the noun is masculine plural (two or more darlings; in our case **chéris**)
- **-es** when the noun is feminine plural (two or more lady darlings: **chéries**)

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular	chéri	chérie
	Plural	chéris	chéries

Exception. Words ending with an –s don't change in the plural:

Singular		Plural	
le pénis	penis	les pénis	penises
le clitoris	clitoris	les clitoris	clitorises

1.16 Articles

{AUDIO} English has one definite article ‘*the*’ and the indefinite articles ‘*a, an*’. French has three definite articles (**le, la | les**) and three indefinite articles (**un, une | des**).

1.16.1 Definite article

The English definite article *the* has three equivalents in French. In the plural (whenever you have more than one person, thing, idea, or place), the definite article is **les**, no matter if the gender is masculine or feminine. In the singular (when you have only one person, thing, etc.), the definite article is **le** for masculine words and **la** for feminine words.

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular	le	la
	Plural	les	

le lit	the bed
la chambre	the bedroom
les lits	the beds
les chambres	the bedrooms

Exception. Because **le** and **la** don't like to be in front of a **vowel** (a, e, i, o, u, y) or a mute *h*, you'll use **l'** in these cases:

l' hôtel <i>m.</i>	hotel
l' histoire <i>f.</i>	history
l' amour <i>m.</i>	love
l' orgasme <i>m.</i>	orgasm
l' éjaculation <i>f.</i>	ejaculation
l' eau <i>f.</i>	water

Note that every French noun is either masculine or feminine and that you **cannot** guess the gender. The only reliable way to know the gender is memorizing the article while learning a noun:

le pied	foot
la main	hand

When a noun begins with a vowel or a mute *h* (*l'*ami, *l'*hôtel), memorize the indefinite article **un – une** *a, an* instead:

un amour	love
un orgasme	orgasm
une éjaculation	ejaculation
une histoire	history
une eau	water
un ami	friend (male)
une amie	friend (female)
un hôtel	hotel
une hôtesse de l'air	stewardess

Remember the words **le**, **la** and **les** in the completely different context of so-called *personal object pronouns* (page 55):

Je **le** désire. *I want **him**.*

Je **la** désire. *I want **her**.*

Je **les** désire. *I want **them**.*

For more details, see page 280.

1.16.2 Indefinite article

un préservatif	a condom
un orgasme	a orgasm
une éjaculation	an ejaculation
des préservatifs	(some) condoms
des orgasmes	(some) orgasms
des éjaculations	(some) ejaculations

The *indefinite article* (English: *a, an*) is **un** for masculine nouns and **une** for feminine nouns. The plural for both genders is **des** (a contraction of *de+les*). **Des** can be translated into English as *some* but is often omitted.

The indefinite article is commonly used for persons or objects that *can be counted* (girls, apples, boys).

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular	un	une
	Plural	des	

1.16.3 Partitive article

Je veux du sexe.	I want sex. (du is not translated in English)
Je vais boire du lait.	I'm going to drink milk. (du is not translated in English)
Je vais prendre de la bière.	I am going to have (some) beer.
Je prendrai de l' eau.	I'll take (some) water.

In contrast, the so-called *partitive article* refers to *non-countables*, for example 'sex'. You can measure sex, but you cannot count it ('Two or three sexes, please?') Other examples for non-countables are **argent** (*m.*) *money*, **lait** *milk*, **eau** (*f.*) *water*, **sucre** *sugar*.

The **partitive article** consists of two words: **de + article**.

Note that

1. **de + le** always contract to **du**
2. **de + les** always contract to **des**

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular	du*	de la
		de l'***	
	Plural	des*	

* **de + le** is not allowed by French grammar; instead, you'll 'condense' it to **du**; for the same reason, **de + les** become **des**.

** Use always **de l'** before nouns starting with a vowel or a mute *h*, be they masculine or feminine.

Exception: In negative constructions, the default **partitive articles (du – de la – de l' | des)** all change to **de/d'**. (In the following examples, **de l'** becomes **d'** and **des** becomes **de**:

Affirmative	J'ai de l'expérience.	I have experience.
Negative	Je n'ai pas d' expérience.	I don't have (any) experience.
Affirmative	J'ai des préservatifs.	I have condoms.
Negative	Je n'ai pas de préservatifs.	I have no condoms.

1.16.4 Pronunciation Pitfalls

Please note that adding an **-s** to form a plural doesn't change the pronunciation of the noun.

Singular		Plural
l'inégalité <i>f.</i>	inequality	les inégalités
l'injustice <i>f.</i>	injustice	les injustices
la violence	violence	les violences
le meurtre	assassination	les meurtres
la guerre	war	les guerres
le génocide	genocide	les génocides
l'homme <i>m.</i>	man	les hommes
l'histoire	history	les histoires

So how do you know if a word is singular or plural? In writing, the final **-s** gives you the clue. In hearing, only the article can tell you the difference, **le** and **la** indicating a singular noun and **les** indicating a plural noun.

Note how crucial the correct pronunciation of **le** and **les** is. Look at this:

J'ai fait l'amour avec le garçon.	I made love with the boy.
J'ai fait l'amour avec les garçons.	I made love with the boys.

In English, everything's straight: you make love with one boy or more than one boys. The final **-s** tells it all. Not so in French. When you hear these sentences, the difference between romantic love and group sex depends entirely on the definite article – if it is the singular **le**, it could be love, if it is the plural **les**, it might be more randy sexual behaviour. Students from Italy and Spain typically have problems differentiating **le** and **les**. Please refer to the video xxx to perceive the difference between true love and group sex. Your future might depend on it.

1.17 Outlook: Nouns and Adjectives

Basics solved

In the coming levels, we will present more nouns and more adjectives. Don't expect anything fundamentally new. The only (minor) roadblocks to the full understanding of these word classes are plural irregularities (example: *le cheval horse* | *les chevaux horses*) or, in the case of adjectives, gender irregularities (*cruel* is **cruel** in the masculine and **cruelle** in the feminine). Compared to the complexity of a fully expanded action word table, these are ethereal subtleties. Consider the problem of nouns and adjectives as basically solved.

1.18 Jokers

You are now familiar with action words ('verbs'), nouns, and adjectives. More than 99% of all French words are from these word classes.

We shall not end Level 1 without talking about the remaining four word classes. The approximate number of these words is indicated in parentheses:

- Adverbs (basic adverbs: 100)
- Conjunctions (50)
- Prepositions (40)
- Pronouns (70)
 - personal (I, me, you, he, him, she...)
 - possessive (mine, yours, his...)
 - demonstrative (this, that, these, those)
 - interrogative (who, what, which)
 - relative (who, whom, which)

For each class, we'll show you a few examples. If your word brain has some storage capacity left, learn them today; otherwise, come back later. The important thing is that you 1) know what adverbs, conjunctions, prepositions and pronouns are and 2) remember that their number is limited and can be mastered in a few weeks.

1.18.1 Adverbs

{AUDIO} Adverbs are invariable words that **provide additional information** for

- an action word
- an adjective
- or another adverb

The additional information covers a wide range of phenomena: time and space (when and where), manner (how), quantity (how often) and degree (comparison).

Let's start with 11 common words:

		Adverb of
hier	yesterday	time
aujourd'hui	today	time
demain	tomorrow	time
ici	here	place
là	there	place
bien	well	manner
mal	poorly	manner
peu	few, little	quantity
beaucoup	a lot	quantity
plus	more	comparison
moins	less	comparison

1.18.2 Conjunctions

{AUDIO} Conjunctions (literally: joining together) link similar words or groups of words. French uses two types of conjunctions:

1. Coordinating conjunctions join elements with an equal importance. There are only 7 of them:

et	and
ou	or
mais	but
donc	thus, therefore
car	for, because
or	yet
ni	neither

For today, please memorize **et** *and*, **ou** *or*, **mais** *but*, and **donc** *thus, therefore*.

2. Subordinate conjunctions link dependent clauses to main clauses. The most important one is **que** *that*:

Dis-lui	que	Dieu est un sadique.
Main clause	Subordinate conjunction	Dependent clause
<i>Tell him</i>	<i>that</i>	<i>God is a sadist.</i>

There are a few dozen subordinate conjunctions. You will easily identify them because most finish with **que** (*parce que because, alors que while, whereas*) or incorporate **que** (*lorsque when, puisque since [reason]*).

Here are 7 important subordinate conjunctions:

parce que	because
pendant que	while
dès que	as soon as
si	if
même si	even if
au moment où	(at the moment) when

Check these sentence fragments:

parce qu'il est bête	because he's stupid
pendant que nous faisons l'amour	while we made love
si tu viens tout de suite	if you come right now
dès que nous aurons fini	as soon as we have finished
même si ce n'est pas possible	even if it isn't possible
au moment où il est rentré	when he came back

1.18.3 Prepositions

Prepositions are short words such as *at, of, in, on, to, with* which **link words in a sentence**. They are usually used in front of nouns (boy, girl, flower, tree) or pronouns (him, her, them) and show, for example,

1. **Where** something takes place (*at* my friend's place)
2. **When** something happens (*before* making love)
3. **Descriptive information** (the doctor *with* the pony tail)

{AUDIO} The most common French prepositions are

de	of, from
à	at, in, to, on, from, until
dans	in
avec	with
sans	without
entre	between
pour	for

The five prepositions **dans, avec, sans, entre** and **pour** are shown below in proportion to their frequency of use. The even more frequent **de** and **à** which have multiple translations are not shown.



Word cloud 1.8 – Dans, avec, sans, etc.

As **de** and **à** have multiple functions and meanings, we'll present them in more detail.

1.18.3.1 de

You'll use the preposition **de/d'** to define possession, origin, content, cause or other defining features. Depending on the context, English translations include *of, from, in, about* and *by*.

Use

Possession or belonging	le palais du (de+le) président	the President's palace
	le portable d' Oscar	Oscar's mobile
Origin or starting point	Je suis de Paris.	I'm <i>from</i> Paris.
Material or content	une assiette de riz	a plate <i>of</i> rice
Cause or authorship	mourir d' amour	to die <i>from</i> love
	un livre de BSK	a book <i>by</i> BSK
'about'	il parle de sa femme	he talks <i>about</i> his wife
Matter	une pièce d' or	a golden coin
Price	un livre de 200€	a 200€ book

Remember what we said about the *partitive article* above (page 125):

1. **de + le** always contract to **du**
2. **de + les** always contract to **des**

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular	du*	de la
		de l'***	
	Plural	des*	

* **de + le** is not allowed by French grammar; instead, you'll 'condense' it to **du**; for the same reason, **de + les** 'condenses' to **des**.

** Use always **de l'** before nouns starting with a vowel or a mute *h*, be they masculine or feminine.

1.18.3.2 à

The preposition **à**, too, has many different uses.

Use

Location, destination	J'habite à Paris.	I live <i>in</i> Paris.
Distance	Je vais à Londres. Le Louvre est à dix minutes d'ici.	I'm going <i>to</i> London. The Louvre is 10 minutes <i>from</i> here.
Time	Il viendra à midi.	He'll come <i>at</i> noon.
Possession	Cette maison est à Jean-Claude.	This is Jean-Claude's house.
In some infinitive constructions	Tu n'as rien à dire.	You have nothing <i>to</i> say (object).

When the preposition **à** is followed by the definite articles **le** or **les**, the following rules apply:

1. **à + le** always contract to **au**
2. **à + les** always contract to **aux**

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular	au*	à la
		à l**	
	Plural	aux	

* au is the contraction of **à + le**; aux is the contraction of **à + les**.

** Use **à l'** before nouns starting with a vowel or a mute h, be they masculine or feminine.

1.18.4 Jokers 1-21

Remember that jokers include *adverbs*, *conjunctions* and *prepositions*. Remember also the Top 21 jokers from page 50. Although they represent only about 10% of all jokers, they

account for 75% of the French jokers you will see and hear in your life. Time has come to learn them ALL with your smartphone: www.gigafrench.com/jokers01. If you were Italian I'd invite you to 'Toglitele subito dalle palle!', take them right out of your balls!

{AUDIO}

1	de	of, from, in, about, by, etc. (multiple translations)	prep
2	à	to, at, from, etc. (multiple translations)	prep
3	et	and	conj
4	ou	or	conj
5	qui	who, which	adv
6	que	whom, that; what; than	adv
7	où	where	adv
8	avec	with	prep
9	sans	without	prep
10	ne...pas	not	adv
11	dans	in, among	prep
12	pour	for; in order to	prep
13	sur	on	prep
14	sous	under	prep
15	plus	more	adv
16	comme	like; because, since	conj
17	tout	everything, anything	adv
18	si	yes; if; so	conj, adv
19	bien	well	adv
20	il y a	there is, there are; ago	adv
21	par	by, through	prep

Find the next jokers on page 213.



Word cloud 1.9 – Jokers 8-21

1.19 Pronouns

Pronouns are great simplifiers of speech because they replace nouns (Felix, Charlotte, brother, sister, tree, car) with the simpler and shorter words *he, she, it*, etc. You know the *personal subject pronouns* (PSPs) **je – tu – il/elle | nous – vous – ils/elles**:

	Singular	
1 st person singular	je/j'	I
2 nd person singular	tu	you
3 rd person singular	il/elle	he/she (it*)
	Plural	
1 st person plural	nous	we
2 nd person plural	vous	you
3 rd person plural	ils/elles	they

You also recall the *personal object pronouns* (POPs: **me, te, le/la | nous, vous, les + lui, leur**). Remember the tables from page 55 showing **personal subject pronouns** (PSPs) in red and **personal object pronouns** (POPs) in blue. Please repeat them:

{AUDIO}

Je te désire.	I want you .
Tu me désires.	You want me .
Il la désire.	He wants her .
Elle le désire.	She wants him .

Nous vous désirons.	We want you (plural).
Vous nous désirez.	You want us .
Ils les désirent.	They (boys, men) want them (boys, girls, men, women).
Elles les désirent.	They (girls, women) want them (boys, girls, men, women).

{AUDIO}

Je te résiste.	I am resisting* you .
Tu me résistes.	You are resisting me .
Il lui résiste.	He is resisting her .
Elle lui résiste.	She is resisting him .

Nous vous résistons.	We are resisting you (plural).
Vous nous résistez.	You are resisting us .
Ils leur résistent.	They (boys, men) are resisting them (boys, girls, men, women).
Elles leur résistent.	They (girls, women) are resisting them (boys, girls, men, women).

{AUDIO} Note that before action words starting with a vowel, **me, te, le/la** become **m', t', l'/l'**:

Tu m' aimes ?	<i>Do you love me.</i>
Je t' aime.	<i>I love you.</i>
Je l' aime.	<i>I love him.</i>
Je l' aime.	<i>I love her.</i>
Tu nous aimes?	<i>Do you love us?</i>
Je vous aime.	<i>I love you.</i>
Tu les aimes?	<i>Do you love them?</i>

We will go into more detail on page 280.

1.19.1 Relative pronouns: Qui & Que

{AUDIO} The words **qui** and **que** are ubiquitous in French. Look at the sentence *Let me present you my friend Laurent **who** was president of the COP21*. The sentence can be split into two parts:

Main clause	<i>Let me present you my friend Laurent</i>
Relative clause	<i>who was the president of the COP21.</i>

Who is the so-called *relative pronoun* which refers to your friend Laurent. Most importantly, *who* is the *subject* of the following relative clause! In French, *who* would be translated as **qui**.

Now look at the following sentence:

Main clause	<i>Let me present you my friend Laurent</i>
Relative clause	<i>whom I met at ENA (one of the most prestigious and elite French schools) in 1971.</i>

As you see, the main clause is identical, but the relative clause is radically different. *Who* has become *whom*, and the subject of the relative clause is *I*. In French, *whom* would be translated with **que**.

In other words: relative pronouns introduce relative clauses and link them to previously mentioned words. The difference between **qui** and **que** is simple: **qui** functions as the **subject** of the relative clause whereas **que** (**qu'** before vowel and mute *h*) functions as the **direct object** of the relative clause. See first '**qui** as subject' of the relative clause:

Main clause	Relative clause; qui/who is the <i>subject</i> of the relative clause.
Je te présente mon ami Laurent	qui a été le président de la COP21 ('Conference Of the Parties', Conférence sur les Changements Climatiques 2015).
<i>Let me present you my friend Laurent</i>	who was the president of the COP21 (Conference on Climate Change).

Second, see '**que** as object' of the relative clause:

Main clause	Relative clause; que is the <i>object</i> of the relative clause because the subject is 'je' / 'I'.
Je te présente mon ami Laurent	que j'ai connu à l'ENA (École nationale d'administration) en 1971 (mille neuf cents soixante-onze).
<i>Let me present you my friend Laurent</i>	whom I met at ENA (one of the most prestigious French elite schools) in 1971.

Note that

- **qui** never contracts with other words.
- **que** becomes **qu'** before a word beginning with a vowel, most frequently with the personal pronouns **il/elle** and **ils/elles**:

- qu'il
- qu'elle
- qu'ils
- qu'elles

In English, you can often omit *whom* – in French, you can't ever leave it out:

Je te montrerai la femme **qu'il** a aimée. I'll show you the woman (whom) he loved.

Je te montrerai l'homme **qu'elle** a aimé. I'll show you the man (whom) she loved.

Outlook

At every new level, you will discover more jokers (adverbs, conjunctions, prepositions). Remember that their number is limited (<300). However, it may take you substantially longer to memorize **quoique** *even though*, **de façon que** *in such a way that*, **jusqu'à ce que** *until* than simple nouns such as **le pain** *bread*, **le fromage** *cheese* and **le vin** *wine*. In any case, mastering adverbs, conjunctions, and prepositions is an immediate task. Remember that they are *content-insensitive* and you'll use them everywhere, anytime and independent of the subject you are talking or writing about. My advice: devote particular attention to these few hundred words. You'll continue on page 213.

1.20 Bits and Pieces

1.20.1 One-word sentences

One-word sentences are the easiest part of grammar. Almost all of them are orders:

Viens ! [vjɛ̃]	Come!	Used both in a spatial sense and figuratively (orgasm, etc.)
Arrête ! [aʁɛt]	Stop!	Used to stop an action (cars approaching, children running, lovers coming)
Mange ! [mɑ̃ʒ]	Eat!	Frequently used in stressed parent-child relationship
Silence ! [silãs]	Silence!	

1.20.2 Telling the hour

{AUDIO} While exploring **j'ai – tu as – il/elle a | nous avons – vous êtes – ils/elles ont**, (see page 77), you met the numbers from 1 to 12. Now tell the time until noon.

		Quelle heure est-il?	What time is it?
un, une	1	Il est une heure.	It's one o'clock.
deux	2	Il est deux heures.	It's two o'clock.
trois	3	Il est trois heures et quart .	It's a quarter past three.
quatre	4	Il est quatre heures et demie .	It's half past four.
cinq	5		
six	6	Il est six heures moins le quart .	It's a quarter to six.
sept	7		
huit	8		
neuf	9		
dix	10		
onze	11	Il est onze heures.	It's eleven o'clock.
douze	12	Il est midi.	It's noon.

How would you say, *It's four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten o'clock?* Right: **Il est quatre | cinq | six | sept | huit | neuf | dix | onze heures**. Excellent!

And how would you say *at two, at three, at four, at five o'clock*? Just combine **à** + [number] + **heures**: **à deux | trois | quatre | cinq | six | sept | huit | neuf | dix | onze heures**.
Magnifique!

1.20.3 Cardinals and Ordinals

{AUDIO} The numbers shown above are *cardinal numbers* (*one, two, three, etc.*), as opposed to so-called *ordinal numbers* (*first, second, third, etc.*) In French, you'll use *cardinal numbers* to indicate dates, kings and queens:

French: Cardinal numbers

le deux janvier

Louix XVI (seize)

Henri VIII (huit)

English: Ordinal numbers

January 2nd

Louis the Sixteenth

Henry the Eighth

The exception to the rule: use the ordinal number **premier** (masculine) / **première** (feminine) to translate *first*:

le **premier** janvier

François **premier**

January 1st

Francis the First

1.20.4 dont

The French **dont** is an unprobably word with means *whom/of which/about whom*. The functioning is too complex to be presented here. Just remember the meaning and find the detailed discussion on page 399.

1.20.5 Silent Letters (1)

{AUDIO} French doesn't like consonants at the end of words. (Remember: consonants are all letters which are not the vowels a, e, i, o, u or the semi-vowel y). The distaste is so sincere that they almost never pronounce final consonants. In the following examples stop reading where the bold letters finish, and you'll start pronouncing perfect French:

les	[le]	the (<i>plural</i>)
ces petits Dieux	[se pəti djø]	these little Gods
ils persécutent	[il pɛksəkɥt]	they persecute
ils torturent	[il tɔʁtyʁ]	they torture
ils tuent	[il ty]	they kill
toujours	[tuʒuʁ]	always

An exception to this rule is the famous **liaison**. Liaisons are bridges between two words. The most common bridge is the ‘z-bridge’ which you build when the *first* word ends with an *s* and the *second* word starts with a vowel (a, e, i, o, u) or a mute *h*. In these cases, the final mute *-s* of the *first* word comes to life. In the following examples, pronounce the *-s* as a [z]:

les_États	[lez-eta]	the states
ces_amis	[sez-ami]	these friends

Finally, some letters like C, R, F, L (**careful**), B, K and Q are usually pronounced at the end of a word. Let’s start with the letter C and check some exceptions:

	Pronounce the final C		Don’t pronounce the final C	
C	avec	with	blanc	white
	le parc	park	le porc	pig
	donc	therefore, so	un estomac	stomach
	le flic <i>fam.</i>	cop	le tabac	tobacco
	turc	Turkish	le banc	bench

1.20.6 Toolbox 3

Remember that you need about 60 technical words to describe the phenomena of French grammar. Make yourself comfortable with the following list.

Word classes and subclasses	
Definite article	le, la, les (the)
Indefinite article	un, une (a/an)
Partitive article	du, de la, des (some)
Adjective	Describes qualities of people, animals, things, etc.
Noun	A word that refers to a person, place, thing, or idea.
Adverb	An invariable words which provides additional information for <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • an action word • an adjective • another adverb
Conjunction	Links similar words or groups of words.
Coordinating conjunction	Joins elements with an equal importance.
Subordinate conjunction	Links dependent clauses to main clauses
Preposition	Usually used in front of nouns (boy, girl, flower, tree) or pronouns (him, her, them) and show, for example, <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Where something takes place 2. When something happens 3. Descriptive information
Pronoun	Simplifiers of speech: I, you, he/she we, you, they me, you, him/her us, you, them etc.

1.21 Reading the News

Le Monde is France's best newspaper. Read the first sentences of an article published by Le Monde in 2008. You'll recognize the same chaos of *action words* ('verbs'), *nouns*, *adjectives*,

articles, pronouns, adverbs, conjunctions, and prepositions as in the God article; however, the colours are now more familiar and the chaos is less chaotic.

1. Action word	4. Article	7. Conjunction
2. Noun	5. Pronoun	8. Preposition
3. Adjective	6. Adverb	

{AUDIO} « C'est fait. Après sept mois de débats intenses, la France est devenue, avec le vote solennel du mardi 23 avril, à l'Assemblée nationale, le 14^e pays au monde à autoriser deux personnes de même sexe à se marier.

La loi sur le mariage et l'adoption marque une nouvelle étape dans la banalisation d'une orientation sexuelle, autrefois jugée contre-nature, aujourd'hui reconnue "autre mais normale", selon l'expression de l'anthropologue Maurice Godelier. Elle est toujours réprimée dans 80 pays, dont 7 la punissent de mort. La mesure restera certainement comme l'une des plus marquantes du bilan de François Hollande. »

It's done. After seven months of intense debate, France has become, with the solemn vote on Tuesday, April 23 at the National Assembly, the 14th country to allow people of the same sex to get married.

The law on marriage and adoption marks a new stage in the trivialization of sexual orientation, once judged against nature, today recognized as "different but normal," in the words of anthropologist Maurice Godelier. It is still repressed in 80 countries, of which 7 apply the death penalty. The measure will certainly remain as one of the most striking of Francois Hollande's term.

© Le Monde 2013. Find the entire text at http://www.lemonde.fr/societe/article/2013/04/23/vote-historique-de-la-loi-sur-le-mariage-pour-tous_3164513_3224.html – Accessed 8 July 2016.

1.21.1 Words

{AUDIO}

c'est fait !	it's done!	sexuel, -le	sexual
après	after	autrefois	in the past, formerly
le mois	month		
le débat	debate		
elle est devenue	she has become	juger	to judge
		contre	against
le vote	vote	la nature	nature
solennel, -le	solemn	aujourd'hui	today
		reconnaître	to recognize
le mardi	Tuesday	reconnu, -e	recognized
avril <i>m.</i>	April	autre	other, another, different
une assemblée	assembly		
national, -e	national	normal, -e	normal
le pays	country	selon	according to
le monde	world	une expression	expression
autoriser	to authorize	un anthropologue	anthropologist
la personne	person	réprimer	to repress, to crack down
même	same		
le sexe	sex, gender	dont	of which, whose
se marier	to get married	punir	to punish
la loi	law		
sur	on, about	la mort	death
le mariage	marriage	la mesure	measure
une adoption	adoption	rester	to remain
		certainement	certainly
marquer	to mark	comme	like, as
nouveau, nouvelle	new	plus	here:: most
une étape	stage	marquant, -e	striking
la banalisation	trivialization	le bilan	record, assessment
une orientation	orientation		

1.22 Bonjour

After more than 70 pages of rough grammar, it is time for some social vocabulary.

{AUDIO}

bonjour	good morning good afternoon	
bonjour Madame		When meeting a lady, a gentleman or a young woman, add Madame, Monsieur and Mademoiselle when you are not familiar with a person.
bonjour Monsieur		
bonjour Mademoiselle		
bonsoir (Madame, Monsieur, Mademoiselle)	good evening	
bonne nuit (Madame, Monsieur, Mademoiselle)	good night	At the end of the evening; when going to bed
salut	good morning good afternoon good evening	Use <i>salut</i> when you are familiar with a person and when you call them by their first name. Don't use <i>salut</i> with the family name, and not with Monsieur, Madame, and Mademoiselle!

s'il vous plaît	please	When asking for something
enchanté <i>m.</i>	hello	Formal situation when you are introduced
enchantée <i>f.</i>		
merci, c'est gentil	thank you, very kind	
au revoir	goodbye	

1.23 Free-Climbing

Now leave the *GigaFrench* track and stray out into uncharted language territory on your own. Open www.lemonde.fr/international and check the headlines. Of course, you won't understand them all, but some are short and use words similar to English.

Do you want to hear the sound of those headlines? Google provides it. Open www.hiv.net/googletts in your Firefox browser and install the Google™ Text-To-Speech add-on. The add-on converts text to speech in natural sounding voices. Once installed, double-click with your mouse on any word (or triple-click on sentences) and hear it instantly. Google TTS is not 100% perfect, but immensely helpful. Use it regularly. We'll revisit it later.

III. Results & Preview

That's it for Level 1. You have taken your first steps in French with the longest grammar section of the entire manual. A small step for a teacher, a giant leap for you. Now listen to the audio files and read the French sentences until you know them by heart.

{AUDIO} Let's do a short test.

1.

Can you say

j'**ai** – tu **as** – il/elle **a** | nous **avons** – vous **avez** – ils/elles **ont**?

j'**avais** – tu **avais** – il/elle **avait** | nous **avions** – vous **aviez** – ils/elles **avaient**

j'**aurai** – tu **auras** – il/elle **aura** | nous **aurons** – vous **aurez** – ils/elles **auront**

j'**aurais** – tu **aurais** – il/elle **aurait** | nous **aurions** – vous **auriez** – ils/elles **auraient**

2.

Have you become accustomed to the layout of the action word tables?

	Présent	Imparfait
j'	ai	avais
tu	as	avais
il/elle	a	avait
nous	avons	avions
vous	avez	aviez
ils/elles	ont	avaient

	Futur	Conditionnel prés.
j'	aurai	aurais
tu	auras	aurais
il/elle	aura	aurait
nous	aurons	aurions
vous	auriez	auriez
ils/elles	auront	auraient

3.

{AUDIO} Did you appreciate mastering the three most important composed tenses in France's favourite action?

	Passé composé <i>Perfect: I (have) made love</i>	Plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect: I had made love, etc.</i>
j'	ai fait l'amour	avais fait l'amour
tu	as fait l'amour	avais fait l'amour
il/elle	a fait l'amour	avait fait l'amour
nous	avons fait l'amour	avions fait l'amour
vous	avez fait l'amour	aviez fait l'amour
ils/elles	ont fait l'amour	avaient fait l'amour

	Conditionnel passé <i>Past conditional: I would have made love</i>
j'	aurais fait l'amour
tu	aurais fait l'amour
il/elle	aurait fait l'amour
nous	aurions fait l'amour
vous	auriez fait l'amour
ils/elles	auraient fait l'amour

4.

Did you savour the **fundamental** difference between these two sentences?

J'ai fait l'amour avec **le** garçon.

J'ai fait l'amour avec **les** garçons.

5.

Finally, have you integrated the all-important gender-number **ES rule**?

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular		-e
	Plural	-s	-es

Well, then you have been promoted to Level 2! You know 20 out of 100 key action word sextets!

* * *

You have climbed the French Mount Everest! Congratulations! Only looking back will you fully appreciate what you have accomplished: conquering the fundamentals of one single French action word, **avoir**. You have observed how **avoir** exploded into 40 pieces (**eu-ayant-ai-as-a-avons-avez-ont-avais-avait-avons-aviez-avaient-aurai-auras-aura-aurons-aurez-auront-aurais-aurait-aurions-auriez-auraient-aie-aies-ait-ayons-ayez-aient-eus-eut-eûmes-eûtes-eurent-ebbe-ebbes-ebût-ebussions-ebussiez-ebussent**). This was French hard core – in comparison, every other aspect of French grammar will appear simple and transparent.

Congratulations also for discovering the other 7 word classes ('parts of speech') of nouns, adjectives, articles, pronouns,

adverbs, conjunctions and prepositions. It was a rough initiation, but like all initiation rites, you only have to do it once!

Outlook

In Chapter 2, we'll present the full picture of **être to be**. You will happily discover that you can manage it in pretty much the same way as you managed **avoir**. As a preview, take a peek at the **futur future**:

{AUDIO}

Singular

j'	serai	I	will be
tu	seras	you	will be
il/elle	sera	he/she	will be

Plural

nous	serons	we	will be
vous	serez	you	will be
ils/elles	seront	they	will be

Thank you to us!

Would you help us? We have the usual social media pages for *GigaFrench* (Facebook, Instagram, Twitter, Snapchat), but we don't use them. Some people tell us that we are missing out on a major contemporary experience and that we might be lagging behind others.

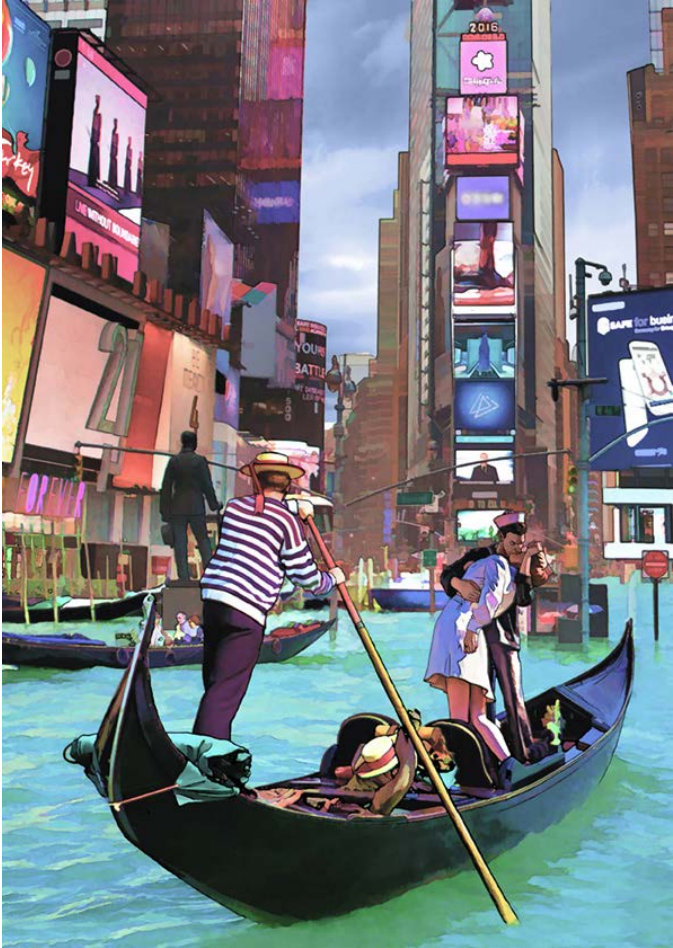


Sacré-Cœur, Montmartre | © Copyright: Marie de France

Can we ask you a favour? If you are happy with *GigaFrench*, would you be a mindful Social Media Ambassador and tell the world about your *GigaFrench* experience on your channels using @GigaFrench and #GigaFrench? Saying that *GigaFrench* comes free, with free PDFs and free audios and sharing the www.GigaFrench.com link? In exchange, we promise you that *GigaFrench* will remain free for everyone, for always. Why? The reason is simple: Whoever is willing to spend hours and hours on studying French does not need to pay!

Thank you! – Marie 😊

2 Climate Change



Copyright © 2016 N. Allan – New York

2016-4 Edition

{ GigaFrench.com/level02 } Le changement climatique existe-t-il ? Ou le 'réchauffement climatique provoqué par l'homme' n'est-il qu'une mystification ? L'ouragan Sally de New York en 2012 – un détail ? 15 000 morts en France en 2003 pendant la canicule – peanuts ? Paris Plage à Noël ? La chance !

Et pourtant, notre Terre a des bouffées de chaleur. Chaque année, la concentration de CO₂ dans l'atmosphère atteint de **nouveaux records**. Nous en sommes déjà à plus de 400 parties par million (ppm) – du jamais-vu depuis plus de **800 000 ans**. Et ça continue, car nous brûlons tout ce qui nous tombe sous la main, du charbon, du pétrole, du gaz, des voitures dans nos banlieues.

Où allons-nous ? Peut-être vers une « venisation » du monde. Ainsi, nos petits-enfants pourront-ils un jour se déplacer à Manhattan, Bombay, Calcutta, New Orleans ou Miami en barque comme à Venise pendant l'*acqua alta*. Et à Venise sévira la malaria.

Allons-nous droit dans le mur ?

Does climate change exist? Or is 'global warming caused by man' only a hoax? Hurricane Sally in New York in 2012 – a small detail? 15,000 deaths in France during the 2003 heat wave – peanuts? 'Paris Plage' at Christmas? What luck !

And yet our Earth has hot flashes. Each year, the concentration of CO₂ in the atmosphere reaches new records. We are already at more than 400 parts per million (ppm) – an unprecedented fact in 800,000 years. And it all continues because we burn anything we can put our hands on, coal, oil, gas, and cars in our suburbs.

Where are we going? Perhaps to a 'venicisation' of the world. Our grandchildren will thus one day be able to move around Manhattan, Bombay, Calcutta, New Orleans or Miami in a boat like in Venice during the *acqua alta*. And malaria will rage in Venice.

Are we going straight into

Où iront, par exemple, des dizaines de millions de Bangladais chassés par la mer ? Tout simplement en Inde comme les Syriens qui débarquent en Allemagne ? Si au moins, cela en finissait là – mais non, notre futur propose au menu ouragans plus violents, famines globales et nouvelles maladies infectieuses. Bonjour les dégâts !

L'avenir vous échappe, l'air vous manque ? Ne vous inquiétez pas, il y a un remède : les négationnistes ! (Aux États-Unis il y en a en pagaille.) En deux coups de cuillère à pot ils vous expliquent que rien de tout ça n'arrivera. Il suffit de les écouter pour avoir tout de suite chaud au cœur. Le monde est beau, le soleil brille, les ressources sont infinies et le génie humain ne connaît pas de limites. Quelle vitalité solaire ! Vivent les lobbies du pétrole !

the wall? Where, for example, will tens of millions of Bangladeshis expelled by the sea go? Just to India, the same as Syrians who are landing in Germany? If at least it all ended there – but no, our future proposes more violent hurricanes, global famines and emerging infectious diseases on its menu. What a mess!

Does the future escape you, is air missing? Don't worry, there is a remedy: negationists! (In the US there are loads of them.) With two shakes of a lamb's tail they tell you that none of all this will happen. Just listen to them and it will immediately make your heart feel good. The world is beautiful, the sun is shining, resources are infinite and human ingenuity knows no limits. What a solar vitality! Long live the oil lobbies!

Words

{AUDIO}

le changement climatique	change climate <i>adj.</i>	avoir des bouffées de chaleur	to have hot flushes
réchauffement <i>m.</i>	warming	chaque	every, each
réchauffement climatique	global warming	une année	year
provoquer	to cause, to bring about	la concentration	concentration
un homme	homme, mankind	dans	in
n'est-il pas	isn't it	une atmosphère	atmosphere
		atteindre	to reach
la mystification	mystification	de nouveaux records	new records
un ouragan	hurricane	nous en sommes à déjà	to get to the point where already
2012 : deux mille douze		plus de 400 (quatre cents)	more than 400
le détail	detail	la partie	part
15 000 : quinze mille		par	here: per
le mort	dead (person)	le million	million
pendant	during		
la canicule	heatwave	du jamais vu	that's never been seen, that's unheard of
Paris Plage	<i>temporary artificial beaches along the Seine; see Wikipedia</i>	depuis	since
à Noël	at Christmas	800 000 : huit cents mille	
la chance	luck	un an	year
pourtant	yet, however	ça = cela	that, this
notre	our	continuer	to continue
la Terre	Earth	car	because, as

brûler	to burn	aller droit dans le mur	to be heading for disaster
tout ce qui	everything (that)	où iront	where will go
tomber	to fall	par exemple	for example
sous	under	une dizaine	(around) ten
la main	hand	le Bangladais	Bangladeshi
tomber sous la main	to come to hand	chasser	here : to chase away
le charbon	coal	la mer	sea
le pétrole	oil	tout	all, every, each
le gaz	gas	simple	simple
la voiture	car	tout	quite simply
la banlieue	suburb	simplement	
peut-être	perhaps	l'Inde f.	India
vers	toward	le Syrien	Syrian
'venisation'	things becoming like Venice	débarquer	to land, here: to arrive
		en Allemagne	in Germany
le monde	world	si	if
ainsi	thus, in this way	au moins	at least
le petit-enfant	grandchild	finir	to end
pouvoir	can, to be able to	là	there
ainsi pourront-ils	they'll thus be able to	mais non	but no
un jour	one day	le futur	future
se déplacer	to move	proposer	to propose
la barque	small boat	le menu	menu
comme	like, just as	plus violent	more violent
l'acqua alta (italian)	high water	la famine	famine, starvation
sévir	to hit, to strike	global	global, worldwide
la malaria	malaria	la maladie infectieuse, -se	disease infectious
le mur	wall	bonjour	hello
droit	straight, right		

bonjour les dégâts	what a mess	arriver	to arrive, here: to happen
un avenir	future	suffire	to be enough
échapper	to escape	il suffit de les écouter	just listen to them
s'inquiéter	to worry, to be anxious		
ne vous inquiétez pas !	don't worry!	tout de suite	immediately
il y a	there is	avoir chaud au cœur	to make your heart feel good
le remède	remedy, solution	beau, belle	beautiful
		le soleil	sun
		briller	to shine
le négationniste	negationist	la ressource	resource
aux États-Unis	in the United States	infini	endless
en pagaille <i>fam.</i>	lots of, loads of	le génie humain	genius human
il y en a en pagaille	there are loads of them	connaître	to know, to be acquainted with
en deux coups de cuillère à pot	with two shakes of a lamb's tail	la limite	limit
le coup	knock, blow	quel, quelle	what a
la cuillère	spoon	la vitalité	vitality
		solaire	solar
le pot	pot	vive ! <i>sing.</i>	long live!
expliquer	to explain	vivent ! <i>pl.</i>	
rien	nothing	le lobby	lobby
rien de tout ça	none of all this		

1. figure out which word corresponds to which sound;
2. learn the meaning of the words;
3. memorise the spelling of the words.

If a single MP3 audio file lasts 2 minutes and if you listen to all “portions” 10 times, each round will last 20 minutes. During the following weeks you will repeat this exercise around 10 times for each audio file. In all, you’ll therefore hear each portion of each audio file 100 times. Then will come the time when you’ll understand, for the first time and distinctly, every single word of the MP3 audio file you are listening to. You’ll have conquered an “island of total understanding”.

The 8 audio files of the current *GigaFrench* edition total about 20 minutes of recording. Listening to them 100 times requires about 30 hours. A perfect understanding – word for word! – of these 8 pieces with more than 2,600 words is just around the corner of your life. You can do it in less than two months! You can do it!

2.2 Preview

If you just want to expand your French vocabulary, go straight ahead to the next level and find a text about abortion (page 233). If you are more serious about learning French, go through the following pages. On today’s menu: the second most important French word, **être** *to be*; a new set of 7 x 7 past participles; a preview of irregular future stems; and more nouns, adjectives, adverbs, conjunctions and prepositions. Again, listen to the audios until you can discern every single word and you know the examples and dialogues by heart. Burn the sentences into your brain.

2.3 Master Class (2)

What is your major French challenge? The answer is: words!

* * *

It's 3 o'clock in the morning and you're profoundly asleep. You don't hear me when I enter your room and slowly come up to your bed. When I suddenly turn on the lamp and grab your shoulder, you jump out of bed, frightened and panicked. I show you something and bellow one single question: 'What is this?'

You answer 'A corkscrew!'; or 'Ein Korkenzieher!' if you are German; or 'Un cavatappo!' if you are Italian, '¡Un sacacorchos!' if you are Spanish, 'Un tire-bouchon!' if you are French, and so on.

'Good', I say, and you close your eyes and fall directly, contentedly, back to sleep within seconds.

* * *

Why did I construct this surreal nocturnal encounter? Because it illustrates the way we know words – spontaneously, in the most extreme of situations, and without giving a second thought to it. And that's the way you'll have to know French words: intuitively and explosively. To achieve such smooth perfection, you need **multiple exposures**. Let's see the details.

2.3.1 Different degrees of knowing

Ask a language novice if he knows this or that word and he'll answer 'yes' or 'no' without imagining how horrifyingly imprecise he is. To help him getting a clearer picture ask him, 'What's your grade of knowledge of this or that word?' Now he can be more accurate and answer low, moderate, elevated, high or perfect. The definitions:

5 seconds	Low	Low probability of usefulness
3 seconds	Moderate	Moderate probability of usefulness
1 second	Elevated	Elevated probability of usefulness
0.5 seconds	High	High probability of usefulness
0.2 seconds	Perfect	Useful degree of knowledge

What resembles the US Homeland Security Advisory System of colour-coded **terrorist alert** is a lovely demonstration of the ultimate goal of word training and the amazing improvements you can achieve. As a novice it may take you up to 5 or 10 seconds before finding the French equivalent of *corkscrew*, **le tire-bouchon**. Months and dozens of bottles later, you'll do it in less than 0.2 seconds. That's a spectacular improvement of more than one order of magnitude.

2.3.2 How long does it take?

Equally spectacular, alas!, is the time needed for a word to be irrevocably screwed into your brain. The problem is speed. To read at a normal adult speed of around 6 words per second or listen to your friends who produce speech at three and more words per second, there is little time for reflection. You need 'zero-point-two-second comprehension' ('0.2'). But how?

You'll soon find out that such intuitive knowledge of words requires usually **multiple exposures** (or learning sessions). Some words are easy, for example, *man, woman, child, water, air, big, small, go, come, do*, others are not, like this potpourri from different European languages: *Gerichtsvollzieher, jeopardy, abracadabrantique, zanahoria, sgabuzzino, orçamentário, Bundesverfassungsgericht*. You'll need to see these words many times before attaining '0.2'. On average, the multiple exposures add up to an average of several minutes for a single word, depending on your age and other

factors influencing your learning speed. If we assume a conservative estimate of 6 minutes per word (you'll probably need less), 5000 words will require 500 hours. That's two hours of concentrated study on every weekday during an entire year, all vacations included.

These calculations provide precious information. Based on the number of hours you are ready to study every day (see the left column in Table 2.1), your total study time can be predicted with fairly good accuracy. Are you Spanish, Italian or Portuguese? Then take the 5,000 word column. Are you European from Germany up northwards and down eastwards? Take rather the 10,000 column. Do you know someone from China or Japan who have never learned another language, not even English? Tell them to take the 15,000 column.

Table 2.1: Total study time of French words

Hours/Day	Number of words to learn		
	5,000	10,000	15,000
0.5	4 years	8 years	12 years
1	2 years	4 years	6 years
1.5	1.5 years	3 years	4 years
2	1 year	2 years	3 years
3	8 months	16 months	2 years
4	6 months	1 year	1.5 years

* At five days per week; figures are rounded

The data are both good and bad news. The bad news: language learning is a concentrated and mostly lonely effort of hundreds of hours. The good news: language learning is not a black hole, but predictable and manageable.

2.3.3 Shame or not shame

Do you feel ashamed that it will take you months and years to learn a new language? Please don't! Consider that in your own language, you and your friends usually know between 30.000 and 60.000 words and that you didn't learn these words by simply chatting and babbling at home with your friends and family. Instead, you learned them at school and university, 5 days a week, 40 weeks a year, during 12 to 18 years of formal education. The truly amazing aspect about language learning is not month-long hardship... but the fact that with discipline and perseverance you'll learn your second language faster than your first native language! You, the bright and dynamic adult, will learn a language faster than the three-, six- or nine-years-olds! In other words, an efficient language course is an awesome exercise of time-compression. Let's compress together! (I will love compressing you... ☺)

2.3.4 Further reading

Find more information about the importance of words in Chapter 1 of *The Word Brain*, page 15. Download the free 81-page PDF from www.TheWordBrain.com.

I. Action Words

2.4 être to be (Introduction)

{AUDIO} Être to be is the second most important word in French. As with **avoir**, take all the time you need to get familiar with it. First learn every form, then memorize the 6-word sextets (for example, **je suis – tu es –il/elle est | nous sommes – vous êtes – ils/elle sont**). If you are new to French, memorize the first two sextets. If you learned French before, memorize them all.



Saint-Eustache | © Copyright: Marie de France

	Présent	Imparfait
j'	suis	étais
tu	es	étais
il/elle	est	était
nous	sommes	étions
vous	êtes	étiez
ils/elles	sont	étaient

	Futur	Conditionnel prés.
j'	serai	serais
tu	seras	serais
il/elle	sera	serait
nous	serons	serions
vous	seriez	seriez
ils/elles	seront	seraient

2.4.1 Présent

{AUDIO} The **présent** *present tense* is, as always, the most important tense.

Singular

j'	suis [sɥi]	I	am
tu	es [ɛ]	you	are
il/elle	est [ɛ]	he/she	is

Plural

nous	sommes [sɔm]	we	are
vous	êtes [ɛt]	you	are
ils/elles	sont [sɔ̃]	they	are

2.4.2 Il est / Elle est

The most important element of the sextet is **il/elle est** which means *he/she/it is*. In any conversation, you'll hear **il est** or **elle est** at intervals of minutes, sometimes even seconds. Here are some common words in combination with **il/elle est**:

Il est magnifique!	He's beautiful!
Elle est fantastique!	She's fantastic!
Il/Elle n'est pas ici.	He/She is not here.
Il/Elle est là.	He/She is there.
Il est sérieux.	He's serious.
Elle est sérieuse.	She's serious.
Il est complètement fou.	He is completely crazy.
Elle est complètement folle.	She is completely crazy.

2.4.3 C'est / Ce sont

Equally important is **c'est** *this is* or *that's*.

C'est insupportable!	That's unbearable!
C'est gentil.	That's kind (of you).
C'est terrible !	That's terrible!
C'est fantastique !	That's fantastic!
C'est vachement bien ! <i>fam.</i>	That's great!

When combined with nouns, use **c'est** in the singular and **ce sont** in the plural. The English translation sometimes prefers personal subject pronouns (he, she, it, they).

C'est un garçon charmant. He is a charming boy.
Ce sont des garçons They are charming boys.
 charmants.

2.5 The Être Biotope

After the **avoir** biotope of Level 1 (page 77), let's explore the **être** biotope. First, you'll use **être** to locate persons or things in space (**il est sur la lune** *he is on the moon*). Second, you'll use **être** in combination with nouns (for example, professions), adjectives of appearance, personality, feelings, quantity, sound, taste, touch, colour, nationalities, as well as in numerous expressions.

In the following examples, learn as many words as you can today (**grand** *tall*, **petit** *small*, **beau** *handsome*, etc.) and come back later to repeat. In the meantime, concentrate on **je suis – tu es – il/elle est | nous sommes – vous êtes – ils/elles sont**.



{AUDIO}

1. Location in space

je suis	au Louvre	I am	at the Louvre
tu es	à Montmartre	you are	at Montmartre
il/elle est	sur la Tour Eiffel	he/she is	on the Eiffel Tower
nous sommes	aux Champs-Élysées	we are	at the Champs-Elysees
vous êtes	aux Halles	you are	in the Halles
ils/elles sont	au Luxembourg	they are	at the Luxembourg Gardens

2. Appearance

	Masculine	Feminine		
je suis	grand	grand e	I am	tall
tu es	blond	blond e	you are	blond
il est	petit		he is	
elle est		petit e	she is	small
nous sommes	grand s	grand es	we are	tall
vous êtes	blond s	blond es	you are	blond
ils sont	petit s		they are	
elles sont		petit es		small

P.S. Whenever **être** is used with adjectives ending in a consonant, the **ES rule** usually applies.

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular		-e
	Plural	-s	-es

3. Personality

	Masculine + Feminine		
je suis	calme	I am	calm
tu es	débile	you are	an idiot
il/elle est	egoïste	he/she is	selfish
nous sommes	calm s	we are	calm
vous êtes	débile s	you are	idiots
ils/elles sont	egoïste s	they are	selfish

P.S. An important group of adjectives end in **-e** in the singular, both for masculine and feminine words. To form the plural, just add an **-s**.

4. Sex appeal

	Masculine	Feminine		
je suis	séduisant	séduisante	I am	enticing
tu es	excitant	excitante	you are	exciting
il est	attrayant		he is	
elle est		attrayante	she is	attractive
nous sommes	séduisants	séduisantes	we are	enticing
vous êtes	excitants	excitantes	you are	exciting
ils sont	attrayants		they are	
elles sont		attrayantes		attractive

P.S. Words ending in **-ant** follow again the **ES** rule.

5. Profession

	Masculine		
	+		
	Feminine		
je suis	médecin	I am	a physician
tu es	cinéaste	you are	a filmmaker
il/elle est	professeur	he/she is	a teacher
nous sommes	artistes	we are	artists
vous êtes	architectes	you are	architects
ils/elles sont	ingénieurs	they are	engineers

Some professions continue to use the same form for both men and women.

6. Nationalities

Note that adjectives which refer to nationalities are not capitalized.

	Masculine	Feminine		
je suis	français	français e	I am	French
tu es	anglais	anglais e	you are	English
il est	allemand		he is	German
elle est		allemand e	she is	
nous sommes	espagnol s	espagnol es	we are	Spanish
vous êtes	américain s	américain es	you are	American
ils sont	méxicain s		they are	Mexican
elles sont		méxicain es		

7. Passive voice

You'll also use **être** to express the passive voice of action words.

Présent

I **est** poursuivi par la police.

He is (being) chased by the police.

Passé composé

I **a été** poursuivi par la police.

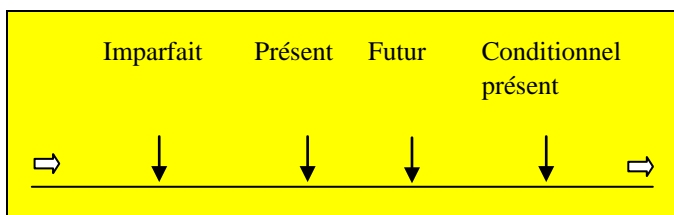
He was (being) chased by the police.

More about the passive voice in Level xxx.

2.6 Être Timeline

Let's time travel again. Do you remember the simple timeline from Level 1, when you time-travelled from things in the present back to the past and fast-forwarded to the future?

Imparfait *imperfect*, **présent** *present*, **futur** *future* and **conditionnel présent** *present conditional* were the most important time slots on your life timeline.



Let's explore **être** in the **imparfait**, the **futur** and the **conditionnel présent** (18 words).

2.6.1 Être: Imparfait (*imperfect tense*)

{AUDIO} Remember: the **imparfait** *imperfect tense* expresses habits, states of mind, environmental descriptions and how people and the world were in the past.

	Masculine	Feminine		
j'étais	grand	grand e	I was	tall
tu étais	blond	blond e	you were	blond
il était	petit		he was	
elle était		petit e	she was	small
nous étions	grand s	grand es	we were	tall
vous étiez	blond s	blond es	you were	blond
ils étaient	petit s		they were	
elles étaient		petit es		small

The only new element is **ét-** to which you'll add the well-known **imparfait** endings **-ais, -ais, -ait | -ions, -iez, -aient**. While reading and listening to the **imparfait** of **être** you'll see the following rules:

1. The 1st person singular (je **étais**) and the 2nd person singular (tu **étais**) are identical.
2. The pronunciation of the three singular forms (**étais-étais-était**) and the 3rd plural form (**étaient**) is identical [etɛ].

Remember: the **imparfait** endings **-ais, -ais, -ait | -ions, -iez, -aient** are identical for all French action words! In synthesis:

Singular

j'	étais	I	was
tu	étais	you	were
il/elle	était	he or she	was

Plural

nous	étions	we	were
vous	étiez	you	were
ils/elles	étaient	they	were

Now combine je **suis** – tu **es** – il/elle **est** | nous **sommes** – vous **êtes** – ils/elles **sont** with everything you've learned above (location in space, personality, sex appeal, profession, etc.; see page 167) – and let's fast-forward into the future.

2.6.2 Être: Futur (*future tense*)

{AUDIO} The **futur** describes events that have not happened yet, but are expected to happen in the future.

	Masculine		
	+		
	Feminine		
je serai	médecin	I will be	a physician
tu seras	cinéaste	you will be	a filmmaker
il/elle sera	professeur	he/she will be	a teacher
nous serons	artistes	we will be	artists
vous serez	architectes	you will be	architects
ils/elles seront	ingénieurs	they will be	engineers

To get the **futur** of **être**, all you need is the future stem **ser-** and attach the future endings **-ai, -as, -a | -ons, -ez, -ont**.

While reading and listening to the **futur** of **être** you'll find that

1. The 1st person singular (je ser**ai**) and the 2nd person plural (vous ser**ez**) sound identical [sæʁ].
2. The 2nd person singular (tu ser**as**) and the 3rd person singular (il/elle ser**a**) sound identical [sæʁa].
3. The 1st person plural (nous ser**ons**) and the 3rd person plural (ils/elles ser**ont**) sound identical [sæʁɔ̃].

Remember that the **futur** endings are identical for all French action words! In synthesis:

Singular

je	serai	I will be
tu	seras	you will be
il/elle	sera	he or she will be

Plural

nous	serons	we will be
vous	serez	you will be
ils/elles	seront	they will be

Again, you can combine je ser**ai** – tu ser**as** – il/elle ser**a** | nous ser**ons** – vous ser**ez** – ils/elles ser**ont** with everything you saw

above (location in space, appearance, personality, sex appeal, etc.; see page 167)

2.6.3 Être: Présent conditionnel

{AUDIO} The **présent conditionnel** expresses hypothetical situations and their consequences.

	Masculine	Feminine		
je serais	séduisant	séduisante	I would be	enticing
tu serais	excitant	excitante	you would be	exciting
il serait	attrayant		he would be	
elle serait		attrayante	she would be	attractive
nous serions	séduisants	séduisantes	we would be	enticing
vous seriez	excitants	excitantes	you would be	exciting
ils seraient	attrayants		they would be	
elles seraient		attrayantes		attractive

The endings of the **présent conditionnel** are **–ais, –ais, –ait | –ions, –iez, –aient**, the same as for the **imparfait**. The only difference is that you attach them to the *future stem ser–*.

While reading and listening to the **conditionnel présent** of **caresser** you'll find that

1. The 1st person singular (je ser**ais**) and the 2nd person singular (tu ser**ais**) are identical.
2. The pronunciation of the three singular forms (ser**ais**–ser**ais**–ser**ait**) and the 3rd plural form (ser**aient**) is identical [səʁɛ].

In synthesis:

Singular

je	serais	I would have
tu	serais	you would have
il/elle	serait	he/she would have

Plural

nous	serions	we would have
vous	seriez	you would have
ils/elles	seraient	they would have

Now combine **je serais** – **tu serais** – **il/elle serait** | **nous serions** – **vous seriez** – **ils/elles seraient** with everything you saw above (location in space, appearance, personality, profession, etc.; see page 167).

2.6.4 Être: Subjonctif présent

Take a quick look at the 6 following forms of the **subjonctif présent**. You'll find more information on page 245.

Singular

que je	sois	that I	was
que tu	sois	that you	were
qu'il/elle	soit	that he or she	was

Plural

que nous	soyons	that we	were
que vous	soyez	that you	were
qu'ils/elles	soient	that they	were

2.6.5 Être: Passé simple

The **Passé simple** is used in writing only. It is the equivalent of the **passé composé**. The most frequent forms are the 3rd person singular and the 3rd person plural.

Singular

je	fus	I	was
tu	fus	you	were
il/elle	fut	he or she	was

Plural

nous	fûmes	we	were
vous	fûtes	you	were
ils/elles	furent	they	were



Figure 2.1 – Tenses in French novels. The Top 4 – imparfait, passé simple, présent and plus-que-parfait – represent almost 90% of all tenses used.

2.6.6 Summary

{AUDIO} Let's summarize your first four **être** sextets:

Présent

je **suis** – tu **es** – il/elle **est** | nous **sommes** – vous **êtes** –
ils/elles **sont**

I am, you are, he/she is / we, you, they are

Imparfait

j'**étais** – tu **étais** – il/elle **était** | nous **étions** – vous **étiez** –
ils/elles **étaient**

I was, you were, he/she was / we, you, they were

I, you, he/she used to be / we, you, they used to be

Futur

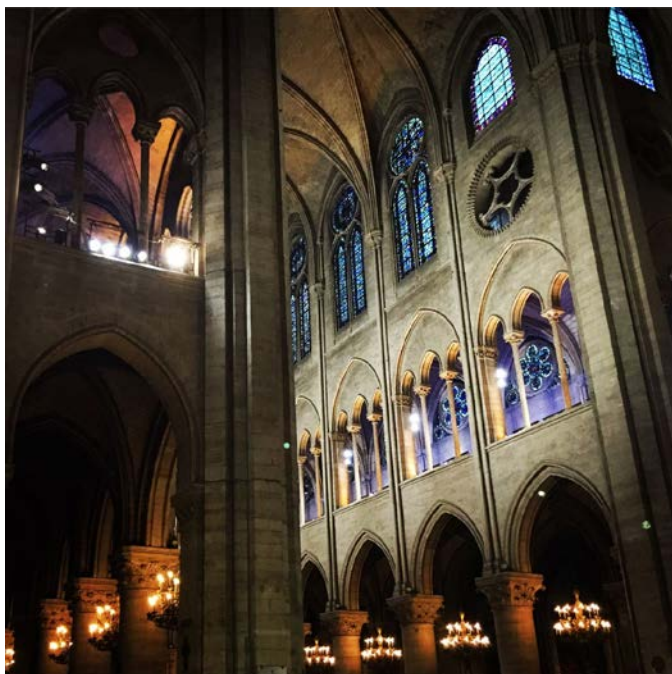
je serai – tu seras – il/elle sera | nous serons – vous serez –
ils/elles seront

I, you, he or she will be | we, you, they will be

Conditionnel présent

je serais – tu serais – il/elle serait | nous serions – vous seriez –
ils/elles seraient

I, you, he or she would be | we, you, they would be



Notre-Dame de Paris | © Copyright: Marie de France

2.6.7 Être (table)

Infinitif	être <i>to be</i>
Participe passé	été
Participe présent	étant
Impératif	sois soyons soyez

{AUDIO}

	Présent <i>Present: I am</i>	Imparfait <i>Imperfect: I was, I used to be</i>	Passé simple <i>Simple past: I was</i>
je/j'	suis	étais	fus
tu	es	étais	fus
il/elle	est	était	fut
nous	sommes	étions	fûmes
vous	êtes	étiez	fûtes
ils/elles	sont	étaient	furent

	Futur <i>Future: I'll be</i>	Conditionnel prés. <i>Present conditional: I would be</i>
je	serai	serais
tu	seras	serais
il/elle	sera	serait
nous	serons	serions
vous	seriez	seriez
ils/elles	seront	seraient

	Subjonctif présent <i>Present subjunctive: that I am</i>	Subjonctif imparfait <i>Imperfect subjunctive: that I was (extremely rare)</i>
que je	sois	fusse
que tu	sois	fusses
qu'il/elle	soit	fût
que nous	soyons	fussions
que vous	soyez	fussiez
qu'ils/elles	soient	fussent

2.7 Composed tenses with être

Again, let's take a giant leap forward. Take the table above and add **allé gone** after each item. **Allé** is the **participe passé** (*past participle*) of **aller to go**.

2.7.1 Overview

Again, we have highlighted the three composed tenses of prime importance: the **passé composé**, the **plus-que-parfait** and the **conditionnel passé**. Again, you'll be able to memorize them within a few minutes. There is only one complication: **être** wants to know if you are a boy or a girl.

That's how it works: Having seen

- je **suis** – tu **es** – il/elle **est** | nous **sommes** – vous **êtes** – ils/elles **sont**
- j'**étais** – tu **étais** – il/elle **était** | nous **étions** – vous **étiez** – ils/elles **étaient**
- je **serais** – tu **serais** – il/elle **serait** | nous **serions** – vous **seriez** – ils/elles **seraient**

you can build the **passé composé**, the **plus-que-parfait** and the **conditionnel passé** in seconds. Just add '**allé**'.

{AUDIO}

	Passé composé <i>Perfect: I have gone (+ I went)</i>	Plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect: I had gone</i>	Passé antérieur <i>Preterit perfect: I had gone</i>
je/j'	suis allé(e)	étais allé(e)	fus allé(e)
tu	es allé(e)	étais allé(e)	fus allé(e)
il/elle	est allé(e)	était allé(e)	fut allé(e)
nous	sommes allé(e)s	étions allé(e)s	fûmes allé(e)s
vous	êtes allé(e)s	étiez allé(e)s	fûtes allé(e)s
ils/elles	sont allé(e)s	étaient allé(e)s	furent allé(e)s

	Futur antérieur <i>Future perfect: I will have gone</i>	Conditionnel passé <i>Past conditional: I would have gone</i>
je	serai allé(e)	serais allé(e)
tu	seras allé(e)	serais allé(e)
il/elle	sera allé(e)	serait allé(e)
nous	serons allé(e)s	serions allé(e)s
vous	seriez allé(e)s	seriez allé(e)s
ils/elles	seront allé(e)s	seraient allé(e)s

	Subjonctif passé <i>Past subjunctive: that I went</i>	Subjonctif plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect subjunctive: that I had gone</i>
que je	sois allé(e)	fusse allé(e)
que tu	sois allé(e)	fusses allé(e)
qu'il/elle	soit allé(e)	fût allé(e)
que nous	soyons allé(e)s	fussions allé(e)s
que vous	soyez allé(e)s	fussiez allé(e)s
qu'ils/elles	soient allé(e)s	fussent allé(e)s

The complication mentioned above: action words building the composed tenses with **être** apply the **ES rule** to the **participe passé** *past participle*. If the corresponding noun or pronoun is feminine, add an **-e** to the **participe passé**; and for all plurals add an **-s**.

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular	allé	allée
	Plural	allés	allées

- Passé composé :**
 je suis **allé(e)** – tu es **allé(e)** – il/elle est **allé(e)**
 nous sommes **allé(e)s** – vous êtes **allé(e)s** – ils/elles
 sont **allé(e)s**
I, you, he/she went / we, you, they made
- Plus-que-parfait :**
 je étais **allé(e)** – tu étais **allé(e)** – il/elle était **allé(e)**
 nous étions **allé(e)s** – vous étiez **allé(e)s** – ils/elles
 étaient **allé(e)s**
I, you, he/she had gone / we, you, they had gone
- Conditionnel passé :**
 je serais **allé(e)** – tu serais **allé(e)** – il/elle serait **allé(e)**
 nous serions **allé(e)s** – vous seriez **allé(e)s** – ils/elles
 seraient **allé(e)s**
*I, you, he/she would have gone / we, you, they would
 have gone*

2.7.2 Sexual connotation

{AUDIO} Only a minority of action words (<2%) use **être** to form the composed tenses. These include **venir** *to come*, **entrer** *to enter* and **arriver** *to arrive* (see the following box) and most indicate a movement. It may not escape your attention that almost all these words can assume a strong sexual connotation.

Important French action words which form the composed tenses with **être**.

Infinitif	Participe passé	Infinitive	Past participle
aller	allé	to go	gone
venir	venu	to come	come
entrer	entré	to enter	entered
rentrer	rentré	to go back in	gone back in
sortir	sorti	to go out, exit	gone out
arriver	arrivé	to arrive	arrived
rester	resté	to stay	stayed
partir	parti	to leave	left
tomber	tombé	to fall	fallen
passer	passé	to go through (a place)	gone through
retourner	retourné	to go back, return	gone back
naître	né	to be born	been born
mourir	mort	to die	died
monter	monté	to go up, climb	gone up, climbed
descendre	descendu	to go down (downstairs), climb down	gone down, climbed down

In all these cases, the **participe passé** is modified according to gender (add **-e** if it is a girl, a woman or another feminine noun) and number (add **-s** if there is more than one person or thing).

2.7.3 Être: Composed Tenses

Finally, let's complete our **être** exercise with **j'ai été** (*I was, I have been*; **été** is the *past participle* of **être**). A quick look is sufficient. Don't spend more than a minute on the table below.

2.8 Passé composé versus imparfait

At this point, we must briefly talk about the fundamental difference between **imparfait** and **passé composé**.

Sometimes, these tenses are being translated with the English *perfect* and *imperfect*. This is misleading because the use of the **imparfait** and the **passé composé** is different in French (and Italian, Spanish and Portuguese) from the use of the *imperfect* and *perfect* in English (and German, Dutch, Norwegian and Swedish):

- The French **imparfait** expresses habits, states of mind, environmental descriptions and how people and the world were in the past (continuous actions or situations);
- The French **passé composé** refers to completed actions or a series of actions in the past.

Think of a theater. While the **imparfait** may describe the various elements of a theater stage set or the background action, the **passé composé** would describe a sudden action occurring on the stage.

In addition to scenery descriptions and habits, you'll also use the **imparfait** to

- tell time and age in the past
- describe feelings in the past

{AUDIO}

	Passé composé <i>Perfect: I was or I have been</i>	Plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect: I had been</i>	Passé antérieur <i>Preterit perfect: I had been</i>
j'	ai été	avais été	eus été
tu	as été	avais été	eus été
il/elle	a été	avait été	eut été
nous	avons été	avions été	eûmes été
vous	avez été	aviez été	eûtes été
ils/elles	ont été	avaient été	eurent été

	Futur antérieur <i>Future perfect: I will have been</i>	Conditionnel passé <i>Past conditional: I would have been</i>
j'	aurai été	aurais été
tu	auras été	aurais été
il/elle	aura été	aurait été
nous	aurons été	aurions été
vous	auriez été	auriez été
ils/elles	auront été	auraient été

	Subjonctif passé <i>Past subjunctive: that I was</i>	Subjonctif plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect subjunctive: that I had been (extremely rare)</i>
que j'	aie été	eusse été
que tu	aies été	eusses été
qu'il/elle	ait été	eût été
que nous	ayons été	eussions été
que vous	ayez été	eussiez été
qu'ils/elles	aient été	eussent été

{AUDIO}

Il était 10 heures quand il est finalement arrivé.	It was 10 o'clock when he finally arrived.
J' avais 17 ans quand nous nous sommes rencontrés.	I was 17 years old when we met.
J' étais heureux comme un roi.	I was happy as a king.
Nous étions tous les deux très heureux.	We were both very happy.

If you are Italian, Spanish or Portuguese, the difference between **j'allais** *I went, I was going, I used to go* and **je suis allé** *I went, I have gone* is immediately clear to you (*Italian*: andavo vs. sono andato; *Spanish*: yo iba vs. fui; *Portuguese*: eu ia vs. fui); if you are not, you'll need time to understand and digest it. We'll present you more details in Level xxx.

2.9 Forty-nine action words (2)

Please check the word cloud and the table of the next 49ers. While the first 49 words (see page 100) represent roughly 50% of all action words you'll see in your life, this second set represents another 15%.

The percentages in the table indicate the cumulative frequency, including the 7 x 7 words of Level 1. Group 3 and 2 **participes passé** are shown in blue and green.

Important note. Frequent and common action words have generally a clear and unambiguous meaning: **manger** *to eat*, **boire** *to drink*, **dormir** *to sleep*; however, most action words don't. Take, for example, **poser** *to put*. Depending on the context, you can translate **poser** into *land, fix, pose*, etc.

- to *put* money on the table
- to *land* an aircraft
- to *fix* your gaze upon a person
- to *pose* for a magazine

In the 49er lists of this manual, we indicate only one translation. Time and experience will give you the whole picture. In the meantime, it is vital that you know that these words exist and that you become familiar with the pronunciation.



Word cloud 2.2 – Action words 50-98



{Second Round} Let me introduce you to the *GigaFrench* ‘second round’ smiley. It means that you can happily skip the following paragraph if this is your first *GigaFrench* round. During the second or subsequent study rounds, please make sure to know it all.

Open www.gigafrench.com/actionwords02 for a quick smartphone check.

{AUDIO}

#	Infinitif	Participe passé	Infinitive	Past participle
50	retrouver	retrouvé	to find again	found again
51	poser	posé	to put	put
52	monter	monté (être)	to go up	gone up
53	entrer	entré (être)	to enter	entered
54	s'asseoir	assis (être)	to sit down	sat down
55	mourir	mort (être)	to die	died
56	tirer	tiré	to pull; shoot	pulled; shot

53.9%

57	perdre	perdu	to lose	lost
58	tourner	tourné	to turn	turned
59	écrire	écrit	to write	written
60	reprendre	repris	to take back	taken back
61	jouer	joué	to play	played
62	jeter	jeté	to throw	thrown
63	marcher	marché	to walk	walked

56.3%

64	lire	lu	to read	read
65	rire	ri	to laugh	laughed
66	quitter	quitté	to leave	left
67	écouter	écouté	to listen	listened
68	descendre	descendu (être)	to go down	gone down
69	essayer	essayé	to try	tried
70	retourner	retourné (être)	to turn around	turned around

58.4%

71	pousser	poussé	to grow; push	grown; pushed
72	oublier	oublié	to forget	forgotten
73	apprendre	appris	to learn	learned
74	servir	servi	to serve	served
75	continuer	continué	to continue	continued
76	manger	mangé	to eat	eaten
77	rentrer	rentré (être)	to go back	gone back

60.3%

78	montrer	montré	to show	shown
79	boire	bu	to drink	drunk
80	courir	couru	to run	run
81	sourire	souri	to smile	smiled
82	raconter	raconté	to tell	told
83	dormir	dormi	to sleep	slept
84	garder	gardé	to keep	kept

62.1%

85	changer	changé	to change	changed
86	imaginer	imaginé	to imagine	imagined
87	crier	crié	to shout	shouted
88	expliquer	expliqué	to explain	explained
89	apercevoir	aperçu	to notice	noticed
90	glisser	glissé	to slip	slipped
91	reconnaître	reconnu	to recognise	recognised

63.7%

92	ajouter	ajouté	to add	added
93	recevoir	reçu	to receive	received
94	occuper	occupé	to occupy	occupied
95	agir	agi	to act	acted
96	tendre	tendu	to stretch	stretched
97	se souvenir	souvenu	to remember	remembered
98	décider	décidé	to decide	decided

65.1%

Let's compose the **passé composé**, **plus-que-parfait** and **conditionnel passé** of **vivre** *to live*. The **passé composé** is **vécu** *lived*.

{AUDIO}

vivre *to live*

j'	ai vécu	I	lived
tu	as vécu	you	lived
il/elle	a vécu	he/she	lived
nous	avons vécu	we	lived
vous	avez vécu	you	lived
ils/elles	ont vécu	they	lived

Now combine **j'ai vécu**, **etc.** with a few possible life events:

J'	ai vécu une vie heureuse.	I lived a happy life
Tu	as vécu une période faste.	You lived a prosperous time.
Il/Elle	a vécu un terrible traumatisme.	He/She lived a terrible trauma.
Nous	avons vécu une expérience formidable.	We had a wonderful experience.
Vous	avez vécu une soirée inoubliable.	We had an unforgettable evening.
Ils/Elles	ont vécu une liaison fatale.	They lived a fatal relationship.

Of course, nothing is easier than transposing these examples into the **plus-que-parfait**...

J'	avais vécu une vie heureuse.	I had had a happy life
Tu	avais vécu une période faste.	You had had a prosperous period.
Il/Elle	avait vécu un terrible traumatisme.	He/She had had a terrible trauma.
Nous	avions vécu une expérience formidable.	We had had a wonderful experience.
Vous	aviez vécu une soirée inoubliable.	We had had an unforgettable evening.
Ils/Elles	avaient vécu une liaison fatale.	They had had a fatal relationship.

...and the **conditionnel** passé.

J'	aurais vécu une vie heureuse.	I would have had a happy life
Tu	aurais vécu une période faste.	You would have had a prosperous time.
Il/Elle	aurait vécu un terrible traumatisme.	He/She would have had a terrible trauma.
Nous	aurions vécu une expérience formidable.	We would have had a wonderful experience.
Vous	auriez vécu une soirée inoubliable.	We would have had an unforgettable evening.
Ils/Elles	auraient vécu une liaison fatale.	They would have had a fatal relationship.

Please repeat this exercise with other action words of your choice.

2.10 Irregular Future Stems (1)

{AUDIO} You have already seen the irregular future stems of **avoir** and **être**:

Infinitive	Future	
avoir	j' aurai	I will have
être	je serai	I will be

The following future stems are frequent and will be helpful.
Find the full picture on page 268.

Infinitive	Future	
faire	je ferai	I will do
aller	j' irai	I will go
vouloir	je voudrai	I will want
pouvoir	je pourrai	I will be able
voir	je verrai	I will see
venir	je viendrai	I will come
savoir	je saurai	I will know
devoir	je devrai	I will have to
falloir	il faudra	it will be necessary
pleuvoir	il pleuvra	it will rain
mourir	je mourrai	I will die
envoyer	j' enverrai	I will send

Check the full picture of **faire** to *do/make*, **aller** to *go*, and **voir** to *see*:

	faire <i>I will do, etc.</i>		aller <i>I will go, etc.</i>		voir <i>I will see, etc.</i>
je	ferai	j'	irai	je	verrai
tu	feras	tu	iras	tu	verras
il/elle	fera	il/elle	ira	il/elle	verra
nous	ferons	nous	irons	nous	verrons
vous	fererez	vous	irez	vous	verrez
ils/elles	feront	ils/elles	iront	ils/elles	verront

2.11 'on' (2)

{AUDIO} In Level 1 you saw that the *indefinite pronoun on* is generally translated with **nous** and that it is always accompanied by action words in the 3rd person singular:

On y va ?

Shall **we** go?

On a faim !

We are hungry!

(children coming home)

Less frequently, **on** can mean *them*. In other cases, it is best translated by a passive construction:

On m'a dit qu'il était déprimé. **They** told me that he was depressed.

or

I was told he was depressed.

In these cases, **on** replaces the general sense of **les gens** *people* or also **quelqu'un** *someone*.

Finally, **on** can be used to profess universal truths:

Quand **on** est con, **on** est con. When you are stupid, you are just plain stupid.

Plus **on** devient vieux, plus **on** devient con. The older you get, the more stupid you get.

Six more indefinite pronouns:

quelque chose	something
quelqu'un	someone
plusieurs	several
tout	everything
tout le monde	everyone
un(e) autre	another one

2.12 Negation (2)

{AUDIO} In Level 1 you put **n'** and **pas** around the present tense forms of **avoir**:

Singular

je	n'ai pas	I	don't have
tu	n'as pas	you	don't have
il/elle	n'a pas	he/she	doesn't have

Plural

nous	n'avons pas	we	don't have
vous	n'avez pas	you	don't have
ils/elles	n'ont pas	they	don't have

Remember the examples:

Je n'ai pas	sept voitures	I do not have	seven cars
tu n'as pas	huit appartements	you do not have	eight apartments
il/elle n'a pas	neuf portables	he/she does not have	nine cellphones
nous n'avons pas	dix mille euros	we do not have	ten thousand euro
vous n'avez pas	onze tablettes	you do not have	eleven tablets
ils/elles n'ont pas	douze jeux vidéo	they do not have	twelve video games

Now extend your knowledge of negatives to *never/ever*, *nothing/anything*, *nobody/anything* and *no more/anymore*. The procedure is simple: Keep the **ne** in front of the action word and place **jamais** *never/ever*, **rien** *nothing/anything*, **personne** *nobody/anybody* and **plus** *no more/anymore* after it.

Je ne t'aime pas .	I don't love you.
Il ne travaille jamais .	He/She never works.
Il/Elle ne sait rien .	He/She doesn't know anything (knows nothing).
Nous ne le ferons plus jamais .	We won't do it again ('never anymore').
Vous ne voyez personne .	You don't see anybody.
Ils/Elles ne m'aiment plus .	They don't love me anymore.

In synthesis:

ne	not
ne .. jamais	never / ever
ne .. rien	nothing / anything
ne .. personne	nobody / anybody
ne .. plus	no more / anymore
ne .. plus jamais	never again / ever again
ne .. plus rien	nothing again / anything again
ne .. plus personne	nobody again / anybody again
ne .. que*	only

* ne ... que has the structure of a negation but is translated with *only*.

Things are slightly more knotty with *compound tenses*. To negate **je t'ai aimé** *I loved you*, **ne** goes before the **avoir** forms (and any optional personal pronoun **me/m'**, **te/t'**, **le/l'**, **la/l'**, etc.):

Je ne t'ai pas aimé.	I didn't love you.
Je n' ai pas compris.	I didn't understand.

But where shall we place the second element (**pas, jamais, rien, plus, personne, que**)? There are two rules:

1)

In the presence of a past participle, **pas, jamais, rien** and **plus** go *after* the **avoir** forms and *before* the past participle:

Il/Elle n'a jamais travaillé.	He/She (has) never worked.
Il/Elle n'a jamais rien vu.	He/She never saw anything or He/She has never seen anything.
Tu ne m'as jamais aidé.	You (have) never helped me.
Nous ne l'avons plus jamais fait.	We never did it again.
Je n'aime que toi.	I love only you.

2)

In the presence of a past participle, **personne** and **que** always go *after* the past participle:

Je n'ai vu personne .	I didn't see anybody.
Je n'ai plus vu personne .	I haven't seen anybody again.
Je n'ai aimé que toi.	I have loved only you.

Do these sentences sound complicated? They ARE complicated. Give them a few weeks to crystallize in your brain.

2.13 Y avoir: There is...

{AUDIO} Let's take a quick look at a secondary function of **avoir**. In combination with **il y**, you'll use it to state the existence of something: *there is, there are, there was, there will be, etc.* The two magic formulae, one for the affirmative and one for the negative, are **il y [x]** and **il n'y [x] pas**. Here we go:

Présent

il y a	there is / there are
il n'y a pas	there isn't / there aren't

Imparfait

il y avait	there was / there were (there used to be)
il n'y avait pas	there wasn't/there weren't

Passé composé

il y a eu	there was / there were there has been / there have been
il n'y a pas eu	there wasn't / there weren't there has not been / there have not been

Futur

il y aura	there will be
il n'y aura pas	there will not be

Conditionnel présent

il y aurait	there would be
il n'y aurait pas	there would not be

Some examples:

Il y a un problème	There is a problem.
Il n'y a pas de pain.	There is no bread.
Il y avait beaucoup de travail.	There was much work (to do).
Il n'y avait rien à voir.	There was nothing to see.
Il y a eu un grand changement.	There was a big change.
Il n'y a pas eu de révolte.	There was no insurrection.
Il y aura beaucoup de monde.	There will be many people.
Il n'y aura plus rien à manger.	There will be nothing left to eat.
Il y aurait une solution.	There would be a solution.
Il n'y aurait pas de problèmes du tout .	There would be no problems at all.

2.14 Master Class (3)

French will enter your brain via two (and only two) routes: your eyes and your ears. Written language is for your eyes, (this manual, newspapers, magazines, books, etc.) while spoken language is for your ears (your friends and family speaking about their work and life; strangers at meetings and conferences, etc.).

Two different entry routes mean that there are two different brain areas in charge of processing the incoming signals. Signals from the eyes are being processed at the back of your brain, in the occipital brain region, whereas signals from the ear are being processed in the so-called temporal brain lobe, located above your ears. The consequence? You have two distinct construction sites inside your brain, one for French writing and one for French speech, and you'll need to work on both of them. Astonishingly, training your ear demands at least as much training as the training of your eye and your word memory. In other words: Be prepared to spend about 1,000 hours in listening to other people before being fluent in oral comprehension.

That's why we recommend at the beginning of each level to listen to the opening text 10, 20, or even up to 50 times, until you distinguish and understand every single word. The earlier you start training your 'ear brain', the earlier you'll reach full understanding of spoken French.

Does the extra schedule of 1,000 hours of brain training scare you? Don't worry, here is a piece of fabulous news. Listening can easily be done in parallel to other activities, for example commuting, doing sports, cooking, etc. That means that you'll be able to dissolve the bulk of your 'speech recognition programme' within your daily life (like a murderer dissolving a corpse in a bath of acid!) – just put your earphones on and sprinkle your ear brain with hours of French – every day, of

course! Find detailed information about training your ear in Chapter 2 of *The Word Brain*, page 23ff. Download the free 81-page PDF from www.TheWordBrain.com.



L'Île Saint-Louis | © Copyright: Marie de France

II. Grammar

2.15 Articles (2)

The definite articles **le** and **la** both become **l'** when they precede a noun that begins with a vowel or with a so-called *mute h* (see details on page 451): **l'homme** *man*, **l'heure** *hour*, **l'œil** *eye*. The following words are the most frequent - learn them together with the indefinite article:

{AUDIO}

Masculine

homme	man
œil	eye
enfant	child <i>m.</i>
air	air, appearance
an	year
amour	love
ordre	order
état	state
esprit	spirit
arbre	tree
argent	money, silver
effet	effect, result
hôtel	hotel
escalier	stairs

Feminine

heure	hour
enfant	child <i>f.</i>
eau	water
année	year
histoire	story, history
idée	idea
épaule	shoulder
envie	desire, longing
affaire	matter, affair
ombre	shade, shadow
odeur	smell, perfume
oreille	ear
image	image
impression	impression
habitude	habit, custom
église	church

2.16 Nouns (2)

2.16.1 Nationalities and languages

Planet Earth has around 200 countries and 7,000 languages. As listing them all is impossible, we'll show the names of the people who visit France most and those of the immediate geographic surroundings. If your language and country doesn't appear in this list, don't feel offended – you are always in our thoughts. For a complete list, check the “Liste des pays du monde”,

https://fr.wikipedia.org/wiki/Liste_des_pays_du_monde
(accessed 2 November 2015).

While going through the following list, remember that

- For nationalities, the proper noun (**l'Allemand** *the German*) and the masculine adjective (le garçon **allemand** *the German boy*) are identical. In English, both are capitalized; in French, only the proper noun is capitalized.
- Some nationalities add **-e** or **-ne** in the feminine forms (see parentheses).
- The names of languages (ex: **l'italien** [*the*] *Italian [language]*) are always masculine and not capitalized. They usually correspond to the masculine adjective (**italien** *Italian*).
- To say that you are from Country X, say **je suis** *I am* + your nationality, for example: **je suis, anglais** *I am English*. If you are a woman, use the feminine form: **je suis, anglaise** *I am English*. (Don't forget to make the liaison whenever your nationality starts with a vowel!) In French, nationalities are not capitalized.

	(AUDIO)	Nationality	Language*
France	France	Français(e)**	le français
Germany	Allemagne	Allemand(e)	l'allemand
England	Angleterre	Anglais(e)	l'anglais
Belgium	Belgique	Belge	le flamand, le français
Italy	Italie	Italien(ne)	l'italien
Spain	Espagne	Espagnol(e)	l'espagnol
Netherlands	les Pays-Bas m.	Néerlandais(e)	le néerlandais
Switzerland	Suisse	Suisse	l'allemand, le français, l'italien
United States	les États-Unis m.	Américain(e)	l'anglais
China	Chine	Chinois(e)	le chinois
Brazil	le Brésil	Brésilien(ne)	le portugais
Canada	le Canada	Canadien(ne)	le français, l'anglais
Portugal	le Portugal	Portugais(e)	le portugais
Ireland	Irlande	Irlandais(e)	l'anglais, l'irlandais
Denmark	le Danemark	Danois(e)	le danois
Japan	le Japon	Japonais(e)	le japonais
Sweden	Suède	Suédois(e)	le suédois
Norway	Norvège	Norvégien(ne)	le norvégien (bokmål et nynorsk)
Austria	Autriche	Autrichien(ne)	l'allemand
Russia	Russie	Russe	le russe
India	Inde	Indien(ne)	le hindi, le bengali, le marathi, l'ourdou, le gujarati plus hundreds of others

* In countries where multiple languages are being used, only the main languages are listed.

** In the masculine form, a final -d, -n, or -s is silent (Français, Allemand, Italien); in the feminine form, when followed by an -e, the -d, -n, and -s are pronounced.

	Continent	Nationality	Language
Africa	Afrique	Africain(e)	
America	Amérique	Américain(e)	
Asia	Asie	Asiatique	
Europe	Europe	Européen(ne)	
Australia	Australie	Australien(ne)	l'anglais

2.16.2 Feminine nouns



{Second Round} {AUDIO} Remember the ‘second round’ smiley: The following paragraph is optional if you are studying this manual for the first time; in this case, jump ahead to page 207. Only in the second and third round do you need to make sure to know all the words.

We advised you earlier to memorize the combination [article] + [noun] because the gender of French nouns is not always predictable. Fortunately, there are some helpful rules.

- Females are usually feminine: **la femme** *the woman*, **la fille** *the girl*.
- Furthermore, the endings **–ion**, **–ie**, **–té**, **–ure**, **–ance**, **–ence**, **–ade**, **–ise**, **–son**, **–ude** **–aison**, **–ande** and **–tié** indicate a feminine gender. Exceptions are rare.

- –ion (1800 words in a 45,000-word dictionary)

question *question*, **impression** *impression*, **attention** *attention*. The extensive list on page 542 shows that you have easy access to more than 1,500 French words. All you need is the correct French pronunciation. Check the audio file at xxx.

Gender exception: **un avion** *aircraft*, **le million** *million*, **le camion** *lorry*, **le lion** *lion*, **le champion** *champion*, **un espion** *spy*

- –ie (1400 words)

vie *life*, **envie** *wish, desire*, **partie** *part, section*, **pluie** *rain*, **compagnie** *company*, **folie** *madness*, **maladie** *disease, illness*

Gender exception: **le génie** *genius*, **un incendie** *fire, blaze*, **le parapluie** *umbrella*

○ -té (800)

vérité *truth*, **volonté** *will, desire*, **la santé** *health*

Easy to memorize: **liberté**, **beauté**, **réalité**,
autorité, **société**, **qualité**, **curiosité**, **difficulté**,
obscurité, **unité**, **sécurité**, **activité**, **dignité**,
éternité, **clarté**, **possibilité**, **responsabilité**

Gender exception: **un été** *summer*, **le retraité**
pensioner, **le député** *MP, Member of Parliament*

○ -ure (400)

heure *hour*, **voiture** *car*, **peinture** *painting*,
allure *appearance; speed*, **couverture** *cover*,
coverage, **chaussure** *shoe*.

Easy to memorize: **mesure**, **nature**, **figure**,
aventure, **lecture**, **littérature**, **culture**,
créature

Gender exception: **le murmure** *whisper*, **un**
augure *omen, soothsayer*

○ -ance (240)

impuissance *impotence*, **avance** *head start*,
advance, **enfance** *childhood*, **vacances** (plural)
holiday, **connaissance** *knowledge*,
understanding, **puissance** *power*, **naissance**
birth, **souffrance** *suffering*, **séance** *session*,
ordonnance *prescription; order*, **méfiance**
suspicion, distrust, **aisance** *ease*

Easy to memorize: **chance**, **confiance**,
importance, **distance**, **circonstance**, **résistance**,
assurance, **espérance**, **indépendance**, **alliance**,
élégance, **reconnaissance**, **tendance**, **nuance**,
assistance, **vengeance**, **ignorance**, **insistance**

○ -ence (200)

Most of these words are intelligible to English native speakers : **présence, existence, conscience, absence, expérience, violence, apparence, différence, évidence, indifférence, intelligence, conséquence, impatience, patience, science, essence, confiance, influence, conférence, prudence, innocence, agence, excellence, indulgence, préférence, adolescence, cadence, permanence, transparence, résidence, insolence, audience, licence, occurrence, référence, coïncidence, inconscience**

Gender exception: **le silence** *silence*

- –ade (190)

ambassade *embassy*, **croisade** *crusade*, **rade** *harbour*, **rigolade** *laugh, joke*, **balade** *walk, stroll*, **bousculade** *rush, crush*.

Easy to memorize: **promenade, façade, salade, grenade, brigade, arcade, cascade, parade, fusillade, barricade, esplanade, limonade**

Gender exception: **le camarade**, **le grade** *rank, position*, **le stade** *stadium, stage*

- –ise (100)

église *church*, **chemise** *shirt*, **valise** *suitcase*, **bêtise** *nonsense, silly thing*, **sottise** *stupidity*, **cerise** *cherry*, **maîtrise** *control, mastery*, **gourmandise** *love of good food*, **convoitise** *desire*, **hantise** *obsession, fear*

Easy to memorize: **crise, marchandise, brise**.

Gender exception: **le pare-brise** *windscreen*

- –son (80)

guérison *recovery, healing*, **boisson** *drink*,
chanson *song*, **trahison** *treason*, **mousson**
monsoon

Easy to memorize: **prison**, **liaison**, **saison**,
garnison

The following words are all masculine:

le poison *poison*, **le poisson** *fish*, **le blouson**
jacket, **le buisson** *bush*, **le frisson** *shivers*, **le**
saucisson, **le chausson** *slipper*, **le nourrisson**
infant, **le hérisson** *hedgehog*

○ –ude (60)

une habitude *habit, custom*, **une étude** *study*,
une inquiétude *worry, anxiety*, **la certitude**
certainty, **la lassitude** *tiredness*

Easy to memorize: **solitude**, **attitude**, **altitude**,
gratitude, and **servitude**,

Gender exception: **le coude** *elbow*, **le prélude**
prelude, introduction

○ –aison (40)

maison *house*, **raison** *reason*, **saison** *season*,
liaison, **combinaison**, **comparaison**, **livraison**
delivery, **cargaison** *cargo, freight*, **floraison**
flowering, **conjugaison** *conjugation*, **pendaison**
hanging (punishment).

○ –ande (25)

amande *almond*, **bande** *group, band*, **viande**
meat, **amande** *almond*, **lavande** *lavender*,
contrebande *smuggling*, **télécommande** *remote*
control

Easy to memorize: **propagande**, **demande**,
commande.

- -tié (3)

la moitié *half*, **una amitié** *friendship*, **la pitié** *pity*

Find typical masculine endings on page 286.

2.16.3 -s, -x, or -z

{AUDIO} When a noun (or adjective) ends in -s, -x, or -z in the singular, don't add a further -s in the plural.

	Singular	Plural
virus	le virus	les virus
son	le fils	les fils
price, prize	le prix	les prix
choice	le choix	les choix
gas	le gaz	les gaz
nose	le nez	les nez
Frenchman	le Français	les Français
an Englishman	l'Anglais <i>m.</i>	les Anglais
Dutchman	le Hollandais	les Hollandais
Portuguese	le Portugais	les Portugais

2.16.4 -eau, -eu, or -au



{Second Round} {AUDIO} Nouns ending in -eau, -au, or -eu (all masculine with the exception of **eau** *water*) take on an -x in the plural. The -x doesn't change the pronunciation.

Singular	Plural	
eau <i>f.</i>	eaux	water
peau	peaux	skin
bureau	bureaux	office, desk
oiseau	oiseaux	bird
morceau	morceaux	piece
tableau	tableaux	painting; board
chapeau	chapeaux	hat
rideau	rideaux	curtain
bateau	bateaux	boat, ship
château	châteaux	castle
manteau	manteaux	coat
plateau	plateaux	plateau; tray
couteau	couteaux	knife
cadeau	cadeaux	present, gift
niveau	niveaux	level
gâteau	gâteaux	cake
cerveau	cerveaux	brain
<hr/>		
dieu	dieux	god
cheveu	cheveux	hair
lieu	lieux	place
milieu	milieux	middle, centre
feu	feux	fire
jeu	jeux	play, game
adieu	adieux	farewell
aveu	aveux	confession
<hr/>		
tuyau	tuyaux	pipe, hose

Exception:

pneu	pneus	tyre
------	-------	------

2.17 Adjectives (2)

{AUDIO} Remember: adjectives describe qualities of

- people,
- animals
- things

Remember also the **petit chéri** example and that every French noun is either masculine or feminine and either singular or plural; remember finally that adjectives must agree in number and gender with their nouns.

French adjectives can be divided into three groups, two big groups and one small. Groups 1 and 2, of roughly equal size, represent the bulk of French adjectives.

1. Adjectives ending with a consonant (mostly -d, -t, -r, -s, -n, -l)
2. Adjectives ending in -e
3. Irregular adjectives

2.17.1 Adjectives ending with a consonant

For Group 1 adjectives, those ending with a consonant, let's briefly recapitulate what we saw in Level 1. We add

- -e when the noun is feminine singular (one woman: **petite**)
- -s when the corresponding noun is masculine plural (two or more men; in the example above, **petits**)
- -es when the corresponding noun is feminine plural (two or more women: **petites**)

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular		-e
	Plural	-s	-es

Important note. In the **petit chéri** example, the adjective came before the noun. That's not the rule! In French, adjectives generally go **behind** the nouns. Exceptions are some short adjectives such as **grand** *tall*, **huge**, **petit** *small*, **jeune** *young*, **vieux** *old*.

In the following tables, you'll pronounce the final consonants only in the feminine forms (-d-, -t-, -s- shown in bold). Remember: the French generally don't pronounce the last letters of a word.

	Singular		Plural	
	Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
warm	chaud	chaud e	chaud s	chaud es
cold	froid	froid e	froid s	froid es
short	court	court e	court s	court es
strong	fort	fort e	fort s	fort es
ugly	laid	laid e	laid s	laid es
heavy	lourd	lourd e	lourd s	lourd es
evil	mauvais	mauvais e	mauvais s	mauvais es
high	haut	haut e	haut s	haut es
perfect	parfait	parfait e	parfait s	parfait es

Note that the plural **-s** is always silent and doesn't change pronunciation in the masculine or the feminine forms:

chaud=chauds [ʃo] and chaude=chaudes [ʃod].

In summary:

- Final consonants (-d, -t, -n, etc.) are generally silent. After adding the **-e** for the feminine forms, the final consonants are pronounced.
- Both masculine forms (example: chaud and chauds) have the same pronunciation.
- Both feminine forms (example: chaude and chaudes) have the same pronunciation.

2.17.2 Adjectives ending in -e

Adjectives of group 2, those ending in **-e**, are both masculine and feminine. To form the plural of both masculine and feminine forms, just add an **-s**: pauvres, riches, imaginaires, etc.

	Masculine or Feminine	
	Singular	Plural
poor	pauvre	pauvres
rich	riche	riches
imaginary	imaginaire	imaginaires
easy	facile	faciles
difficult	difficile	difficiles
slim	mince	minces
ridiculous	ridicule	ridicules
stupid	bête	bêtes
red	rouge	rouges
calm	calme	calmes

tiny	minuscule	minuscules
clean	propre	propres
ironic	ironique	ironiques

2.17.3 Irregular adjectives: Categories

Most irregular adjectives can be grouped into less than 20 categories. Let's start with the first three groups which have an additional **-I-** in the feminine forms:

Masculine ending	Feminine ending	Singular	Plural	
-il	-ille	gentil / gentille	gentils / gentilles	kind, nice
-el	-elle	cruel / cruelle	cruels / cruelles	cruel
-eil	-eille	pareil / pareille	pareils / pareilles	similar

2.17.4 Irregular plural of adjectives

As we said earlier, almost all adjectives add **-s** in the plural, both to the masculine and the feminine forms. There are two major exceptions:

- Don't add **-s** to masculine forms ending in **-x**. In these cases, the singular and plural forms are identical: **un imbécile heureux** *a happy idiot*, **deux imbéciles heureux** *two happy idiots*. The feminine form adds an **-s**, though: **une femme heureuse** *a happy woman*, **deux femmes heureuses** *two happy women*.
- Adjectives ending in **-al**, for example **international**, change to **-aux** in the masculine plural form: un champion international, deux champions internationaux. The feminine forms are regular: internationale, internationales.

2.18 Jokers (2)

2.18.1 The next 21 jokers

Open www.gigafrench.com/jokers02 for a quick smartphone check.

{AUDIO}

22	même	even, same	adv; adj
23	ici	here	adv
24	là	there	adv
25	encore	again, still	adv
26	très	very	adv
27	toujours	always	adv
28	donc	therefore, so	conj
29	devant	in front of, before	prep/adv
30	derrière	behind	prep/adv
31	chez	at, to	prep
32	mais	but	conj
33	peu	little	adv; adj
34	beaucoup	a lot, many	adv; adj
35	quand	when	adv
36	après	after, below	prep; adv
37	avant	before	prep; adv
38	trop	too, too much	adv
39	puis	then	adv
40	jamais	never	adv
41	entre	between	prep
42	déjà	already	adv

Find the next jokers on page 292.

{AUDIO} The following 14 adverbs are extremely common:

		Adverb of
encore	still	time
aussi	also	comparison
toujours	always	time
très	very	quantity
peut-être	maybe, perhaps	probability
déjà	already	time
maintenant	now	time
ensuite	next, then	time
tôt	early	time
tard	late	time
partout	everywhere	place
vite	quickly	manner
assez	quite, fairly	quantity
trop	too much	quantity

2.18.3 Prepositions (2)

{AUDIO} In Level 1 we presented you the most common French prepositions **de, à, dans, avec, sans, entre** and **pour**. Remember: Prepositions are short words such as *at, of, in, on, to, with* which **link words in a sentence**. They are usually used in front of nouns (boy, girl, flower, tree) or pronouns (him, her, them) and show, for example,

1. **Where** something takes place (*at* my friend's place)
2. **When** something happens (*before* making love)
3. **Descriptive information** (the doctor *with* the pony tail)



Word cloud 2.4 – Prepositions

Let's briefly present **chez**, **jusque**, **par** and **vers**.

Ce soir, je dîne **chez mes parents**.

Tonight, I'll have supper *at my parents' house*.

On se voit **chez moi** ?

Let's meet *at my place*?

Attends **jusque** demain !

Wait *until* tomorrow!

Allons plutôt **vers** Notre-Dame.

Let's go *to* Notre Dame (= take the direction of).

Il arrive **vers** deux heures.

He is coming *at around* two o'clock.

On peut passer **par** la rue Saint-Denis.

We can go **through** Saint Denis street.

You'll see later that every single preposition has multiple uses requiring different translations.

2.18.4 The word “de”

{AUDIO} The tiny preposition **de** is one of the most versatile and chameleonic words of the French language. It is so frequent that you might find it every 10 words:

Deux immenses explosions provoquées par l'incendie **d'**un entrepôt contenant **des** produits inflammables et toxiques ont eu lieu, mercredi 12 août au soir, dans une zone industrielle **de** Tianjin, une grande ville du nord-est **de** la Chine. Plus **de** 24 heures plus tard, le bilan humain est lourd : au moins 50 morts, dont 12 pompiers, et plus **de** 700 blessés, dont 71 dans un état critique, selon un bilan provisoire établi par les médias **d'**Etat.

Two huge explosions caused by a fire in a warehouse containing inflammable and toxic products took place the evening of Wednesday, August 12, in an industrial area of Tianjin, a city in northeastern China. More than 24 hours later, the human toll is heavy: at least 50 dead, including 12 firefighters, and more than 700 injured, including 71 in critical condition, according to a provisional toll issued by the state media.

© Copyright: *Le Monde*, <http://hiv.net/kcl>, accessed 14 August 2015.

Depending on the context, English translations include *of*, *from*, *in*, *about* and *by*; in some cases, **de** isn't translated at all.

Use

Description: in	l'incendie d' un entrepôt	a fire in a warehouse
Partitive article des (de+les)	des produits inflammables	flammable products
Geography: of	zone industrielle de Tianjin	industrial area of Tianjin
Geography: of	nord-est de la Chine	northeastern China
Quantity: than	plus de 24 heures plus tard	more than 24 hours later
Quantity: than	plus de 700 blessés	more than 700 injured
Possession	les médias d' Etat	the state media

Final reminder

1. **de + le** always contract to **du**
2. **de + les** always contract to **des**

2.19 Numbers 13-79

{AUDIO} Counting from 13-79 is inconspicuous, at least in the beginning. From 13 to 16 you have compact one-syllable words, then ‘ten-seven’, ‘ten-eight’, ‘ten-nine’ – nothing truly shocking. From 20 to 69, things turn almost unfrenchily normal. Apart from 21, 31, 41, etc. (vingt **et** un, trente **et** un, quarante **et** un), the numbers finally resemble rock-solid British numbers. Then, suddenly, the truce ends: 60+10, 60+11, 60+12... – it’ll take you some time to open your eyes on such contorted math! Why the hell do French make their life so complicated? However, if you think we have reached the summit of French exceptionalism, wait until Level 3. There, the nation of logic will top it all.

treize	13	vingt et un	21
quatorze	14	vingt-deux	22
quinze	15	vingt-trois	23
seize	16	trente	30
dix-sept	17	trente et un	31
dix-huit	18	trente-deux	32
dix-neuf	19	quarante	40
vingt	20	cinquante	50
		soixante	60
		soixante-neuf	69

soixante-dix (60+10)	70*
soixante et onze (60+11)	71
soixante-douze (60+12)	72
soixante-treize (60+13)	73
soixante-quatorze (60+14)	74
soixante-quinze (60+15)	75
soixante-seize (60+16)	76
soixante-dix-sept (60+17)	77
soixante-dix-huit (60+18)	78
soixante-dix-neuf (60+19)	79

* P.S. In Belgium, Luxemburg and Switzerland, native French speakers use septante, septante et un, septante-deux, etc. Phew!..

2.20 Asking a question

{AUDIO} When you ask a question in English, you usually add *do/did* at the beginning of the sentence: *Do you see this? Did you do that?* or invert *you can* into *can you?*, *you will* into *will you?*, etc. In French, you have three options to turn a statement into a question:

2.20.1 Raise the pitch

That's the simplest and most common way: Take a statement and put a question mark at the end. In speech, just raise the pitch of your voice at the end of the sentence:

Statement

Tu peux venir aujourd'hui.	You can come today.
Tu viens.	You are coming.

Question

Tu peux venir aujourd'hui ?	Can you come today?
Tu viens ?	Are you coming?

2.20.2 Est-ce que

Another simple way is to put **est-ce que** at the beginning of the sentence:

Statement

Tu peux venir aujourd'hui. You can come today.

Question

Est-ce que tu peux venir Can you come today?
aujourd'hui ?

Of course, before il/elle and ils/elles, you'll drop the final **-e** and add a hyphen: **est-ce qu'il**, **est-ce qu'elle**, etc.

2.20.3 Inversion

A third way of asking a question is the inversion of pronoun and action word:

Statement

Tu peux venir aujourd'hui. You can come today.

Question

Peux-tu venir aujourd'hui ? Can you come today?

This is straightforward. You just introduce a hyphen between action word and pronoun.

Matters are more complex when you have a composed tense:

Statement

Il a acheté un lapin. He bought a rabbit.

Question

A-t-il acheté un lapin ? Has he bought a rabbit?

What do you see? First, make the inversion between the pronoun **il** and the auxiliary **a**; second, add a smoothing **t** because French doesn't like two vowels (**i** and **a**) clashing into each other; third, stitch everything together with hyphens: **a-t-il**.

There is yet another curiosity. Look at this:

Statement

Luc a acheté un canard. Luc bought a duck.

Question

Luc **a-t-il** acheté un canard ? Has Luc bought a duck?

If the sentence has a noun (instead of a pronoun 'il' as in the previous sentence), you'll put the noun at the beginning of the sentence: **Luc a-t-il...**

Look at the following questions and give them time to settle into your brain. You'll better understand them when you go through this manual the second or third time.

Ne travaille-t-il jamais?	Doesn't he ever work?
Ne sait-il rien?	Doesn't he know anything?
Ne voyez-vous personne?	Don't you see anybody?
Ne m'aimes-tu plus?	Won't you love me anymore?
Ne le ferons-nous plus jamais?	Won't we ever do it again?

2.21 Bits and Pieces

2.21.1 Question words

{AUDIO} The most important question words are

qui?	who, whom?
que or qu'est-ce que?	what?
quand?	when?
comment?	how?
où?	where?
d'où?	from where?
pourquoi?	why?

Qui est là ?	Who is there?
Qu'est-ce que tu fais ?	What are you doing?
Où vas-tu ?	Where are you going?
Qu'est-ce que vous avez ?	What's wrong with you?
Pourquoi tu ne viens pas ?	Why don't you come?
Comment tu me trouves ?	How do you find me?
Quand veux-tu venir ?	When do you want to come?
Qui es-tu ?	Who are you?
Qu'est-ce que tu veux ?	What do you want?
Où êtes-vous allés/allées ?	Where did you go?
D'où venez-vous ?	Where are you coming from?
Pourquoi m'as-tu embrassé ?	Why did you kiss me?
Comment as-tu fait ça ?	How did you do that?
Quand est-ce qu'on se voit ?	When will we see each other (again)?

2.21.2 Magic Words

{AUDIO} French has two truly magic expressions: **s'il vous plaît** – literally: if it pleases you – and **s'il te plaît**.

Use **vous**

- when you speak to more than one person, no matter if you're close friends with them or not;
- with single people in formal situations.

With single friends or family, use **s'il te plaît** instead.

Pourriez-vous me passer le beurre, **s'il vous plaît** ? (formal) Could you pass me the butter, **please**?

Tu me passes le beurre, **s'il te plaît** ? (informal) Pass me the butter, **please**?

These formulae are evidently more dignified than a brutish **Passe-moi le beurre!** *Pass me the butter!* In French, **s'il vous plaît** and **s'il te plaît** are therefore as important as in English – the more often you use them, the easier life will be. When you enter a **boucherie** *butcher's shop*, a **boulangerie** *baker's shop*, or a **fromagerie** *cheesemonger's shop*, **s'il vous plaît** is *de rigueur*:

Je voudrais
I would like

une douzaine
d'huitres,
deux
douzaines
d'escargots,
une demi-
douzaine de
cuisses de
grenouille,
un bifteck de
cheval bien
juteux,

***s'il vous
plaît.***

a dozen oysters
two dozen
escargots
half a dozen
frog's legs
a juicy horse
steak

2.21.3 Silent letters (2)

{AUDIO} Let's go back to the inconsistent way French treats consonants at the end of a word. Remember that most of the time, they are not pronounced, but sometimes they are. The letters C, R, F, L (careful), B, K and Q are usually pronounced at the end of a word. Let's look at the letter F:

	Pronounce the final F		Don't pronounce the final F	
F	œuf [œf]	egg	œufs [ø]	eggs
	chef [ʃɛf]	boss	nerf [nɛʁ]	nerve
	neuf [nœf]	new	clef [kle]	key
	préservatif [pʁɛzɛʁvatif]	condom		
	juif [ʒɥif]	Jewish		
	positif [pozitif]	positive		
	bœuf [bœf]	beef		

2.21.4 Toolbox 4

The 14 French tenses

By now you should know the meaning of *definite, indefinite and partitive articles; adjectives and nouns; and adverbs, conjunctions and prepositions.*

Let's repeat one last time the complete set of 14 French tenses. Remember: in a conversation with your friends and colleagues you'll hear or use these tenses either **every minute (présent, passé composé, imparfait, futur)** or at intervals of **less than 5 minutes (plus-que-parfait, conditionnel présent, conditionnel passé, subjonctif présent)**. You cannot study French without being familiar with these 14 technical terms:

Simple tenses

1	Présent	<i>Present</i>
2	Imparfait	<i>Imperfect</i>
3	Passé simple	<i>Simple past</i>
4	Futur	<i>Future</i>
5	Conditionnel présent	<i>Present conditional</i>
6	Subjonctif présent	<i>Present subjunctive</i>
7	Subjonctif imparfait	<i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>

Composed tenses

1	Passé composé	Perfect
2	Plus-que-parfait	Past perfect
3	Passé antérieur	Preterit perfect
4	Futur antérieur	Future perfect
5	Conditionnel passé	Past conditional
6	Subjonctif passé	Past subjunctive
7	Subjonctif plus-que-parfait	Past perfect subjunctive

2.21.5 Social Vocabulary

First encounter

{AUDIO}

Pleased to meet you.	Enchanté(e).	
What's your name?	Comment vous appelez-vous?	polite
	Comment tu t'appelles ?	familiar
My name is X.	Je m'appelle X.	
Thank you very much.	Merci beaucoup.	
You're welcome.	De rien.	
Good-bye. See you soon.	Au revoir. À bientôt.	

Following encounters

How are you?	Comment allez-vous ?	polite
	Comment vas-tu ?	familiar
	Salut, ça va ?	familiar
It's going well / bad.	Ça va bien / mal.	
Fine, thanks. And you?	Très bien, merci, et vous ?	polite
	Très bien, merci, et toi ?	familiar

2.22 Reading the News

{AUDIO} It is time for your second newspaper article. Let's cut into pieces the 130 words about Barack Obama's election as the 44th president of the United States in 2008. We have highlighted the three main word classes:

1. Action word

2. Noun

3. Adjective

Après sa **victoire**, Barack Obama s'est adressé à son **pays** et au **monde**.

À peine **élu**, le 44^e **président** des **Etats-Unis**, Barack Obama s'est

After his **victory**, Barack Obama spoke to his **country and the world**. Barely elected the 44th president of the United States, Barack Obama has

hissé à la hauteur de l'événement historique que constitue son élection, quarante ans après la fin de la ségrégation raciale. (...)

Premier président africain-américain de l'histoire des États-Unis, Barack Obama a été élu dans un raz de marée qui a mis tout le pays en liesse. Du New Hampshire à Harlem, des grilles de la Maison Blanche au Grant Park de Chicago, les Américains ont repris sa promesse : "Yes we can!" ("Oui, nous le pouvons !"), tout est possible à un peuple réconcilié.

Dans un pays ébranlé par les crises – économique, morale, identitaire – , Barack Obama a montré le chemin : "Nous sommes et nous serons toujours les États-Unis d'Amérique."

risen to the height of the historic event of his election, forty years after the end of racial segregation. (..)

The first African-American president in the history of the United States, Barack Obama was elected in a tidal wave that put the country into a state of jubilation. From New Hampshire to Harlem, from the gates of the White House to Chicago's Grant Park, Americans joined in with his promise: "Yes we can!", everything is possible for a reconciled people. In a country shaken by crises – economic, moral, identity – Barack Obama has shown the way: "We are and always will be the United States of America."

© 2008 Le Monde, France's best newspaper. Find the entire text at <http://www.lemonde.fr/journalectronique/donnees/libre/20081106/index.html> Accessed February 23, 2016.

Read the text several times. In particular, get accustomed to the idea of analysing a text word by word and understanding the function of every single word.



Montmartre | © Copyright: Marie de France

III. Results & Preview

{AUDIO} That's it for Level 2.

1.

Can you say

Présent

je **suis** – tu **es** – il/elle **est** | nous **sommes** – vous **êtes** –
ils/elles **sont**

I am, you are, he/she is / we, you, they are

Imparfait

j'**étais** – tu **étais** – il/elle **était** | nous **étions** – vous **étiez** –
ils/elles **étaient**

I was, you were, he/she was / we, you, they were
I, you, he/she used to be / we, you, they used to be

Futur

je **serai** – tu **seras** – il/elle **sera** | nous **serons** – vous **serez** –
ils/elles **seront**

I, you, he or she will be / we, you, they will be

Conditionnel présent

je **serais** – tu **serais** – il/elle **serait** | nous **serions** – vous **seriez**
– ils/elles **seraient**

I, you, he or she would be / we, you, they would be

2.

Do you remember the strong sexual connotations of action words using the auxiliary **être** to form composed tenses (**passé composé, plus-que-parfait, conditionnel passé**, etc.)?

Infinitif	Participe passé	
aller	allé	to go
venir	venu	to come
entrer	entré	to enter
rentrer	rentré	to go back in
sortir	sorti	to go out, exit
arriver	arrivé	to arrive
rester	resté	to stay
partir	parti	to leave
tomber	tombé	to fall
passer	passé	to go through (a place)
retourner	retourné	to go back, return
naître	né	to be born
mourir	mort	to die
monter	monté	to go up, climb
descendre	descendu	to go down (downstairs), climb down

Example: je suis venu(e), je suis rentré(e), je suis sorti(e), je suis arrivé(e), je suis tombé(e), je suis parti(e).

3.

Do you know these important action words with their past participles:

devoir – j'ai **dû**

vivre – j'ai **vécu**

connaître – j'ai **connu**

boire – j'ai **bu**

croire – j'ai **cru**

lire – j'ai **lu**

rire – j'ai **ri**

venir – je suis **venu(e)**

devenir – je suis **devenu(e)**

4.

Do you know the meaning of at least 2 x 7 words of the following word cloud?



Word cloud 2.5 – Action words

5.

Are you familiar with **jamais**, **rien**, **personne** and **plus**? Take a second look:

ne	not
ne .. jamais	never / ever
ne .. rien	nothing / anything
ne .. personne	nobody / anybody
ne .. plus	no more / anymore
ne .. plus jamais	never again / ever again
ne .. plus rien	nothing again / anything again
ne .. plus personne	nobody again / anybody again
ne .. que*	only

6.

Can you recite the surprising series of French numbers from 70 to 79? And do you know the meaning of **maintenant**, **peut-être**, **aussi**, **déjà**, **ensuite**, **tôt**, **tard**, **partout**, **vite**, **assez**, **très**, **trop**, **encore**?

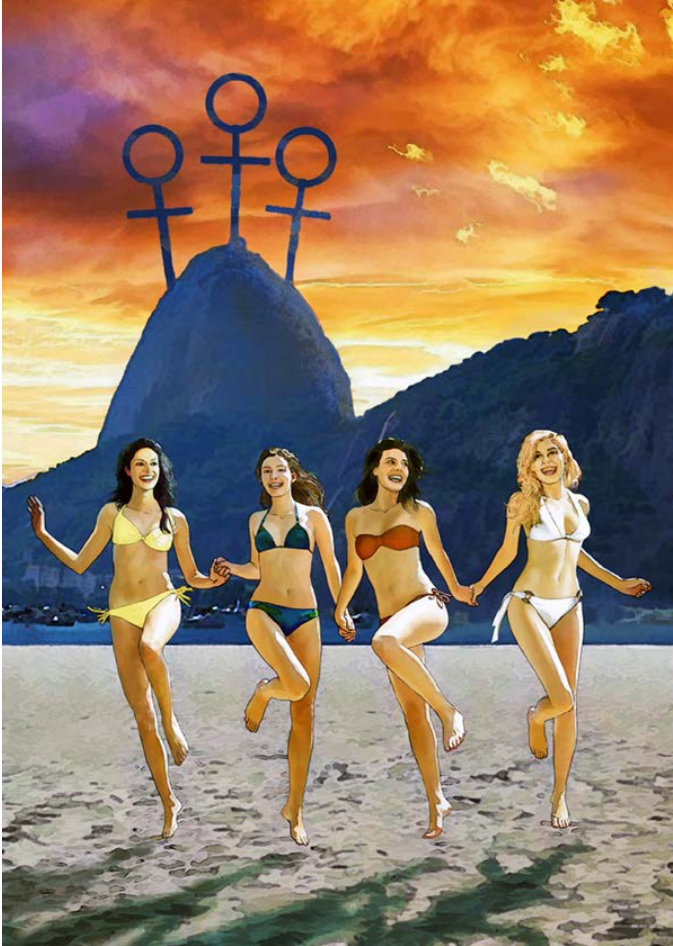
Well then, you have been promoted to Level 3! You know 30 out of 100 key action word sextets.

Outlook

Read the **être** table again (page 179). You'll appreciate the now familiar layout and remember that the tables with these 'fully-dressed' action words are the cornerstone of *GigaFrench*.

In Level 3, finally, comes the third most important French word, **caresser** *to pet/caress* (a Group 1 action word), with people petting animals and caressing each other. You'll also find more nouns, adjectives, jokers and pronouns – as always, we'll present you with the most frequent French words.

3 Abortion



Copyright © 2016 N. Allan – Rio de Janeiro

{ GigaFrench.com/level03 }

Avortement | Pourquoi

l'avortement légal n'existe-t-il pas au Nicaragua, au Chili et à Malte ? Pourquoi y a-t-il des pays où une femme ne peut avorter sans le consentement de son mari ? Et pourquoi y a-t-il d'autres pays encore où l'abomination d'un viol « ne compte pas » et n'est pas une raison suffisante pour avorter légalement? (Voir carte détaillée sur hiv.net/1p7.)

Le chemin de la liberté est-il si difficile ? Pourquoi nier l'évidence : les femmes du monde entier et de tous les temps ont subi des grossesses non désirées et se sont retrouvées contraintes à l'avortement. Elles le faisaient hier, elles le font aujourd'hui, et elles continueront demain, partout, dans toutes les sociétés, sous toutes les religions, y compris dans les pays où l'avortement est illégal. Beaucoup d'entre elles en sont mortes et d'autres en mourront.

Qui en est responsable ? Les hommes, d'incorrigibles machistes qui gouvernent ces pays, soutenus par les religieux de tout poil ? Ou bien les mères, grand-mères et belles-mères garantes, porteuses et prosélytes de 'valeurs' archaïques ?

Why doesn't legal abortion exist in Nicaragua, Chile and Malta? Why are there countries where a woman cannot abort without the consent of her husband? And why are there still other countries where the abomination of rape "does not count" and is not a sufficient reason for aborting legally? (See detailed map on hiv.net/1p7.)

Is the path of freedom so difficult? Why deny the obvious: women of the entire world and of all times have experienced unwanted pregnancies and found themselves forced to abortion. They did so yesterday, they do it today and will continue tomorrow, everywhere, in all societies, under all religions, even in countries where abortion is illegal. Many of them have died and more will die.

Who is responsible? The men (or males?), incorrigible machos governing these countries, supported by the religious of all kinds? Or the mothers, grandmothers and mothers-in-law, guarantors, carriers and

En tout cas, trop c'est trop, il y en a marre !

Reprenons depuis le début : Qui porte les enfants pendant neuf mois ? Qui accouche? Qui les allaite et les protège pendant les années tendres de leur vie ? Et les hommes, dans tout cela ? Un spermatozoïde ! Quatre milliards d'années d'évolution, certes, mais 5 minutes de travail pour le mâle. Nom de Dieu ! Nous sommes au 21ème siècle !

Tous les ans, plus de 40 millions de femmes avortent, dont la moitié dans des conditions illégales et dangereuses. L'Organisation Mondiale de la Santé (OMS) estime que plus de 40 000 d'entre elles meurent d'hémorragies, d'infections et des effets toxiques des substances utilisées pour provoquer l'avortement. La vie de ces femmes n'est-elle pas plus importante que la vie avortée d'un fœtus ?

proselytes of archaic 'values'? Anyway, too much is too much, we're fed up!

Let's take it from the beginning: Who bears children for nine months? Who gives birth? Who breastfeeds and protects them during the tender years of life? And men, in all this? One sperm! (or: spermatozoon?) Four billion years of evolution, certainly, but 5 minutes of work for the buck (or: male?). Bloody hell! We are in the 21st century!

Every year, more than 40 million women have abortions, half in illegal and dangerous conditions. The World Health Organization (WHO) estimates that more than 40,000 of them die of haemorrhages, infections and toxic effects of substances used to cause abortion. Aren't the lives of these women more important than the aborted life of a foetus?

Prêtres, politiciens et lobbyistes anti-avortement de toutes les religions, écoutez : au jugement dernier vous répondrez de ces 40 000 mortes. Au nom de la mère, de la fille et de la Sainte Vierge, vous êtes des assassins !

Clergymen, politicians and anti-abortion lobbyists off all religions, listen: at the last judgment you will answer for these 40,000 deaths. In the name of the mother, and the daughter, and of the Holy Virgin: you are murderers!

Words

{AUDIO}

un avortement	abortion	la liberté	liberty
légal	legal	difficile	difficult
le Nicaragua	Nicaragua	nier	to negate
le Chili	Chile	une évidence	evidence
le pays	country	entier	whole, entire
où	where	le temps	time, weather
la femme	woman	de tous les	of all times
avorter	to abort	temps	
elle ne peut	she cannot	subir	to endure, to be
le	consent		subjected to
consentement		la grossesse	pregnancy
le mari	husband	désirer	to want, to desire
d'autres pays	still other	non désiré	unwanted
encore	countries	se retrouver	to find yourself
abomination <i>f.</i>	abomination	contraint à	forced to
le viol	rape	elles le faisaient	they did it
compter	to count		
la raison	reason	hier	yesterday
suffisant	sufficient	elles le font	they do it
légalement	legally	aujourd'hui	today
voir	to see	elles	they'll continue
la carte	map	continueront	
détaillé	detailed		
le chemin	way, path		

demain	tomorrow	garant, -e	guarantor
partout	everywhere	porteur, -se	supporting
toutes les sociétés	all societies	prosélyte	proselyte
sous	under	la valeur	value
toutes les religions	all religions	archaïque	archaic
y compris	including	en tout cas	anyway, in any case
illégal	illegal	trop	too
beaucoup	many	trop c'est trop	too much is too much
entre	among, between	il y en a marre	we're fed up
beaucoup d'entre elles	many of them	reprendre	here: to start again
elles en sont mortes	they died of it	depuis	since
d'autres	others	le début	beginning
elles mourront qui ?	they will die who?	porter	to bear, to carry
en	here: for that	les enfants	children
responsable	responsible	neuf	9
incorrigeable	incorrigeable, incurable	le mois	month
le machiste	macho	accoucher	to give birth
gouverner	to govern	allaiter	to breast feed
soutenir	to support	protéger	to protect
soutenu par le religieux	supported by religious, clergyman, priest, etc.	tendre	tender, soft
le poil	hair, fur	la vie	life
de tout poil	of all kinds	de leur vie	of their life
ou bien	or else	dans tout cela	in all this
la mère	mother	le	sperm
la grand-mère	grandmother	le spermatozoïde	
la belle-mère	mother-in-law	quatre	4
		le milliard	billion
		évolution <i>f.</i>	evolution
		certes	of course, certainly
		le travail	work
		5 minutes de travail	5 minutes of work
		le mâle	male

Nom de Dieu !	Bloody hell!	la substance	substance
le siècle	century	utiliser	to use, to employ
nous sommes au 21 ^{ème} (vingt- et-unième) siècle	we are in the 21 st century	provoquer	to cause, to bring about
tous les ans	every year	la vie	life
plus de	more than	important, -e	important
quarante millions	40 million	plus important que	more important than
dont	of whom	le foetus	foetus
		le prêtre	priest
		le politicien	politician
la moitié	half	le lobbyiste	lobbyist
la condition	condition	la religion	religion
dangereux, -se	dangerous	écouter	to listen
une organisation	organisation	écoutez !	listen!
mondial, -e	global, worldwide	le jugement	judgement
la santé	health	le jugement dernier	Last Judgement
OMS	WHO	répondre de	to be accountable for
estimer	to estimate		
une hémorragie	haemorrhage	au nom de	in the name of
une infection	infection	la fille	daughter
un effet	effect, result	saint	holy
toxique	toxic	la Sainte Vierge	Holy Virgin
		un assassin	murderer

hear each portion of each audio file 100 times. Then will come the time when you'll understand, for the first time and distinctly, every single word of the MP3 audio file you are listening to. You'll have conquered an "island of total understanding".

The 8 audio files of the current *GigaFrench* edition total about 20 minutes of recording. Listening to them 100 times requires about 30 hours. A perfect understanding – word for word! – of these 8 pieces with more than 2,600 words is just around the corner of your life. You can do it in less than two months! Go for it!

3.2 Preview

If your main interest is learning contemporary vocabulary, memorize all words (100%) and go straight ahead to *Junk Food* on page 305.

For a more thorough knowledge of French, please continue below. The highlights of Level 3 are

- the detailed description of **faire** *to make/to do*;
- the intimate knowledge of the third most important French word, **caresser** *to caress, to pet*;
- possessive adjectives;
- and, finally, your last big intellectual challenge of French grammar: POPs, **personal object pronouns**.

As always, make extensive use of the audio files and listen to them until you can distinguish every single word.

3.3 Master Class (4)

Time is money and learning languages is time-consuming. One way of losing your precious time-money is having the wrong teachers. Let's first see who they are and find out later

which services the ideal teacher should provide today, in the teens and twenties of the 21st century.

Your teacher should in no case be ‘monoglot’ who speaks only her own language – French – and who never went through the rough process of mastering another language. In front of a ‘moniglot’ teacher a series of questions will come into your mind: Does she know what it means to absorb 5,000 to 10,000 words? Can she imagine how it is to memorize 20 to 50 new words every day? Does she have the faintest idea of how demanding it is to penetrate the dense thicket of high-speed human speech? Does she presage the thrill of discovering a new language? In summary, does she have an appropriate comprehension of the complications and implications of language learning? Probably not.

So if your language classes in Paris, Lyon, Marseille, or Montpellier are meant to be more than meeting and mingling opportunities with people from all over the world, double-check that your teacher is a polyglot – or would you want to take sex lessons from Catholic nuns?*

Find more information about teachers in Chapter 4 of *The Word Brain*, page 41ff. Download the free 81-page PDF from www.TheWordBrain.com.

* Comment from our copy editor: “They might know more than you think, Marie!”

I. Action Words

As some action words are more important than others, at the beginning of each level we’ll present one of them with the full picture of simple tenses. Let’s start with **faire** *to make/to do*:

3.4 Faire

{AUDIO}

Infinitif	faire to do, to make
Participe passé	fait
Participe présent	faisant
Impératif	fais faisons faites

	Présent <i>Present: I do</i>	Imparfait <i>Imperfect: I did, I used to do</i>	Passé simple <i>I did</i>
je	fais	faisais	fis
tu	fais	faisais	fis
il/elle	fait	faisait	fit
nous	faisons	faisions	fîmes
vous	faites	faisiez	fîtes
ils/elles	font	faisaient	firent

	Futur <i>Future: I will do</i>	Conditionnel prés. <i>Present conditional: I would do</i>
je	ferai	ferais
tu	feras	ferais
il/elle	fera	ferait
nous	ferons	ferions
vous	feriez	feriez
ils/elles	feront	feraient

	Subjonctif présent <i>Pres. subjunctive that I do</i>	Subjonctif imparfait <i>Imperfect subjunctive that I did</i>
que je	fasse	fisse
que tu	fasses	fisses
qu'il/elle	fasse	fit
que nous	fassions	fissions
que vous	fassiez	fissiez
qu'ils/elles	fassent	fissent



La Martinique | © Copyright: Marie de France

The 30 words in the five highlighted boxes present minor challenges:

1. The **présent** is irregular and requires attention.
2. The **imparfait stem** is easily derived from the 1st person plural ‘nous faisons’.
3. The stem of the **futur** is **fer-**. Just add the forever identical endings of the **futur** (–ai, –as, –a | –ons, –ez, –ont) and the **conditionnel présent** (–ais, –ais, –ait | –ions, –iez, –aient) to get the corresponding tenses.
4. The stem of the **subjonctif présent** is **fass-**.
 - a. The endings are regular: –e, –es, –e | –ions, –iez, –ent.
 - b. The pronunciation of the singular forms and the 3rd person plural (**fasse**, **fasses**, **fasse**, **fassent**) is identical: [fas].

Remember the composed tenses of **faire** from page 94.

Important information

In the coming levels, you'll find many more action word tables. The 'default mode' of action words is the so-called **indicatif**, which expresses facts of life that really happened, are happening right now or will be happening in the future; as the **indicatif** is the default mode, we don't specify it and simply say **présent**, **imparfait** and **futur**.

The **indicatif** is also called *mood*. Other *moods* are 1) the **conditionnel** (*conditional*), 2) the **subjonctif** (*subjunctive*), and 3) the **impératif** (*imperative*).

Finally, there are three *indefinite moods* which do not indicate the person: **infinitif** (*infinitive*), **participe** (*participle*) and **gérondif** (*gerund*).

Does that sound confusing? Indeed it is, so come back later! For now, just remember that there is a **subjonctif** which you'll use to express **doubts, thoughts, wishes, beliefs, and worries**.

3.4.1 Expressions with faire (2)

{AUDIO} French uses **faire** in every conceivable combination. In Level 1 (page 97), you have seen a few, which described love, sport, and housework. Here are some more:

faire des études	to study
faire médecine	to study medicine
faire droit	to study law
faire la fête	to party
faire du ski	to go skiing
faire du tennis	to play tennis
faire du golf	to golf
faire du jogging	to go jogging
faire de la planche à voile	to go windsurfing

faire de l'équitation	to ride horseback
faire une remarque	to make a comment
faire des achats	to make purchases
faire du camping	to go camping
faire un pique-nique	to go on a picnic
faire du feu	to make a fire
faire un gâteau	to bake a cake
faire bouillir	to boil
faire mal à quelqu'un	to hurt someone
faire une faute	to make a mistake
faire pleurer quelqu'un	to make someone cry
faire les valises	to pack one's bag
faire de la moto	to ride a motorcycle
faire un voyage	to take a trip

3.5 Subjonctif

Let's introduce the **subjonctif présent**. Generally speaking, you'll use the **subjonctif** after action words (or expressions like 'il est préférable que'), which express **will/wanting, doubt, emotion, possibility, necessity, or judgment**. We'll go into the details later. Look at only one sentence:

Il faut que tu fasses ton lit.

You must make your bed.

[literally: It is imperative that you make your bed.]

As **il faut** expresses a necessity, the second part of the sentence (introduced by **que**) cannot use the standard **présent** (tu ~~fais~~); instead, it must use the **subjonctif présent**: tu **fasses**.

Il faut

You must

Main clause:
Necessity

que

Conjunction,
introducing the
dependent clause

tu fasses ton lit.

make your bed.

Dependent clause:
Use the subjonctif

We'll present more expressions requiring the **subjunctif** at the beginning of each new level.

3.6 Action words, Group 1: Petting

{AUDIO} **Petting** covers a broad range of sexual behaviors, including deep kissing and sexual touching of your partner. Part of petting is **caressing**. Sexual touching is best translated with **caresser**. Note that Group 1 action words end in **-er**.

Le garçon caresse le chat.	The boy pets the cat.
La fille caresse le chien.	The girl pets the dog.
Le garçon caresse la fille.	The boy caresses the girl.
La fille caresse le garçon.	The girl caresses the boy.
Ils se caressent.	They caress each other.

As in Level 1 and 2, please start with the first four sextets of **caresser**. Listen to the audio and learn the following sequences. If you are new to French, memorize the first two sextets, if you learned French before, memorize them all. Burn the 24 words into your brain.

	Présent	Imparfait
je	caresse	caressais
tu	caresses	caressais
il/elle	caresse	caressait
nous	caressons	caressions
vous	caressez	caressiez
ils/elles	caressent	caressaient

	Futur	Conditionnel prés.
je	caresserai	caresserais
tu	caresseras	caresserais
il/elle	caressera	caresserait
nous	caresserons	caresserions
vous	caresserez	caresseriez
ils/elles	caresseront	caresseraient

Being able to express **caresser** in the **présent**, **imparfait**, **futur** and **conditionnel présent** is clearly a major coup in life. (Preview the full picture on page 262). All you need are 24 endings. Most of them are identical to those you used with **avoir** (see page 86) and **être** (page 178).

3.6.1 Présent

Singular

je	caress e	I	caress
tu	caress es	you	caress
il/elle	caress e	he/she	caresses

Plural

nous	caress ons	we	caress
vous	caress ez	you	caress
ils/elles	caress ent	they	caress

The **présent present tense** is new. Here's the recipe: cut **-er** from the **infinitif caresser** and get the stem **caress-**; then add **-e, -es, -e | -ons, -ez, -ent**.

While reading and listening to **caresser** you'll establish the following rules:

1. The 1st person singular (je caress**e**) and the 3rd person singular (il/elle caress**e**) are identical.

2. The pronunciation of the three singular forms (caress**e**–caress**es**–caress**e**) and the 3rd person plural form (caress**ent**) is identical [kaʁɛs].
3. The final **–ez** of the 2nd person plural form (caress**ez**) has the same pronunciation as the infinitive (**caresser**) and the past participle (**caressé**) [kaʁɛse].

The **présent** is typically used

- to describe the Here and Now: **je t'aime** *I love you*, **je t'adore** *I adore you*, **tu me rends fou/folle** *you're driving me mad*, **je ne peux pas vivre sans toi** *I cannot live without you*
- to conduct discussions about life in general: **L'amour, c'est..** *Love is..*, **La jalousie n'est pas..** *Jealousy is not..*, **Pourquoi es-tu toujours..** *Why are you always..*

3.6.2 Imparfait

Let's continue with the **imparfait** and express caressing in the past. To get the imperfect stem

- Take the 1st person plural of the **présent**: nous caress**ons**
The imperfect stem of virtually all action words – both regular and irregular – is formed in this way. An important exception: The imperfect stem of **être** is **ét–**: **j'étais** – **tu étais** – **il/elle était**, etc. [see page 178].
- Drop the **–ons** ending and get the *imperfect stem*: caress–
- Add the imperfect endings: je caress**ais**, tu caress**ais**, il/elle caress**ait**, etc.

Singular

je	caress ais	I	caressed
tu	caress ais	you	caressed
il/elle	caress ait	he/she	caressed

Plural

nous	caress ions	we	caressed
vous	caress iez	you	caressed
ils/elles	caress aient	they	caressed

While reading and listening to the **imparfait** of **caresser** you'll remember that

1. The 1st person singular (je caress**ais**) and the 2nd person singular (tu caress**ais**) are identical.
2. The pronunciation of the three singular forms (caress**ais**–caress**ais**–caress**ait**) and the 3rd person plural form (caress**aient**) is identical [kæʁɛsɛ].

3.6.3 Futur

Now say that you'll do some caressing in the future (*I will caress*). Take the **Futur** endings (**-ai, -as, -a | -ons, -ez, -ont**) so familiar from *j'aurai – tu auras – il/elle aura | nous aurons – vous aurez – ils/elles auront*; *I, you, he/she will have, etc.*) and attach them to the infinitive of **caresser**:

Singular

je	caresser ai	I will	caress
tu	caresser as	you will	caress
il/elle	caresser a	he/she will	caress

Plural

nous	caresser ons	we will	caress
vous	caresser ez	you will	caress
ils/elles	caresser ont	they will	caress

While reading and listening to the **futur** of **caresser** you'll see again that

1. The 1st person singular (je caresser**ai**) and the 2nd person plural (vous caresser**ez**) sound identical [kæʁɛsɛ].
2. The 2nd person singular (tu caresser**as**) and the 3rd person singular (il/elle caresser**a**) sound identical [kæʁɛsɑ].
3. The 1st person plural (nous caresser**ons**) and the 3rd person plural (ils/elles caresser**ont**) sound identical [kæʁɛsɔ̃].

Remember: The **futur** endings are identical for all French action words!

3.6.4 Conditionnel présent

Finally, try some hypothetical caressing (*I would caress*) and say that **peut-être** *maybe* you might caress in the future. Take the endings of the **conditionnel présent** –**ais, -ais, -ait** | **-ions, -iez, –aient** (which you have met in *j'aurais – tu aurais – il/elle aurait* | *nous aurions – vous auriez – ils/elles auraient*; *I, you, he/she would have, etc.*) and attach them to the infinitive of **caresser**:

Singular

je	caresser ais	I would	caress
tu	caresser ais	you would	caress
il/elle	caresser ait	he/she would	caress

Plural

nous	caresser ions	we would	caress
vous	caresser iez	you would	caress
ils/elles	caresser aient	they would	caress

While reading and listening to the **conditionnel présent** of **caresser** you'll find that the pronunciation of the three singular forms (caresser**ais**–caresser**ais**–caresser**ait**) and the 3rd plural form (caresser**aient**) is identical [kaʁɛsɛ].

3.6.5 Subjonctif présent

{AUDIO}

Singular

que je	caress e	that I	caress
que tu	caress es	that you	caress
que il/elle	caress e	that he/she	caress

Plural

que nous	caress ions	that we	caress
que vous	caress iez	that you	caress
que ils/elles	caress ent	that they	caress

The **subjonctif présent** of Group 1 actions words is a chimaera because it mixes up endings of the **présent** and – only for the 1st and 2nd person plural – the **imparfait**.

As in the **présent**, you'll observe that

1. The endings of the 1st person singular (je caress**e**) and the 3rd person singular (il/elle caress**e**) are identical.
2. The three singular forms (caress**e**–caress**es**–caress**e**) and the 3rd person plural form (caress**ent**) sound identical [kaʁɛs].

To obtain the stem of the **subjonctif présent**

- Take the 3rd person plural of the **présent**: ils caress**ent**
- Drop the **–ent** ending and obtain caress–

- Add the present subjunctive endings **–e, –es –e | –ions, –iez, –ent** (que je caresse, que tu caresses, qu’il/elle caresse, etc.)

The **subjunctif présent** of virtually all action words – both regular and irregular – is formed like this. Important exceptions are **faire** to do/make, **savoir** to know, **pouvoir** to be able to, can, **aller** to go and **vouloir** to want.

As the endings of the **subjunctif présent** are always the same, all you need to do is learn the stems: **fass–, sach–, puiss–**:

	faire <i>Subjonctif présent:</i> <i>that I do, etc.</i>	savoir <i>Subjonctif présent:</i> <i>that I know, etc.</i>	pouvoir <i>Subjonctif présent:</i> <i>that I am able to, etc.</i>
que je	fass e	sach e	puiss e
que tu	fass es	sach es	puiss es
qu’il/elle	fass e	sach e	puiss e
que nous	fass ions	sach ions	puiss ions
que vous	fass iez	sach iez	puiss iez
qu’ils/elles	fass ent	sach ent	puiss ent

The forms ending in red have all the same pronunciation: [fas], [saʃ], [pʁis].

The **subjunctif présent** of **aller** (stem: **aill–**) and **vouloir** (stem: **veuill–**) has two exceptions: the 1st and 2nd persons plural use the standard stem (all– and voul–):

	aller <i>Subjonctif présent:</i> <i>that I go, etc.</i>	vouloir <i>Subjonctif présent:</i> <i>that I want, etc.</i>
que j'/je	aille	veuille
que tu	ailes	veuilles
qu'il/elle	aille	veuille
que nous	allions	voulions
que vous	alliez	vouliez
qu'ils/elles	aillent	veillent

Again, the forms ending in red have the same pronunciation [aj], [vœj].

Finally, two verbs are completely irregular, but you have already seen them:

	avoir <i>Subjonctif présent:</i> <i>that I have, etc.</i>	être <i>Subjonctif présent:</i> <i>that I am, etc.</i>
que j'/je	aie	sois
que tu	aies	sois
qu'il/elle	ait	soit
que nous	ayons	soyons
que vous	ayez	soyez
qu'ils/elles	aient	soient

While listening to the audio, you'll hear that the pronunciation of the three singular forms and the 3rd plural form is identical:

1. **avoir:** aie–aies–ait | aient [ɛ]
2. **être:** sois–sois–soit | soient [swa]



Word cloud 3.2 – Relative importance of 7 irregular action words in the **subjunctif présent** tense: ait (avoir), soit (être) aille (aller), fasse (faire), puisse (pouvoir), sache (savoir), veuille (vouloir).

3.6.6 Passé simple

{AUDIO} The **passé simple** is the literary equivalent of the **passé composé**. It is almost exclusively used in literature and historical accounts. The difference between the two tenses is tenuous. While actions expressed with the **passé simple** are finished, with a definite beginning and an end, the **passé composé** may still be connected to the present or may even still be happening. Don't get a headache over these finesses. When writing a historical account, use the **passé simple** while in spoken language and in standard journalism, use the **passé composé**. Just keep in mind to never mix both tenses in the same text because that is blasphemously bad style 😊!

Singular

je	caress ai	I	caressed
tu	caress as	you	caressed
il/elle	caress a	he/she	caressed

Plural

nous	caress âmes	we	caressed
vous	caress âtes	you	caressed
ils/elles	caress èrent	they	caressed

While reading and listening to the **passé simple** of **caresser** you'll find that

1. The 2nd person singular (tu caress**as**) and the 3rd person singular (il/elle caress**a**) sound identical [kaʁesa].
2. The **-ai** of the 1st singular form (caress**ai**) is like the brilliant final **-é** of the *infinitive* (**caresser**), the *past participle* (**caressé**) and the 2nd form plural of the **présent** (**caressez**) [kaʁese].
3. The first and second person plural have an **â** at the end.

3.6.7 Subjonctif imparfait

{AUDIO} Chances are excellent that it will take quite a bit of time before you will ever come across any of the 6 following forms of **caresser**. The **subjonctif imparfait** is almost extinct.

Remember that after main clauses, which express necessity such as **il faut que** *it is necessary to*, the action word of the subordinate clause must use a tense of the **subjonctif**, par example:

Main clause:	Subordinate clause:
Présent	Subjonctif présent
Il faut	que je le fasse . I have to do it.

As **il faut** in the main clause is in the **présent**, **aller** in the subordinate clause has to be in the **subjonctif présent**.

When the tense of the main clause is the **imparfait** ('il fallait'), the action word in the subordinate clause should be in the **subjonctif imparfait**, for example:

Main clause:	Subordinate clause:
Imparfait	Subjonctif imparfait
Il fallait	que je le fisse . I had to do it.

I say 'should be' because that's exactly what **does not** happen, because the **subjonctif imparfait** is going extinct. Today, everyone would say or write **Il fallait que je le fasse**.

Main clause:	Subordinate clause:
Imparfait	Subjonctif présent
Il fallait	que je le fasse . I had to do it.

While other Romance languages like Spanish, Portuguese and Italian continue to use the **subjonctif imparfait**, France has almost completely abolished it. Ask a French person if she can recite 'que je caressasse – que tu caressasses – qu'il/elle caressât | que nous caressassions – que vous caressassiez – qu'ils/elles caressassent' and she'll probably tell you that she can't. Although the **subjonctif imparfait** is still being taught to 14-year-olds, everyone seems to be eager to forget. Fortunately, almost all French remember at least this one from school:

Il eût fallu que je susse.
I should have known.

or even better

Il eût fallu que je le susse.

I should have known it.

We'll explain later why these sentences are considered obscenely ambiguous. In the meantime, you may wish to ask close friends about potential double entendres, but in no case should you do so at a formal reception. Either you'll provoke benevolent hilarity and be the star of the event – with people infallibly recalling you years later – or you'll never be invited again.



{Second Round} To say the least, the **subjunctif imparfait** is intriguing, so let's take a quick look at it. In 17 novels by Émile Zola (more than 8000 pages, around 2,300,000 words; see details on page xxx), you would find only 3200 occurrences. 90% of these are 3rd person singular (for example, **caressât**), and among the rest, almost all are 3rd person plural (for example, **caressassent**). The total number of the four 1st and 2nd persons singular and plural is... 8! In other words, the odds are nil that you'll ever be confronted with **je caressasse, tu caressasse, nous caressassions, vous caressassiez** – at least not linguistically.

Singular

que je	caressasse	that I	caressed
que tu	caressasses	that you	caressed
que il/elle	caressât	that he/she	caressed

Plural

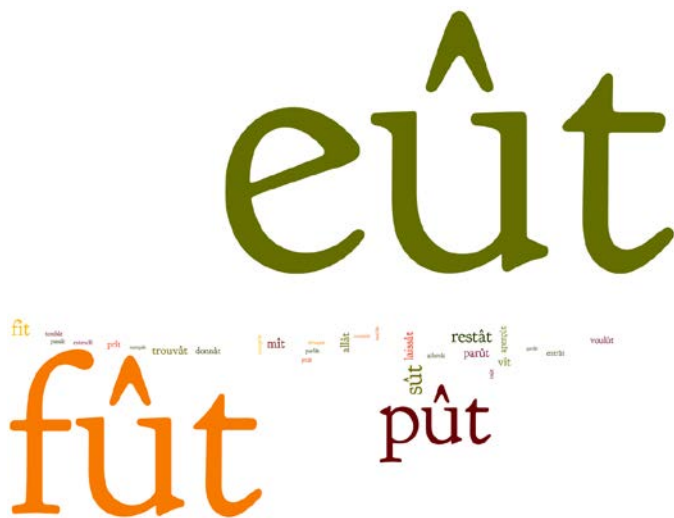
que nous	caressassions	that we	caressed
que vous	caressassiez	that you	caressed
que ils/elles	caressassent	that they	caressed

While reading and listening to the **subjunctif imparfait** of **caresser** you'll find that

1. The 1st and 2nd person singular (que je caressasse, que tu caressasses) and the 3rd person plural (qu'ils/elles caressassent) sound identical [kæʁɛsas].
2. The 3rd person singular has a circumflexed vowel: â (or î or û for other action words).

As we said, 9 out of 10 **subjunctif imparfait** forms you will ever encounter are third-person singular. Of these, 40% were either **eût** (avoir) or **fût** (être) in Zola's novels. Another 10% were **pût** (pouvoir), **sût** (savoir), **fît** (faire) and **restât** (rester).

Take a quick look at the following word cloud and table. Although you won't need to learn the **subjunctif imparfait** forms – not even the 3rd person singular – you'll soon need to learn the **passé simple** forms shown in the second column (find the in-depth discussion of the **passé simple** on page xxx). Take a quick look today just to know that these forms exist.



Word cloud 3.3 – The innocent **Subjonctif imparfait**

{AUDIO} From the **passé simple** to the **subjonctif imparfait**, it is a tiny step: just add a circumflex accent (u → **û**, i → **î**; for example: il eut → qu'il **eût**, il fut → qu'il **fût**) and an additional **-t** for Group 1 action words (a → **ât**; for example il resta → qu'il **restât**, il alla → qu'il **allât**).

Infinitive	Passé simple		Subjonctif imparfait	n*	%
avoir	il eut	he had	qu'il eût	703	23.90
être	il fut	he was	qu'il fût	433	14.72
pouvoir	il put	he could	qu'il pût	163	5.54
savoir	il sut	he knew, was familiar with	qu'il sût	50	1.70
faire	il fit	he did	qu'il fit	42	1.43
rester	il resta	he remained	qu'il restât	36	1.22
mettre	il mit	he put	qu'il mît	28	0.95
aller	il alla	he went	qu'il allât	26	0.88
trouver	il trouva	he found	qu'il trouvât	25	0.85
voir	il vit	he saw	qu'il vît	24	0.82
paraître	il parut	he seemed	qu'il parût	24	0.82
laisser	il laissa	he left	qu'il laissât	24	0.82
apercevoir	il aperçut	he noticed	qu'il aperçût	19	0.65
prendre	il prit	he took	qu'il prît	19	0.65
donner	il donna	he gave	qu'il donnât	18	0.61
vouloir	il voulut	he wanted	qu'il voulût	18	0.61
entrer	il entra	he entered	qu'il entrât	17	0.58
achever	il acheva	he finished	qu'il achevât	14	0.48
oser	il osa	he dared	qu'il osât	14	0.48
parler	il parla	he talked	qu'il parlât	14	0.48
passer	il passa	he passed	qu'il passât	13	0.44
entendre	il entendit	he heard	qu'il entendît	13	0.44
connaître	il connut	he knew, was acquainted with	qu'il connût	12	0.41
tomber	il tomba	he fell	qu'il tombât	12	0.41
manger	il mangea	he ate	qu'il mangeât	12	0.41
jeter	il jeta	he threw	qu'il jetât	12	0.41
garder	il garda	he kept	qu'il gardât	11	0.37
déranger	il déranger	he disturbed	qu'il dérangerât	11	0.37
toucher	il toucha	he touched	qu'il touchât	10	0.34
manquer	il manqua	he was missing	qu'il manquât	10	0.34

* Occurrence in 17 novels by Émile Zola

3.6.8 24 Endings

Summary

The endings of 6 **single tenses** for the vast Group 1 of French action words (there are more than 6000 of them in a 45,000-word dictionary!) are compressible. The endings of two tenses – **présent** and **subjonctif présent** – are almost identical (see below, series 1) and the endings of another two tenses – **imparfait** and **conditionnel présent** – ARE identical (2). Add the **futur** (3) and the **passé simple** (4) and you see that you can boil down a complete French action word to a set of 24 endings:

1. **Présent + Subjonctif présent**
–e, –es, –e | – (i)ons, – (i)ez, –ont
2. **Imparfait + Conditionnel présent**
–ais, –ais, –ait | –ions, –iez, –aient
3. **Futur**
–ai, –as, –a | –ont, –ez, –ont
4. **Passé simple**
–ai, –as, –a | –âmes, –âtes, –èrent

Look at them for a minute – then come back tomorrow, the day after tomorrow and so on. This endings overview is one of the most precious keys to French grammar. You'll love it!

3.6.9 Caresser: simple tenses

{AUDIO}

Infinitif	caresser <i>to caress</i>
Participe passé	caressé
Participe présent	caessant
Impératif	caresse caressons caressez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	caresse	caressais	caressai
tu	caresses	caressais	caressas
il/elle	caresse	caressait	caressa
nous	caressons	caressions	caressâmes
vous	caressez	caressiez	caressâtes
ils/elles	caressent	caressaient	caressèrent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	caresserai	caresserais
tu	caresseras	caresserais
il/elle	caressera	caresserait
nous	caresserons	caresserions
vous	caresserez	caresseriez
ils/elles	caresseront	caresseraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	caresse	caressasse
que tu	caresses	caressasses
qu'il/elle	caresse	caressât
que nous	caressions	caressassions
que vous	caressiez	caressassiez
qu'ils/elles	caressent	caressassent

3.6.10 Caresser: composed tenses

{AUDIO}	Passé composé <i>Perfect: I (have) caressed</i>	Plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect: I had caressed</i>	Passé antérieur <i>Preterit perfect: I had caressed</i>
j'	ai caressé	avais caressé	eus caressé
tu	as caressé	avais caressé	eus caressé
il/elle	a caressé	avait caressé	eut caressé
nous	avons caressé	avions caressé	eûmes caressé
vous	avez caressé	aviez caressé	eûtes caressé
ils/elles	ont caressé	avaient caressé	eurent caressé

	Futur antérieur <i>Future perfect: I will have caressed</i>	Conditionnel passé <i>Past conditional: I would have caressed</i>
j'	aurai caressé	aurais caressé
tu	auras caressé	aurais caressé
il/elle	aura caressé	aurait caressé
nous	aurons caressé	aurions caressé
vous	aurez caressé	auriez caressé
ils/elles	auront caressé	auraient caressé

	Subjonctif passé <i>Past subjunctive: that I caressed</i>	Subjonctif plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect subjunctive: that I had caressed</i>
que j'	aie caressé	eusse caressé
que tu	aies caressé	eusses caressé
qu'il/elle	ait caressé	eût caressé
que nous	ayons caressé	eussions caressé
que vous	ayez caressé	eussiez caressé
qu'ils/elles	aient caressé	eussent caressé

3.6.11 Most frequent Group 1 action words

{AUDIO} The 10 most frequent action words of Group 1 are

aimer	to love
regarder	to look
penser	to think
parler	to talk, to speak
demander	to ask
laisser	to let
trouver	to find
donner	to give
passer (être)	to pass
arriver (être)	to arrive

Is it surprising to observe that these words, again, are exquisitely fit to describe settings of sex and love? This is France!

3.6.12 Mental acrobatics

Whenever you see and learn the infinitive of an action word such as **caresser** *to caress*, be extremely vigilant. Behind EVERY SINGLE seemingly innocuous **action word infinitive** lies a hidden world of some 40 variants. Please get into the habit of ‘expanding’ action words to a few sextets. Somebody talks about **aimer** *to love*? Think *j’aime – tu aimes – il/elle aime | nous aimons – vous aimez – ils/elles aiment*. A person proposes **caresser** *to caress*? Think *je caresserais – tu caresserais – il/elle caresserait | nous caresserions – vous caresseriez – ils/elles caresseraient*. What sounds terrifying is an extremely efficient exercise – doubly so, because you’ll revise the endings and, on the same occasion, nail the action words into your brain. Do it! Do it! Do it! And become comfortable with French action words in no time!

3.7 Forty-nine action words (3)



{Second Round} Please check the word cloud and the table of the next forty-niners. While the first 98 words (see page 100 and 186) represent roughly 65% of all action words you'll see in your life, this third set represents 8%.



Word cloud 3.4 – Action words 99-147

The percentages in the table indicate the cumulative frequency, including the words of Level 1 and Level 2. Group 3 **participes passé** are shown in blue.

Open www.gigafrench.com/actionwords03 for a quick smartphone check.

{AUDIO}

# Infinitif	Participe passé	Infinitive	Past participle
99 offrir	offert	to offer	offered
100 serrer	serré	to tighten	tightened
101 compter	compté	to count	counted
102 travailler	travaillé	to work	worked
103 remettre	remis	to put back	put back
104 rappeler	rappelé	to call back	called back
105 traverser	traversé	to cross	crossed
66.5%			
106 répéter	répété	to repeat	repeated
107 découvrir	découvert	to discover	discovered
108 manquer	manqué	to be lacking	been lacking
109 fermer	fermé	to close	closed
110 coucher avec	couché avec	to sleep with	slept with
111 approcher	approché	to approach	approached
112 avancer	avancé	to move forward	moved forward
67.9%			
113 toucher	touché	to touch	touched
114 rencontrer	rencontré	to meet	met
115 permettre	permis	to allow	allowed
116 disparaître	disparu	to disappear	disappeared
117 battre	battu	to beat	beaten
118 cacher	caché	to hide	hidden
119 gagner	gagné	to win; earn	won; earned
69.1%			

120	cesser	cessé	to stop	stopped
121	envoyer	envoyé	to send	sent
122	valoir	valu	to cost	cost
123	importer	importé	to import	imported
124	foutre	foutu	to do	done
125	empêcher	empêché	to prevent	prevented
126	tuer	tué	to kill	killed

70.3%

127	frapper	frappé	to hit	hit
128	lancer	lancé	to throw	thrown
129	rouler	roulé	to drive	driven
130	pleurer	pleuré	to cry	cried
131	installer	installé	to place	placed
132	remonter	remonté (être)	to go back up	went back up
133	suffire	suffi	to be enough	been enough

71.4%

134	apporter	apporté	to bring	brought
135	apparaître	apparu (être)	to appear	appeared
136	aider	aidé	to help	helped
137	ressembler	ressemblé	to look like	looked like
138	bouger	bougé	to move	moved
139	parvenir	parvenu (être)	to reach	reached
140	pencher	penché	to tilt	tilted

72.4%

141	oser	osé	to dare	dared
142	préparer	préparé	to prepare	prepared
143	refuser	refusé	to refuse	refused
144	payer	payé	to pay	paid
145	acheter	acheté	to buy	bought
146	exister	existé	to exist	existed
147	accepter	accepté	to accept	accepted

73.4%

3.8 Irregular Future Stems (2)

{AUDIO} The number of irregular future stems is limited.
Let's extend our list.

Infinitive Future

avoir	j' aurai	I will have
être	je serai	I will be
faire	je ferai	I will do
aller	j' irai	I will go
vouloir	je voudrai	I will want
pouvoir	je pourrai	I will be able
voir	je verrai	I will see
revoir	je reverrai	I will see again
venir	je viendrai	I will come
revenir	je reviendrai	I will come back
devenir	je deviendrai	I will become
tenir	je tiendrai	I will hold
obtenir	j' obtiendrai	I will obtain
maintenir	je maintiendrai	I will keep
soutenir	je soutiendrai	I will support
savoir	je saurai	I will know
devoir	je devrai	I will have to
falloir	il faudra	it will be necessary
courir	je courrai	I will run
parcourir	je parcourrai	I will browse,
concurrir	je concurrirai	wander
		I will compete
recevoir	je recevrai	I will receive
pleuvoir	il pleuvra	it will rain
valoir	je vaudrai	I will be worth
mourir	je mourrai	I will die
envoyer	j' enverrai	I will send
acquérir	j' acquerrai	I will buy
conquérir	je conquerrai	I will conquer

3.9 Importance of the Présent

You are now master / mistress of four fully-dressed action words: **avoir** (pages 86 and 102), **être** (178 and 180), **faire** (242 and 94) and **caresser** (262). What seemed brutally labyrinthine in Level 1 is slowly becoming comprehensible.

3.3.9. Caresser: simple tenses

{AUDIO}

Participe passé **caressé**
Participe présent **caressant**
Impératif **caresse / caressez**

Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je caresse	caressais	caressai
tu caresses	caressais	caressas
il/elle caresse	caressait	caressa
nous caressons	caressions	caressâmes
vous caressez	caressiez	caressâtes
ils/elles caressent	caressaient	caressèrent

Futur	Conditionnel présent
je caresserai	caresserais
tu caresseras	caresserais
il/elle caressera	caresserait
nous caresserons	caresserions
vous caresserez	caresseriez
ils/elles caresseront	caresseraient

Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait (extremely rare)
que je caresse	caressasse
que tu caresses	caressasses
qu'il/elle caresse	caressât
que nous caressions	caressassions
que vous caressiez	caressassiez
qu'ils/elles caressent	caressassent

3.3.10. Caresser: composed tenses

{AUDIO}

Passé composé / Perfect / I have caressed / I've caressed	Plus-que-parfait / Plus perfect / I had caressed	Passé antérieur / Pluperfect / I had caressed (only in verbs)
j' ai caressé	avais caressé	avais caressé
tu as caressé	avais caressé	avais caressé
il/elle a caressé	avait caressé	avait caressé
nous avons caressé	avions caressé	avions caressé
vous avez caressé	aviez caressé	aviez caressé
ils/elles ont caressé	avaient caressé	avaient caressé

Futur antérieur / Future perfect / I will have caressed	Conditionnel passé / Past conditional / I would have caressed
j' aurai caressé	aurais caressé
tu auras caressé	aurais caressé
il/elle aura caressé	aurait caressé
nous aurons caressé	aurions caressé
vous auriez caressé	auriez caressé
ils/elles auraient caressé	auraient caressé

Subjonctif passé / Past subjunctive / I had caressed	Subjonctif plus-que-parfait / Past subjunctive / I had caressed (extremely rare)
que j' aie caressé	eusse caressé
que tu aies caressé	eusses caressé
qu'il/elle ait caressé	eût caressé

You have reached a threshold: the big obstacles are gone. From now on, the remaining exploration of French action words will essentially focus on slightly deviant *present tenses* (see the vertical red ellipse) and a few irregular future stems (small horizontal red ellipse). Your action words cruise is reaching calm waters.

3.10 Présent: Ten Action Words (1)

{AUDIO} Let me offer you the present tense of 10 important action words. The investment is well worth it: 7 of them – **aller to go**, **vouloir to want**, **pouvoir can/to be able to**, **dire to say**, **venir to come**, **prendre to take**, **savoir to know** – are among the 50 most frequent French words.

	penser <i>to think</i> <i>I think, etc.</i>	aller <i>to go</i> <i>I go, etc.</i>	
je	pense	vais	I
tu	penses	vas	you
il/elle	pense	va	he/she
nous	pensons	allons	we
vous	pensez	allez	you
ils/elles	pensent	vont	they
Part. passé	pensé	être + allé(e)(s)	
See page		313	

	vouloir <i>to want</i> <i>I want, etc.</i>	pouvoir <i>can</i> <i>I can, etc.</i>	
je	veux	peux	I
tu	veux	peux	you
il/elle	veut	peut	he/she
nous	voulons	pouvons	we
vous	voulez	pouvez	you
ils/elles	veulent	peuvent	they
Part. passé	voulu	pu	
See page	425	474	

	dire <i>to say</i> <i>I say, etc.</i>	lire <i>to read</i> <i>I read, etc.</i>	
je	dis	lis	I
tu	dis	lis	you
il/elle	dit	lit	he/she
nous	disons	lisons	we
vous	dites	lisez	you
ils/elles	disent	lisent	they
Part. passé	dit	lu	
See page	473	530	

	voir <i>to see</i> <i>I see, etc.</i>	savoir <i>to know</i> <i>I know, etc.</i>	
je	vois	sais	I
tu	vois	sais	you
il/elle	voit	sait	he/she
nous	voyons	savons	we
vous	voyez	savez	you
ils/elles	voient	savent	they
Part. passé	pris	su	
See page	494	493	

	venir <i>to come</i> <i>I come, etc.</i>	tenir <i>to hold</i> <i>I hold, etc.</i>	
je	viens	tiens	I
tu	viens	tiens	you
il/elle	vient	tient	he/she
nous	venons	tenons	we
vous	venez	tenez	you
ils/elles	viennent	tiennent	they
Part. passé	être + venu(l)s	tenu	
See page	359	359	

Use **venir** as a template for

revenir (être) *to come back* (je reviens – tu reviens – il/elle revient, etc.)

devenir (être) *to become* (je deviens – tu deviens – il/elle devient, etc.)

se souvenir (être) *to remember* (je me souviens – tu te souviens – il/elle se souvient, etc.)

redevenir (être) *to become again* (je redeviens – tu redeviens – il/elle redevient, etc.)

intervenir (être) *to intervene, to take part*

prévenir (avoir) *to let someone know, inform*

Use **tenir** as a template for

appartenir to *belong* (j'appartiens – tu appartiens – il/elle appartient, etc.)

soutenir to *support* (je soutiens – tu soutiens – il/elle soutient, etc.)

obtenir to *obtain* (j'obtiens – tu obtiens – il/elle obtient, etc.)

retenir to *hold back* (je retiens – tu retiens – il/elle retient, etc.)

3.11 Master Class (5)

Times have changed and language teaching is not what it used to be. High-speed internet has revolutionized our way of life. Consider the traditional six core areas of language teachers – vocabulary, understanding of speech, production of speech, reading, writing, and grammar.

1. Vocabulary training is inherently a lonely job because nobody except yourself can transfer thousands of words into your brain. In what is the most important single task of language learning, teachers can do nothing for you. (See *The Word Brain*, page 15ff. Download the free 81-page PDF from www.TheWordBrain.com.)
2. The second most important task is speech recognition. Over centuries and until less than 15 years ago, language teachers were often the only individuals at hand to produce human speech in other languages. In modern times, human speech is on smartphones, tablets and computers. These devices are supplanting teachers as prime speech sources (See *The Word Brain*, page 21ff.)
3. The impact of teachers on the third, fourth and fifth tasks – speaking, reading, and writing – is equally limited. Writing comes as a bonus of reading, reading as a bonus of word learning, and good pronunciation comes as a bonus of hundreds of hours of listening.
4. Grammar is therefore the only domain where language teachers will continue to play a certain role in the future. As you have seen, grammar consists of a limited number

of rules that tell you how to modify words and how to arrange them in sentences. Fortunately, a big chunk of grammar – action words such as **avoir** *to have*, **être** *to be*, **caresser** *to caress*, **embrasser** *to kiss*, **baiser** *to fuck*, *etc.* – can be outsourced to memory exercises on your smartphone. Grammar *per se* therefore shrinks to a set of about 30 problems to settle.

5. The first round of grammar should provide a rapid overview of the knowledge that is needed to **recognise** the most frequent grammatical structures. (That's what we did in Level 1). Just recognising grammar requires 10 times less training than producing grammar.
6. The most important thing about grammar is to make sure that you **receive grammar lessons in your native language**. Reject all 'monoglot' proposals such as being taught French grammar in French (even worse: ...by a French teacher who speaks nothing else than French). Don't complicate your life! Your native language is by far the best tool for grasping and understanding new concepts.
7. In today's environment, the best role for a language teacher is probably that of a coach. Depending on your previous exposure to your native and subsequent languages, your coach will prepare an individual time schedule for your project; recommend books, podcasts, audio books, and broadcasts; provide the first round of grammar; advise you on how to manage your daily word quota; teach you how to check that new words have arrived in your long-term memory; and demonstrate common pronunciation pitfalls. For the first few weeks, you should plan daily encounters or two or three lessons per week. Thereafter, reduce to weekly encounters. Finally, after the third or fourth month, one or two meetings per month will be sufficient. During the entire course, check the motivating power of your coach. If you

have the feeling that she doesn't motivate you or, worse, wants to make you feel like a donkey, fire her.

Find more information about teachers in Chapter 4 of *The Word Brain*, page 41ff. Download the free 81-page PDF from www.TheWordBrain.com.



Tour Eiffel | © Copyright : Marie de France

II. Grammar

3.12 Stranger vs. Family (2)

Remember from page 90: the English *you* is **tu** only for family members, children or close friends; or when you and the person you are speaking to agree on using *you*. In all other cases – when speaking to 1) a person you don't know or 2) more than one person, family or strangers – you must use **vous** + the 2nd person plural of the action word: **vous avez** *you have*, **vous êtes** *you are*, **vous caressez** *you caress*, **vous aimez** *you love*, **vous faites** *you do*.

In formal situations, you will need to adapt

1. adjectives and
2. past participles associated with **être** (see page 180)

in gender and number to the **real person**.

3.12.1 Adjectives

You are crazy is translated with **vous êtes fou**, **vous êtes folle**, **vous êtes fous**, **vous êtes folles**, depending on the gender and how many are crazy.

	One person	2 or more persons
1) Family and friends; young people	Tu es fou (masc.). Tu es folle (fem.).	Vous êtes fous (masc.). Vous êtes folles (fem.).
2) People you don't know	Vous êtes fous (masc.). Vous êtes folles (fem.).	Vous êtes fous (masc.). Vous êtes folles (fem.).

3.12.2 Past Participles

In the sentence *Have you gone to the movies?*, when using the polite form (addressing people you don't know or who are

much older than you), you'll have to change the ending of the past participle **allé** *gone* according to gender and number of the people you are talking to. As always, use the **ES rule**:

	Masculine	Feminine
Singular	Êtes-vous allé au cinéma ?	Êtes-vous allée au cinéma ?
Plural	Êtes-vous allés au cinéma ?	Êtes-vous allées au cinéma ?

3.13 Possessive adjectives

{AUDIO} So-called 'possessive adjectives' indicate ownership or possession: *my, your, his/her/its | our, your, their*. French is trickier than English because *my* has three translations: **mon** for masculine nouns, for example **mon** *foot*, **ordinateur** *computer*, or **slip** *pants*; **ma** for feminine nouns, for example **ma** *chaussure* *shoe*, **ma** *voiture* *car*, or **ma** *maison* *house*; and **mes** for nouns in the plural, regardless of gender.

3.13.1 Singular

1. Masculine singular: **mon**

mon pied	my foot
mon ordinateur	my computer
mon slip	my pants (which are always singular in French)

2. Feminine singular: **ma**

ma chaussure	my shoe
ma voiture	my car
ma maison	my house

3. Masculine and feminine plural : **mes**

mes pieds	my feet
mes ordinateurs	my computers
mes slips	my pants
mes chaussures	my shoes
mes voitures	my cars
mes maisons	my houses

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular	mon	ma
	Plural	mes	

Your translates to **ton – ta | tes**:

ton pied	your foot
ta chaussure	your shoe
tes slips	your pants

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular	ton	ta
	Plural	tes	

Up to here, things are straightforward, because

- **mon, ma, mes** always translate into *my*
- **ton, ta, tes** always translate into *your*

But now come **son, sa, ses** which translate into *his* and *her*, and things get ticklish:

Whereas in English, the possessive adjectives depends on the **subject** (=owner), in French, the possessive adjectives depend on **the object**.

So if you talk in French about your father's and your mother's car, you would say in both cases **sa voiture** because **voiture** is feminine and what counts in French is the object. In English, you would distinguish between *his car* and *her car*.

More examples:

son ordinateur	his/her computer
son pied	his/her foot
sa voiture	his/her car
sa maison	his/her house
ses slips	his/her pants
ses chaussettes	his/her socks

3.13.2 Plural

The English *our*, *your*, and *their* have two translations each, one for singular possessions (**notre, votre, leur**) and one for plural possessions (**nos, vos, leurs**). Gender doesn't matter.

notre ordinateur	our computer
votre voiture	your car
leur maison	their house
nos ordinateurs	our computers
vos voitures	your cars
leurs maisons	their houses

The complete table:

	Singular		Plural
	Masculine	Feminine	Masc. + Fem.
my	mon	ma	mes
your	ton	ta	tes
his/her/its	son	sa	ses
our	notre		nos
your	votre		vos
their	leur		leurs

3.13.3 Exception

The exception to the rule: as French doesn't like the clash of vowels, **ma**, **ta** and **sa** cannot precede feminine words that start with a vowel or a mute *h*. The solution: use **mon**, **ton** and **son** instead. In the following examples, **affaire**, **aventure** and **angoisse** are all feminine words.

mon affaire	my affair
ton attitude	your attitude
son angoisse	his/her anguish

3.14 Personal pronouns

{AUDIO} Now comes the last big chunk of French grammar: managing the French equivalents of *me*, *you*, *him/her* / *us*, *you*, *them*. We have condensed it into just 7 pages, but they demand a bit of acrobatics. Clench your teeth and go all the way through! You'll probably need to come back to view the full picture, but in a few weeks, personal pronouns will be second nature.

3.14.1 Personal subject pronouns

Find the PSPs, the *personal subject pronouns* (**je–tu–il/elle | nous–vous–ils/elles**) in the second column of the following table. You know them *ad nauseam* from multiple action words sextets.

	PSP*		POP**			
			Weak forms		Stressed forms	
1 st sing.	je/ʃ	<i>I</i>	me	<i>me</i>	moi	<i>me</i>
2 nd sing.	tu	<i>you</i>	te	<i>you</i>	toi	<i>you</i>
3 rd sing.	il	<i>he</i>	le lui – se	<i>him</i>	lui – soi	<i>him</i>
	elle	<i>she</i>	la lui – se	<i>her</i>	elle – soi	<i>her</i>
1 st plural	nous	<i>we</i>	nous	<i>us</i>	nous	<i>us</i>
2 nd plural	vous	<i>you</i>	vous	<i>you</i>	vous	<i>you</i>
3 rd plural	ils <i>m.</i>	<i>they</i>	les leur – se	<i>them</i>	eux	<i>them</i>
	elles <i>f.</i>	<i>they</i>	les leur – se	<i>them</i>	elles	<i>them</i>

* PSP: Personal subject pronouns

** POP: Personal object pronouns; before a vowel or a mute *h*, drop the **-e**:

m', t', l', s'.

Do you remember these two tables from Level 1?

Je te désire. **I** want **you**.

and

Je te résiste. **I** am resisting **you**.

Please check them again before you continue (see page 55).

3.14.2 Personal object pronouns

Weak personal object pronouns can be divided into two classes:

- direct object pronouns
- indirect object pronouns

3.14.2.1 Direct object pronouns

What does *direct object* and *indirect object* mean? Let's start with the direct object. The ***direct object*** is the 'recipient of the action'. (The bakers, butchers and cheesemongers of our sentence generator www.hiv.net/pastparticiple are all 'recipients', direct objects). The direct object answers therefore the question *whom?* or *what?*

I love those girls.	Whom do I love?	The girls.
He writes a message.	What does he write?	A message.

In these sentences *girls* and *message* are direct objects. Action words that take direct objects – in our examples *to love* and *to write* – are called **transitive action words** (Action words that CANNOT take a direct object, for example **dormir** *to sleep*, **aller** *to go*, **venir** *to come*, are called **intransitive action words**).

1 st singular	me/m'	Tu m'aimes?	Do you love me?
2 nd singular	te/t'	Je t'aime.	I love you.
3 rd singular	le/l'	Je l'aime.	I love him.
	la/l'	Je l'aime.	I love her.
1 st plural	nous	Tu nous aimez?	Do you love us?
2 nd plural	vous	Je vous aime.	I love you. (plural or polite form)
3 rd plural	les	Je les aime.	I love them. (masc. or fem.)

The *direct* weak POPs with their English translation in synthesis:

me/m'	<i>me</i>
te/t'	<i>you</i>
le/l'	<i>him</i>
la/l'	<i>her</i>
nous	<i>us</i>
vous	<i>you</i>
les	<i>them</i>

3.14.2.2 Indirect object pronouns

Some action words have *indirect object nouns and pronouns*. What is an indirect object? An **indirect object** answers the question **to whom?** or **for whom?** While the prepositions *to*

and *for* are often omitted in English, in French you must use the preposition **à**:

Could you tell Marco this story, please?	Pourrais-tu raconter cette histoire à Marco , s'il te plaît ?	Indirect noun: Marco
I gave the young girl my mobile number.	J'ai donné mon numéro de portable à la jeune fille .	Indirect noun : la jeune fille
I explained the situation to the physicians.	J'ai expliqué la situation aux médecins .	Indirect noun: les médecins

Using indirect POPs, here's what you get:

I'll tell him the story.	Je lui raconterai l'histoire.	Indirect pronoun: lui
I gave her my mobile number.	Je lui ai donné mon numéro de portable.	Indirect pronoun: lui
I explained the situation to them .	Je leur ai expliqué la situation.	Indirect pronoun: leur

More examples:

1 st singular	me/m'	Tu me donnes cette pomme ?	Are you giving me that apple?
2 nd singular	te/t'	Je ne te donne rien.	I am not giving you anything.
3 rd singular	lui	Tu lui donnes un baiser ?	Are you giving him/her a kiss?
1 st plural	nous	Tu nous racontera tout?	Will you tell us everything?
2 nd plural	vous	Je ne vous raconterai rien.	I won't tell you anything.
3 rd plural	leur	Donnez- leur une gifle.	Give them (masc. + fem.) a slap.

The *indirect* weak POPs with their English translation in synthesis (in red, the pronouns which differ from the *direct* POPs):

me/m'	<i>me</i>
te/t'	<i>you</i>
lui	<i>him</i>
lui	<i>her</i>
nous	<i>us</i>
vous	<i>you</i>
leur	<i>them</i>

When you compare *direct* and *indirect* POPs, you'll see that

- 1) **me**, **te**, **nous** and **vous** are both direct and indirect pronouns.
- 2) **le**, **la**, and **les** are **only direct** pronouns.
- 3) **lui** and **leur** are **only indirect** pronouns, **lui** for both genders in the singular (*to him/for him + to her/for her*) and **leur** for both genders in the plural (*to them/for them*).

3.14.2.3 Reflexive object pronouns

The reflexive object pronoun is **se**, both for the singular and the plural.

	Présent	
Il	se lave.	He is washing himself .
Elle	se lave.	She is washing herself .
Ils/Elles	se lavent.	They are washing themselves .

Passé composé

Il	s' est lavé.	He washed himself .
Elle	s' est lavé e .	She washed herself .
Ils	se sont lavés.	They washed themselves . <i>m.</i>
Elles	se sont lavés es .	They washed themselves . <i>f.</i>

3.14.2.4 Stressed POPs

Stressed POPs are used to create emphasis. Put between **c'est** and **que**, they clarify that only one person is meant, excluding all others; or only one group of persons, excluding all other groups.

1 st singular	moi	C'est moi que tu aimes ?	Do you love <i>me</i> ? (and nobody else)
2 nd singular	toi	C'est toi que j'aime.	I love <i>you</i> . (and nobody else)
3 rd singular	lui	C'est lui que j'aime.	I love <i>him</i> . (and nobody else)
	elle	C'est elle que j'aime.	I love <i>her</i> . (and nobody else)
1 st plural	nous	C'est nous que tu aimes ?	Do you love <i>us</i> ? (and nobody else)
2 nd plural	vous	C'est vous que j'aime.	I love <i>you</i> . (plural or polite form)
3 rd plural	eux	C'est eux que j'aime.	I love <i>them</i> . (masc.+fem.)

Stressed POPs

moi	<i>me</i>
toi	<i>you</i>
lui – soi	<i>him</i>
elle – soi	<i>her</i>
nous	<i>us</i>
vous	<i>you</i>
eux	<i>them</i>
elles	<i>them</i>

You'll also use **stressed POPs** after **prepositions**:

Je peux monter avec toi ?	Can I come up with you?
Bien sûr, viens avec moi !	Certainly, come with me.
J'ai fait tout ça pour vous !	I've done all this for you. (plural or polite form)
Ils ne pensent qu' à eux .	They only think about themselves.

3.14.2.5 Managing two weak POPs : **me le – te le – le lui, etc.**

We won't go into the details of managing double POPs, for example, *I give **it to you***. However, you don't want to go to bed before seeing this:

1.

Je te l'explique.	I'm going to explain it to you .
Tu peux me l'expliquer?	Can you explain it to me ?

2.

Je le lui donnerai.	I'll give it to him .
Je le leur enverrai.	I'll send it to them .

What do you see?

1. The Rule: First comes the *indirect* pronoun, then the *direct* pronoun (see 1).

2. The exception to the rule: When one of the two pronouns is **lui** or **leur**, it comes in the second position (see 2): '**le lui**', '**le leur**'.

More sentences:

Je te le donne tout de suite.	I'll give it to you right away.
Tu me le donnes?	Can you give it to me ?
Il nous l' a donné hier.	He gave it to us yesterday.
Je vous l' ai déjà expliqué.	I already explained it to you .
Je le lui ai donné.	I gave it to him .
Je le leur ai envoyé.	I sent it to them .

Please find more about the use of two personal pronouns on page 393.

3.15 Nouns (3)

3.15.1 Masculine nouns

{AUDIO} Apart from nouns referring to males, most words ending in **-ment**, **-nt**, **-isme**, **-in**, **-et**, **-eau**, **-aire**, **-ien**, **-oir** and **-asm** are usually masculine.



{Second Round}

- **-ment** (1000 words in a 45,000-word dictionary)

Some words are identical with or similar to English words such as **moment**, **mouvement**, **gouvernement**, **appartement**, **élément**, **commandement**, **changement**, **instrument**, **jugement**, **régiment**, **monument**. However, most words of this group cannot be easily guessed: **vêtement** *item of clothing*, **bâtiment** *building*, **étonnement** *amazement, astonishment*.

Gender exception : **la jument** *mare*

- **-nt** (300; other than **-ment**)

enfant *child*, **point**, **vent** *wind*, **argent** *money*, **front**,
pont *bridge*, **client**, **président**, **amant** *lover*,
lieutenant, **restaurant**, **accent**, **accident**, **chant**
song, singing, **agent**, **talent**

Gender exception : **la dent** *tooth*

- –isme (500)

Words ending with –ism are identical to English words (see page 545). The pronunciation is clearly different. Check the audio xxx.

organisme, **mécanisme**, **communisme**, **égoïsme**,
mutisme, **socialisme**, **capitalisme**, **optimisme**,
cynisme, **héroïsme**, **réalisme**, **scepticisme**,
tourisme, **marxisme**, **romantisme**, **rhumatisme**,
journalisme, **snobisme**, **érotisme**, **nationalisme**,
racisme, **fanatisme**, **humanisme**, **pessimisme**,
sadisme, **surréalisme**, **idéalisme**,

- –in (300)

matin *morning*, **chemin** *path, track*, **jardin** *garden*,
vin *wine*, **cousin**, **médecin** *physician*, **destin** *destiny*,
fate, **magasin** *shop, store*, **dessin** *drawing, picture*,
lapin *rabbit*, **bouquin** *book*, **mannequin** *model*.

- –et (270)

No translation needed : **effet**, **objet**, **intérêt**, **projet**,
cabinet, **buffet**, **jet**, **pistolet**

- –eau (200)

bureau *office, desk*, **oiseau** *bird*, **morceau** *piece, bit*,
tableau *board, painting*, **chapeau** *hat*, **bateau** *boat*,
ship, **château** *castle*

Gender exceptions : **une eau** *water*, **la peau** *skin*

- –aire (180)

Most words are similar to English words : **secrétaire** *secretary*, **commissaire** *superintendent*, **propriétaire** *owner*, **fonctionnaire** *civil servant*, **adversaire** *opponent*, **commentaire** *comment*, **notaire** *solicitor*, **partenaire** *partner*, **locataire** *tenant*, **maire** *mayor*, **salaire** *salary*, **vestiaire** *cloakroom*, **dictionnaire** *dictionary*, **pensionnaire** *lodger, boarder*, **itinéraire** *route, itinerary*, **vocabulaire** *vocabulary*

Gender exceptions : **une affaire** *affair*, **la grammaire** *grammar*, **la chaire** *chair*, **la molaire** *molar*

- –ien (145)

Many words are similar to English words: **chien** *dog*, **bien** *good, goods*, **lien** *link, connection*, **entretien** *interview; maintenance*, **rien** *mere nothing*, **chirurgien** *surgeon*, **mécanicien** *mechanic*, **pharmacien** *pharmacist*, **historien** *historian*, **collégien** *secondary-school pupil*, **magicien** *magician*, **électricien** *electrician*, **vaurien** *good-for-nothing*, **académicien** *academician*, **physicien** *physicist*

- –oir (140)

soir *evening*, **pouvoir** *power*, **couloir** *hallway*, **espoir** *hope*, **trottoir** *pavement*, **miroir** *mirror*, **devoir** *duty*, **désespoir** *distress, despair*, **savoir** *knowledge*, **mouchoir** *handkerchief*, **rasoir** *razor*

- –asme (16)

Almost identical to English words (check the audio at xxx) : **enthousiasme, spasme, fantasme, sarcasme, orgasme, phantasme, ectoplasme, pléonasme, néoplasme, cytoplasme, protoplasme, chiasme**

3.15.2 Plural: –ou, –al, –ail

{AUDIO} Most nouns ending in –ou (normally masculine) take the standard –s in the plural:

Singular	Plural	
cou	cous	neck
trou	trous	hole
sou	sous	ancient coin 20 sous = 1 franc
clou	clous	nail
voyou	voyous	thug
loulou	loulous	thug; familiar: darling
verrou	verrous	bolt (lock)

Only seven nouns (all masculine) take on an –x in the plural:

Singular	Plural	
genou	genoux	knee
caillou	cailloux	pebble
chou	choux	cabbage
bijou	bijoux	jewel
pou	poux	louse
hibou	hiboux	owl
joujou	joujoux	toy (childish)

Nouns ending in –al or –ail (all masculine) generally take on –aux in the plural.

Singular	Plural	
journal	journaux	newspaper
hôpital	hôpitaux	hospital
animal	animaux	animal
cheval	chevaux	horse
travail	travaux	work, job
corail	coraux	coral
vitrail	vitraux	stained glass
émail	émaux	enamel

Exceptions:

Singular	Plural	
festival	festivals	festival
carnaval	carnavals	carnival
bal	bals	ball, dance

3.16 Adjectives (3)

Final reminder

Adjectives describe qualities of people, animals and things; remember also that adjectives must agree in number and gender with their nouns (and that every French noun is either masculine or feminine and either singular or plural).

{AUDIO} Let's take a final look at Group 1 adjectives (those ending with a consonant). Remember the **ES rule**: Add

- **-e** when the noun is feminine singular (**excitante**)
- **-s** when the corresponding noun is masculine plural (**excitants**)
- **-es** when the corresponding noun is feminine plural (**excitantes**)

Gender

		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular		-e
	Plural	-s	-es

Note that the plural **-s** is always silent and doesn't change the pronunciation in the masculine or the feminine:

excitant/excitants : eksitã

excitante/excitantes : eksitãt

In the following table, pronounce the final consonant only in the feminine forms (here the **-t-** shown in bold).

Singular

Masculine	Feminine	
excitant	excitante	exciting
content	contente	content
intelligent	intelligente	intelligent
stimulant	stimulante	stimulating
amusant	amusante	amusing
intéressant	intéressante	interesting
méchant	méchante	mean
lent	lente	slow
puissant	puissante	powerful

Some adjectives have irregular feminine forms:

Masculine	Feminine	
frais	fraîche	fresh
long	longue	long
doux	douce	soft
blanc	blanche	white
faux	fausse	false
public	publique	public
favori	favorite	favorite
fou	folle	crazy

3.17 Jokers (3)

3.17.1 The next 21 Jokers

Open www.gigafrench.com/jokers03 for a quick smartphone check.

{AUDIO}

43	ainsi	like this, in this way	adv
44	depuis	since	prep, adv
45	tant	so much, so much that	adv, conj
46	ce que	what	adv
47	contre	against	prep, adv
48	car	because, as	conj
49	aussi	also, too	adv
50	pendant	during	prep
51	quelque	some	adv, adj
52	tandis que	whereas, while	conj
53	vers	toward, around	prep
54	oui	yes	adv
55	non	non	adv
56	près	close	adv, adj

57	maintenant	now	adv
58	enfin	finally	adv
59	mal	badly	adv
60	seulement	only	adv
61	loin	far	adv
62	ni	neither...nor	conj
63	moins	less	adv

Find the next jokers on page 338.

3.17.2 Adverbs (3)

{AUDIO} “Deceitful” adverbs which are sometimes difficult to memorize (for example, **souvent** *often*, **parfois** *sometimes*, **partout** *everywhere*, **déjà** *already*, etc.) are fortunately a minority. The vast majority of adverbs can be derived from adjectives. The recipe: take the feminine form and add the suffix **–ment**. In general, these adverbs correspond to English adverbs ending with **–ly**.

Adjective	Feminine form	Adverb	
lent	lente	lentement	slowly
sexuel	sexuelle	sexuellement	sexually
heureux	heureuse	heureusement	fortunately
simple	simple	simplement	simply
bête	bête	bêtement	foolishly
facile	facile	facilement	easily

More about memory-friendly derivatives in Level 4, page 339.

Final reminder

Adverbs are invariable words which provide additional information for

- a verb
- an adjective
- or another adverb

The additional information covers time and space (when and where), manner (how) and quantity (how often), comparison and frequency.

Final reminder

Prepositions are short words such as *at, of, in, on, to, with* which **link words in a sentence**. They are usually used in front of nouns (boy, girl, flower, tree) or pronouns (him, her, them) and show, for example:

1. **Where** something takes place (*at* my friend's place)
2. **When** something happens (*before* making love)
3. **Descriptive information** (the doctor *with* the pony tail)

3.18 Numbers 80-100

{AUDIO} You are now seconds away from one of your most invigorating French grammar chapters: the majestic 80 to 99. Are you ready for really twisted math? Well, how would you describe the innocent number '97'? French people define it – mathematically by all means correctly – as $4 \times 20 + 17$ and, consequently, write and pronounce it **quatre-vingt-dix-sept**. Aghast and speechless? Like generations of foreigners before you...

The complete sequence of French ‘*quatre-vingt’ners*:

quatre-vingt s *	4*20	80
quatre-vingt-un	4*20+1	81
quatre-vingt-deux	4*20+2	82
quatre-vingt-trois	4*20+3	83
quatre-vingt-quatre	4*20+4	84
quatre-vingt-cinq	4*20+5	85
quatre-vingt-six	4*20+6	86
quatre-vingt-sept	4*20+7	87
quatre-vingt-huit	4*20+8	88
quatre-vingt-neuf	4*20+9	89
quatre-vingt-dix**	4*20+10	90
quatre-vingt-onze	4*20+11	91
quatre-vingt-douze	4*20+12	92
quatre-vingt-treize	4*20+13	93
quatre-vingt-quatorze	4*20+14	94
quatre-vingt-quinze	4*20+15	95
quatre-vingt-seize	4*20+16	96
quatre-vingt-dix-sept	4*20+17	97
quatre-vingt-dix-huit	4*20+18	98
quatre-vingt-dix-neuf	4*20+19	99
cent		100

* Note that only *quatre-vingts* comes with a final **–s**:

** In Belgium, Luxemburg and Switzerland, native French speakers use *nonante*, *nonante et un*, *nonante-deux*, etc.

3.19 Bits and Pieces

3.19.1 Days of the Week

{AUDIO}

lundi	Monday
mardi	Tuesday
mercredi	Wednesday
jeudi	Thursday
vendredi	Friday
samedi	Saturday
dimanche	Sunday

Aujourd'hui/Demain, c'est **dimanche**. Today/Tomorrow is **Sunday**.

Quel jour on est (sommes-nous) aujourd'hui ? What day is it today?

Nous sommes **lundi**. It's **Monday**.

Le mardi, je joue au tennis. **On Tuesdays**, I go to play tennis.

What do you see?

- In French, days of the weeks are not capitalized.
- For regular weekly activities ('on Tuesdays'), the French use the definite article **le** ('le mardi') + the singular of the day.

3.19.2 Months of the Year

{AUDIO}

janvier	January	juillet	July
février	February	août	August
mars	March	septembre	September
avril	April	octobre	October
mai	May	novembre	November
juin	June	décembre	December

Je viendrai en janvier.	I'll come in January.
Je viendrai au mois de janvier.	
Le premier janvier est mon anniversaire.	The first of January is my birthday.
Mais célébrons toujours le trente et un décembre.	But we always celebrate the thirty-first of December.

What do you see?

- In French, months are not capitalized.
- You'll use the proposition **en** or **au mois de** for the English *in*.
- For the first day of the month, you'll use the ordinal number **premier** *first*. For all other days of the month – and this is different from English – you'll use (simple) cardinal numbers: le **quatorze** juillet (the 14th of July), le **huit** mai (the 8th of May), le **deux** septembre (the 2nd of September), le **onze** novembre (the 11th of November), etc.

3.19.3 Silent letters (3)

{AUDIO} The letters C, R, F, L (*careful*), B, K and Q are usually pronounced at the end of a word. Let's continue with the letter R:

	Pronounce the final R	
R	jour	day
	air	air
	soir	evening
	amour	love
	cœur	heart
	mur	wall
	agir	to act

Don't pronounce the final R		
R	- Infinitives of Group 1 action words:	
	caresser	to caress
	donner	to give
	Words ending in -ier:	
	premier	first
	dernier	last
	monsieur	Mr

3.20 Reading the News

{AUDIO} {AUDIO} Time for your third newspaper article extract. Analyse the 55 words about the liberalization of abortion in the world. We have highlighted the three main word classes:

1. Action word

2. Noun

3. Adjectif

La **bonne nouvelle** : Dans le **monde entier**, la **tendance** à la **libéralisation** de l'**avortement** **se poursuit**. Les **lois** sur l'**avortement** **sont** de plus en plus **permissives**. 60% de la **population mondiale** **vit** dans des **pays** où l'**avortement** **est** **légal**. Seulement 25% **vit** dans des **pays** encore « **arriérés** » où l'**avortement** **est** généralement **interdit**.

The good news:
Worldwide, the trend toward liberalization of abortion continues. Abortion laws are more and more permissive. 60% of the world population lives in countries where abortion is legal. Only 25% live in still "backward" countries where abortion is generally prohibited.

Read the text several times and analyse it word by word. For more information about abortion in the world, check

<http://www.reproductiverights.org>

+

<http://worldabortionlaws.com>

The World's Abortion Laws 2016

+

<http://reproductiverights.org/sites/crr.civicactions.net/files/documents/AbortionMap2014.PDF>

III. Results & Preview

1.

Can you say:

Présent

je fais – tu fais – il/elle fait | nous **faisons** – vous **faites** –
ils/elles **font**

I do, you do, he/she does | we, you, they do

Imparfait

je **faisais** – tu **faisais** – il/elle **faisait** | nous **faisions** – vous
faisiez – ils/elles **faisaient**

I, you, he/she did | we, you, they did

I, you, he/she used to do | we, you, they used to do

Conditionnel présent

je **ferais** – tu **ferais** – il/elle **ferait** | nous **ferions** – vous **feriez**
– ils/elles **feraient**

I, you, he/she would do | we, you, they would do

Subjonctif présent

que je **fasse** – que tu **fasses** – qu’il/elle **fasse** | que nous **fassions** – que vous **fassiez** – qu’ils/elles **fassent**
that I, you do, he/she does | that we, you, they do

2.

Can you say :

Présent

je **caresse** – tu **caresses** – il/elle **caresse** | nous **caressons** –
vous **caressez** – ils/elles **caressent**
I, you caress, he/she caresses | we, you, they caress

Imparfait

je **caressais** – tu **caressais** – il/elle **caressait** | nous **caressions**
– vous **caressiez** – ils/elles **caressaient**
I, you, he/she caressed | we, you, they caressed
I, you, he/she used to caress | we, you, they used to caress

Conditionnel présent

je **caresserais** – tu **caresserais** – il/elle **caresserait** | nous **caresserions**
– vous **caresseriez** – ils/elles **caresseraient**
I, you, he/she would caress | we, you, they would caress

3.

Can you repeat the exercise with the following action words?

aimer	to love
regarder	to look
penser	to think
parler	to talk, speak
demander	to ask
laisser	to let
trouver	to find
donner	to give
passer	to pass
arriver	to arrive

4.

Do you remember the present tense of **aller** to go, **vouloir** to want, **pouvoir** to be able to, **dire** to say, **lire** to read, **voir** to see, **savoir** to know, **venir** to come, **tenir** to hold?

5.

Do you remember the possessive adjectives?

	Singular		Plural
	Masculine	Feminine	Masc. + Fem.
my	mon	ma	mes
your	ton	ta	tes
his/her/its	son	sa	ses
our	notre		nos
your	votre		vos
their	leur		leurs

6.

Do you remember the personal pronouns?

	PSP*		POP**			
			Weak forms		Stressed forms	
1 st sing.	je/ʃ'	<i>I</i>	me	<i>me</i>	moi	<i>me</i>
2 nd sing.	tu	<i>you</i>	te	<i>you</i>	toi	<i>you</i>
3 rd sing.	il	<i>he</i>	le lui – se	<i>him</i>	lui – soi	<i>him</i>
	elle	<i>she</i>	la lui – se	<i>her</i>	elle – soi	<i>her</i>
1 st plural	nous	<i>we</i>	nous	<i>us</i>	nous	<i>us</i>
2 nd plural	vous	<i>you</i>	vous	<i>you</i>	vous	<i>you</i>
3 rd plural	ils <i>m.</i>	<i>they</i>	les leur – se	<i>them</i>	eux	<i>them</i>
	elles <i>f.</i>	<i>they</i>	les leur – se	<i>them</i>	elles	<i>them</i>

* PSP: Personal subject pronouns

** POP: Personal object pronouns; before a vowel or a mute *h*, drop the *-e*:*m', t', l', s'.*

7.

{AUDIO} And finally, are you at ease with 1789 (**mil sept cents quatre-vingt-neuf**), the year of the French revolution, and the following 10 years?

mil sept cents quatre-vingt-neuf	1700+4*20+9	1789
mil sept cents quatre-vingt-dix	1700+4*20+10	1790
mil sept cents quatre-vingt-onze	1700+4*20+11	1791
mil sept cents quatre-vingt-douze	1700+4*20+12	1792
mil sept cents quatre-vingt-treize	1700+4*20+13	1793
mil sept cents quatre-vingt-quatorze	1700+4*20+14	1794
mil sept cents quatre-vingt-quinze	1700+4*20+15	1795
mil sept cents quatre-vingt-seize	1700+4*20+16	1796
mil sept cents quatre-vingt-dix-sept	1700+4*20+17	1797
mil sept cents quatre-vingt-dix-huit	1700+4*20+18	1798
mil sept cents quatre-vingt-dix-neuf	1700+4*20+19	1799

Well, then you have been promoted to Level 4! You know 40 out of 100 key action word sextets. **Vive la révolution!**

Outlook

In Level 4, you'll explore junk food; the first Group 3 action words and irregulars from Group 1; suck, eat, buy, and pay; give orders; and continue your regular explorations of the **subjonctif**. On the menu

Je préfère que	I prefer
J'aime mieux que	I prefer
J'attends que	I am waiting
J'exige que	I demand that
Je veux que	I want

Persevere !

4 Junk Food



Copyright © 2016 N. Allan – Rome

{ GigaFrench.com/level04 } **La malbouffe** | Triste réalité : plus vous êtes pauvres, plus vous bouffez (mangez) mal. Certes, si vous vivez aux marges de la société, dans une périphérie pauvre de New York, London ou Paris, crever (mourir) de faim est une rareté – dans les sociétés riches il y a de la bouffe (nourriture) pour tout le monde. Mais il y a des chances que votre supermarché ne vous offre guère de fruits et de légumes frais (parfois même pas du tout !) et que la seule nourriture disponible soit de la... bouffe industrielle. « On creuse sa tombe avec ses dents », dit le proverbe : condamnés à la malbouffe, vous mourrez prématurément.

La malbouffe est née aux États-Unis. D'abord exportée en Europe, elle envahit aujourd'hui le monde entier. C'est quoi au juste ? D'abord, des aliments qui contiennent trop de « mauvaises » graisses, trop de sel, trop de sucre (hamburgers, hot-dogs, chips, frites, glaces, etc.) ; ensuite, la ribambelle des boissons industrielles sucrées, les « sodas » de toutes sortes ; et, finalement, la plupart des aliments transformés par l'industrie agroalimentaire, emballés et prêts à passer au micro-ondes.

A sad reality: the poorer you are, the more poorly you eat. If you live on the margins of society, in a poor district of New York, London or Paris, dying of hunger is certainly a rarity – in affluent societies there is some food for everyone. But there are chances that your supermarket will hardly offer you fruit and vegetables (and sometimes none at all!), and that the only food available is.. industrial rubbish. "You dig your grave with your teeth", the proverb says: sentenced to junk food, you'll die prematurely.

Junk food was born in the United States. Exported to Europe first, today it is invading the entire world. What is it exactly? Firstly, foods that contain too many "bad" fats, too much salt, too much sugar (hamburgers, hot dogs, chips, fries, ice cream, etc.); then, the flock of industrial sweet drinks, "sodas" of sorts; and, finally, most foods processed by the food industry, packaged and ready for the microwave.

Conséquences de la malbouffe ?

L'obésité, le diabète, les maladies cardiovasculaires (infarctus, AVC [accident vasculaire cérébral], impuissance), la dépression, voire des cancers. Aujourd'hui, partout dans le monde, nous sommes submergés par la malbouffe.

Apprenons à nous en défendre (voir Level 10, page xxx) ! Commencez par deux 'trucs' ultrasimples : buvez de l'eau et passez-vous des « nourritures » transformées et préemballées. Vous avez quelques kilos en trop ? La chance vous sourit. Vous allez fondre comme un sorbet industriel. ☺

The consequences of junk food? Obesity, diabetes, cardiovascular disease (myocardial infarction, stroke, impotence), depression and even cancer. Today, all over the world, we are overwhelmed by junk food. Let's learn how to defend ourselves against it (see Level 10, page xxx)! Start with two ultra-simple 'tricks': drink water and avoid processed and pre-packaged "food". Have a few extra kilos? Lucky you! You'll melt like an industrial sorbet.

Words

{AUDIO}

la malbouffe	junk food	la marge	margin
triste	sad	la société	society
la réalité	reality	la périphérie	periphery
plus...plus	the more...the more	crever (mourir)	to die
pauvre	poor	<i>arg.</i>	
bouffer	manger	la faim	hunger
(manger)		la rareté	rarity
<i>arg. = argot = slang</i>		riche	rich
mal	badly, poorly	il y a	there is
		la chance	luck, probability
certes	certainly	il y a des chances que	it is probable that
si	if	le supermarché	supermarket
vivre	to live	offrir	to offer
vous vivez	you live		

ne...guère	hardly	un aliment	food
il ne vous offre guère	it offers you hardly	contenir	to include, to contain
le fruit	fruit	trop	too, too much
le légume	vegetable	mauvais	bad
frais, fraîche	fresh	la graisse	fat
parfois	sometimes	le sel	salt
même	even	le sucre	sugar
pas du tout	not at all	le hamburger	hamburger
seul	only	le hot-dog	hot-dog
la nourriture disponible	food available	les chips <i>f.</i>	chips, crisps
industriel, -le	industrial	la frite	French fry
creuser	to dig	la glace	ice cream
la tombe	grave	ensuite	then, next
la dent	tooth	la ribambelle	flock, heap
dire	to say	<i>fam.</i>	
le proverbe	saying	la boisson	drink
condamner	to condemn	sucré	sugary, sweet
mourir	to die	de toutes sortes	of all kind
vous mourrez	you'll die	finalement	finally
prématurément	prematurely	la plupart de	most of
naître	to be born	transformer	to transform
est née	was born	par	by
les États-Unis	United States	une industrie	industry
d'abord	at first	agroalimentaire	agri-food
exporter	to export	emballer	to pack, to package
une Europe	Europe	prêt à	ready to
envahir	to invade	passer	to pass, here: to go
aujourd'hui	today	le micro-ondes	microwave
le monde	world	la conséquence	consequence
entier, entière	entire	obésité <i>f.</i>	obesity
quoi	what	le diabète	diabetes
au juste	precisely	la maladie	disease

4.1 Power Listening

Download the MP3 audio file of the text on your smartphone (www.gigafrench.com/download) and follow the instructions on Power Listening on page 34.

Remember that *GigaFrench's* Power Listening consists of cutting an audio file into portions of 2, 3 or 4 seconds and listening to these portions 5, 10 or even 15 or 20 times (examples: [slow audio](#), [normal audio](#)). As you listen, read the French text and check the English translation constantly. In this way you'll be able to:

1. figure out which word corresponds to which sound;
2. learn the meaning of the words;
3. memorise the spelling of the words.

If a single MP3 audio file lasts 2 minutes and if you listen to all “portions” 10 times, each round will last 20 minutes. During the following weeks you will repeat this exercise around 10 times for each audio file. In all, you'll therefore hear each portion of each audio file 100 times. Then will come the time when you'll understand, for the first time and distinctly, every single word of the MP3 audio file you are listening to. You'll have conquered an “island of total understanding”.

The 8 audio files of the current *GigaFrench* edition total about 20 minutes of recording. Listening to them 100 times requires about 30 hours. A perfect understanding – word for word! – of these 8 pieces with more than 2,600 words is just around the corner of your life. You can do it in less than two months!

What are you waiting for?

4.2 Preview

If your main interest is learning contemporary vocabulary, memorize all words (100%) and go straight ahead to *Aesthetic “Medicine”* on page 349.

For a more thorough knowledge of French, please continue below. The highlights of Level 4:

- The first Group 3 action words
- Irregulars from Group 1: suck, eat, buy, pay, etc.
- The ‘gérondif’
- Giving orders
- Y & en

As always, make extensive use of the audio files and listen to them until you distinguish and understand every single word.

4.3 Master Class (6)

Have you noticed? We told you to learn the meaning of approximately 5,000 words and listen to audio files, TV or radio for around 1,000 hours, but we’ve never asked you to say a single word. You might be surprised to learn that this was deliberate.

In fact, there are good reasons to confine your desire to communicate. As you are a virgin – linguistically speaking – you might prefer to stay that way for a while. My favourite prescription is a monastic ‘3-month silence’. Remember, you are not at school, there are no exams on the horizon, and you may therefore take a comfortable approach with your new language. Concentrate on absorbing words, sounds and sentences, and, day after day, let the sound of the new language slowly sink in. Of course, you are too old for a ‘baby approach’ to language learning, but for now, listen passively as young children do. You’ll understand later that good

pronunciation comes as a bonus of patient and attentive listening.

Find more information about speaking in Chapter 5 of *The Word Brain*, page 49ff. Download the free 81-page PDF from www.TheWordBrain.com.

I. Action Words

4.4 Aller

{AUDIO}

Infinitif	aller <i>to go</i>
Participe passé	allé(e)(s)
Participe présent	allant
Impératif	va allons allez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je/j'	vais	allais	allai
tu	vas	allais	allas
il/elle	va	allait	alla
nous	allons	allions	allâmes
vous	allez	alliez	allâtes
ils/elles	vont	allaient	allèrent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
j'	irai	irais
tu	iras	irais
il/elle	ira	irait
nous	irons	irions
vous	irez	iriez
ils/elles	iront	iraient

	Subjonctif présent <i>(irregular)</i>	Subjonctif imparfait
que j'	aille	allasse
que tu	ailles	allasses
qu'il/elle	aille	allât
que nous	allions	allussions
que vous	alliez	allussiez
qu'ils/elles	aient	allussent

4.5 Aller – Composed tenses

{AUDIO} You should now be comfortable with composed tenses. Please underline what you didn't know.

	Passé composé <i>Perfect: I have gone (+ I went)</i>	Plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect: I had gone</i>	Passé antérieur <i>Preterit perfect: I had gone</i>
je/j'	suis allé(e)	étais allé(e)	fus allé(e)
tu	es allé(e)	étais allé(e)	fus allé(e)
il/elle	est allé(e)	était allé(e)	fut allé(e)
nous	sommes allé(e)s	étions allé(e)s	fûmes allé(e)s
vous	êtes allé(e)s	étiez allé(e)s	fûtes allé(e)s
ils/elles	sont allé(e)s	étaient allé(e)s	furent allé(e)s

	Futur antérieur <i>Future perfect: I will have gone</i>	Conditionnel passé <i>Past conditional: I would have gone</i>
je	serai allé(e)	serais allé(e)
tu	seras allé(e)	serais allé(e)
il/elle	sera allé(e)	serait allé(e)
nous	serons allé(e)s	serions allé(e)s
vous	seriez allé(e)s	seriez allé(e)s
ils/elles	seront allé(e)s	seraient allé(e)s

	Subjonctif passé <i>Past subjunctive: that I went</i>	Subjonctif plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect subjunctive: that I had gone</i>
que je	sois allé(e)	fusse allé(e)
que tu	sois allé(e)	fusses allé(e)
qu'il/elle	soit allé(e)	fût allé(e)
que nous	soyons allé(e)s	fussions allé(e)s
que vous	soyez allé(e)s	fussiez allé(e)s
qu'ils/elles	soient allé(e)s	fussent allé(e)s



Tuileries | © Copyright: Marie de France

4.6 Futur Proche

{AUDIO} The simple tenses of **aller** are particularly powerful because you'll use them in combination with action words (**aller + x**) to express the near future. Example: **je vais faire** *I'll do, I'm going to do.*

Qu'est-ce que **tu vas faire** maintenant ?

Vous allez mourir plus tôt.

Je vais arrêter d'acheter des sodas (des boissons gazeuses sucrées).

Si tu continues comme ça, **tu vas devenir** obèse.

What **are you going to do** now?

You are going to die earlier.

I'll stop buying sodas (sugared soft drinks).

If you continue like that, **you'll become** obese.

Aller + aller is also possible:

Demain, **je vais aller** au cinéma avec mon copain.

Elle va aller faire un tour au Louvre.

Tomorrow, **I'll go** to the cinema with my boyfriend.

She will go to visit the Louvre.

4.7 Subjonctif (2)

{AUDIO} Remember: When expressing doubt and uncertainty, the French language uses the **subjonctif**. It also does so to express a feeling or emotion, a desire, a wish, an order and an expectation. The **subjonctif présent** usually translates into the *present tense* (*I have, etc.*).

Let's continue the exploration of the **subjonctif** with a few expressions of wishes, desires and preferences.

Je préfère que...	I prefer (that...)
J'aime mieux que...	I prefer (that...)
J'attends que...	I am waiting (that...)
J'exige que...	I demand (that...)
Je veux que...	I want (that...)

Je préfère **que tu viennes** tout de suite. I prefer you come right now.

Je veux que **tu le fasses** aujourd'hui. I want you to do it today.

Find more expressions requiring the **subjonctif** on page 362.

4.8 Action words, Group 1

A small number of Group 1 action words (example: **caresser**, see page 246) have spelling changes in the **présent**. These changes consist often in the appearance of en **-è-** where you would expect a simple **-e-** or in the doubling of a consonant (**-ll-** instead of **-l-**; **-tt-** instead of **-t-**).

Here we give you a quick overview of nine slightly different variations. Deviations from the norm are shown in red. For a complete discussion, see the pages indicated between parentheses.

**{AUDIO
O}**

	sucer (page 497) <i>to suck</i>	manger (502) <i>to eat</i>	se promener (507) <i>to go for a walk</i>
je	suce	mange	me promène
tu	suces	manges	te promènes
il/elle	suce	mange	se promène
nous	suçons	mangeons	nous promenons
vous	sucez	mangez	vous promenez
ils/elles	sucent	mangent	se promènent

	considérer (513) <i>to consider</i>	s'appeler (520) <i>to be called</i>	jeter (524) <i>to throw</i>
je	considère	m'appelle	jette
tu	considères	t'appelles	jettes
il/elle	considère	s'appelle	jette
nous	considérons	nous appelons	jetons
vous	considérez	vous appelez	jetez
ils/elles	considèrent	s'appellent	jettent

	acheter (528) <i>to buy</i>	payer (532) <i>to pay</i>	envoyer (537) <i>to send</i>
j'/je	achète	paie	envoie
tu	achètes	paies	envoies
il/elle	achète	paie	envoie
nous	achetons	payons	envoyons
vous	achetez	payez	envoyez
ils/elles	achètent	paient	envoient

4.9 Group 3, Type 1

{AUDIO} Action words of Group 3 are irregular. According to the *present tense* endings, most action words of Group 3 can be assigned to four different types:

	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3	Type 4
.				
je	-s	-e	-ds	-x
tu	-s	-es	-ds	-x
il/elle	-t	-e	-d	-t
nous	-ons	-ons	-ons	-ons
vous	-ez	-ez	-ez	-ez
ils/elles	-ent	-ent	-ent	-ent

This table is reassuring because

- The three plural forms **-ons**, **-ez** and **-ent** are familiar and are the same across all types.
- You already know two of three Type 4 words (page 269) : **vouloir** *to want* (je veux – tu veux – il veut | nous voulons – vous voulez – ils/elles veulent) and **pouvoir** *to be able to* (je peux – tu peux – il peut | nous voulons – vous voulez – ils/elles veulent).
- You have only 10 important Type 3 words:
 - prendre** *to take*
 - apprendre** *to learn*
 - comprendre** *to understand*
 - entendre** *to hear*
 - attendre** *to wait*

rendre *to give back, return*

répondre *to answer*

perdre *to lose*

descendre (*être*) *to go down, drive down*

vendre *to sell*

- You have even less important Type 2 words (page 476):

ouvrir *to open*

découvrir *to discover*

souffrir *to suffer*

Let's therefore start our exploration of **Group 3** action words with type 1, those ending on **-ir** and whose stem ends with a double consonant (shown in red):

dormir to sleep

sentir to feel

mentir to lie

partir to leave

sortir to go out

s'endormir to fall asleep

servir to serve

There are two rules:

1. In the singular, the second of the two consonants is dropped (in **dormir** the **-m**) before adding the endings **-s**, **-s**, **-t** (*je dors, tu dors, il/elle dort*)
2. In the plural, both consonants are kept before adding the standard plural endings **-ons**, **-ez**, **-ent**.

4.9.1 Dormir

{AUDIO}

Infinitif	dormir <i>to sleep</i>
Participe passé	dormi
Participe présent	dormant
Impératif	dors dormons dormez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	dors	dormais	dormis
tu	dors	dormais	dormis
il/elle	dort	dormait	dormit
nous	dormons	dormions	dormîmes
vous	dormez	dormiez	dormîtes
ils/elles	dorment	dormaient	dormirent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	dormirai	dormirais
tu	dormiras	dormirais
il/elle	dormira	dormirait
nous	dormirons	dormirions
vous	dormirez	dormiriez
ils/elles	dormiront	dormiraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	dorme	dormisse
que tu	dormes	dormisses
qu'il/elle	dorme	dormît
que nous	dormions	dormissions
que vous	dormiez	dormissiez
qu'ils/elles	dorment	dormissent

Find more about Group 3 Action words on page 426.

4.10 Forty-nine action words (4)



{Second Round} Please check the word cloud and the next 7 x 7 action words table. While the first 147 words (see page 100, 186 and 265) represent around 73% of all action words you'll see in your life, this fourth set represents another 6%.

In this first round, learning the words is optional; however, read them at least once because you'll soon need to know them all.



Word cloud 4.2 – Action words 148-196

{AUDIO} The percentages in the table indicate the cumulative frequency, including the 7 x 7 words of Level 1-3. Group 3 and 2 **participes passé** are shown in blue and green. Open www.gigafrench.com/actionwords04 for a quick smartphone check.

#	Infinitif	Participe passé	Infinitive	Past participle
148	conduire	conduit	to drive	driven
149	retenir	retenu	to hold back	held back
150	remarquer	remarqué	to notice	noticed
151	fixer	fixé	to fix	fixed
152	couper	coupé	to cut	cut
153	plaire	plu	to please	pleased
154	se taire	tu (être)	to keep quiet	kept quiet
74.4%				
155	revoir	revu	to see again	saw again
156	mener	mené	to lead	led
157	embrasser	embrassé	to kiss	kissed
158	saisir	saisi	to grasp	grasped
159	présenter	présenté	to present	presented
160	espérer	espéré	to hope	hoped
161	rejoindre	rejoint	to join	joined
75.3%				
162	sauter	sauté	to jump	jumped
163	choisir	choisi	to choose	chosen
164	annoncer	annoncé	to announce	announced
165	couvrir	couvert	to cover	covered
166	préférer	préféré	to prefer	preferred
167	éloigner	éloigné	to keep away	kept away
168	échapper	échappé	to escape	escaped
76.2%				

169	demeurer	demeuré	to remain	remained
170	abandonner	abandonné	to abandon	abandoned
171	rêver	rêvé	to dream	dreamed
172	éprouver	éprouvé	to feel	felt
173	tenter	tenté	to try	tried
174	atteindre	atteint	to reach	reached
175	assurer	assuré	to assure	assured

77.1%

176	appuyer	appuyé	to lean	leant
177	chanter	chanté	to sing	sung
178	réveiller	réveillé	to wake up	woken up
179	relever	relevé	to pick up	picked up
180	accompagner	accompagné	to accompany	accompanied
181	murmurer	murmuré	to murmur	murmured
182	traîner	traîné	to drag	dragged

77.9%

183	hésiter	hésité	to hesitate	hesitated
184	charger	chargé	to load	loaded
185	réussir	réussi	to succeed	succeeded
186	emporter	emporté	to take away	taken away
187	couler	coulé	to sink	sunk
188	amuser	amusé	to amuse	amused
189	proposer	proposé	to propose	proposed

78.8%

190	naître	né (être)	to be born	been born
191	souffrir	souffert	to suffer	suffered
192	intéresser	intéressé	to interest	interested
193	surprendre	surpris	to surprise	surprised
194	étonner	étonné	to astonish	astonished
195	secouer	secoué	to shake	shaken
196	allumer	allumé	to switch on	switched on

79.5%

4.11 Imperative: Orders and advice

{AUDIO} Orders and advice are part of everyday life: *come here, give me that, don't do that again, go away*. While the English system of orders and advice is as easy as one can imagine – *do it!* versus *don't do it!* –, the French system is more 'involved'. You have two forms: 1) an informal imperative for family members, children or close friends and 2) a more formal one in situations when you speak to a person you don't know, especially older people.

1. When giving an order to a family member, a child or a close friend, use the *informal singular imperative*. This is the 2nd person singular of the present tense (**Agis ! Do something!**).

The exception to the rule: action words of Group 1, those ending in **-er**, use the 3rd person singular (**Caresse !**)

2. In all other cases (in formal situations AND when giving orders to more than one person), use the 2nd person plural: **Agissez! Caressez!**

In our example, **agis** is the 2nd person singular of **agir** *to act, to do something, to take action*; **agissez** is the 2nd person plural. (See page 362 for the complete picture of **agir**.)

	Positive advice or order <i>'Do something!'</i>	Negative advice or order <i>'Don't do anything!'</i>
Singular (1 person)		
you (informal: family and friends)	Agis !	N'agis pas !
you (formal)	Agissez !	N'agissez pas !
Plural (>1 person)		
you (informal: family and friends)	Agissez !	N'agissez pas !
you (formal)	Agissez !	N'agissez pas !

4.12 Participé présent & Gérondif

{AUDIO} French has two participles, the now familiar **participe passé** (for example **fait** *done*, **allé** *gone*, **mangé** *eaten*), but also a **participe présent**. While the first is frequently used, in particular to form the composed tenses of actions words, you'll see the second less often.

	Infinitive		Participe passé	Participe présent
Group 1	caresser	<i>to caress</i>	caressé	caessant
Group 2	agir	<i>to act</i>	agi	agissant
Group 3	dormir	<i>to sleep</i>	dormi	dormant
	prendre	<i>to take</i>	pris	prenant
	venir	<i>to come</i>	venu	venant
	mettre	<i>to put</i>	mis	mettant

To form a *present participle*

- Take the 1st person plural of the *present tense*: nous caress**ons**
- Drop the **nous** and the **-ons** ending: caress–
- Add **-ant**.

Three exceptions:

- **avoir** → **ayant**
- **être** → **étant**
- **savoir** → **sachant**

The most current use of the **participe présent** is the combination of **en + participe présent** which is called **gérondif gerund**. The **gérondif** expresses an action that is related to another action, the main action:

Gérondif: en partant	Main action word: arriver
----------------------	---------------------------

En partant tôt,	nous arriverons à l'heure.
-----------------	----------------------------

By leaving early,	we'll arrive on time.
-------------------	-----------------------

Use the **gérondif** to

1. Describe simultaneity (English: *while, upon*):

En allant faire les courses, j'ai rencontré M. Tartempion.

While doing the grocery shopping, I met M. Thingummy.

2. Describe how and why (English: *by*)

C'est **en étudiant** cinq heures par jour que tu apprendras vite le français.

*You'll learn French quickly by studying 5 hours a day. (Word by word: It's **by studying** five hours a day that you'll learn French quickly.)*

3. Replace a relative clause (used in writing or formal speech only):

les réfugiés **venant** de Syrie (qui viennent de Syrie)

the refugees **who come** from Syria

Important preview: In English, the *present participle* generally has the form **[verb]+ing** and is extensively used: *going, working, driving*. French, instead, uses the **participle présent** with parsimony. In particular, many common uses of the English *present participle* CANNOT be translated word-by-word into French. For details and pitfalls, see page xxx.

4.13 Présent: Ten Action Words (2)

{AUDIO} The following action words – **prendre** *to take*, **devoir** *to have to, must*, **mettre** *to put*, **suivre** *to follow*, **croire** *to believe*, etc. – are among the 150 most frequent French words. Learn them today.

	prendre <i>to take</i> <i>I take, etc.</i>	devoir <i>must</i> <i>I must, etc.</i>	
je	prends	dois	I
tu	prends	dois	you
il/elle	prend	dois	he/she
nous	prenons	devons	we
vous	prenez	devez	you
ils/elles	prennent	doivent	they
Part. passé	pris	dû	
See page	426	495	

Use **prendre** as a template for

apprendre *to learn* (j'apprends – tu apprends – il/elle apprend, etc.)

comprendre *to understand* (je comprends – tu comprends – il/elle comprend, etc.)

surprendre *to surprise, discover* (je surprends – tu surprends – il/elle surprend, etc.)

	mettre <i>to put</i> <i>I put, etc.</i>	suivre <i>to follow</i> <i>I follow, etc.</i>	
je	mets	suis	I
tu	mets	suis	you
il/elle	met	suit	he/she
nous	mettons	suivons	we
vous	mettez	suivez	you
ils/elles	mettent	suivent	they
Part. passé	mis	suivi	
See page	499	519	

Use **mettre** as a template for

remettre *to put back ; to hand over* (je remets – tu remets – il/elle remet, etc.)

permettre *to allow, authorize* (je permets, tu permets, il/elle permet, etc.)

promettre *to promise* (je promets, tu promets, il/elle promet, etc.)

admettre *to admit* (j'admets, tu admets, il/elle admet, etc.)

soumettre *to subdue, defeat*

commettre *to commit, perpetrate*

transmettre *to transmit*

compromettre *to compromise, jeopardise*

Use **suivre** as a template for

poursuivre *to pursue, hunt* (je poursuis – tu poursuis – il/elle poursuit, etc.)

	croire <i>to believe</i> <i>I believe, etc.</i>	connaître <i>to know</i> <i>I know, etc.</i>	
je	crois	connais	I
tu	crois	connais	you
il/elle	croit	connaît	he/she
nous	crojons	connaissons	we
vous	croyez	connaissez	you
ils/elles	croient	connaissent	they
Part. passé	cru	connu	
See page	510	526	

Use **connaître** as a template for

reconnaître *to recognise* (je reconnais – tu reconnais – il/elle reconnaît, etc.)

méconnaître *to be ignorant of* (je méconnaiss – tu méconnaiss – il/elle méconnaît, etc.)

	vivre <i>to live</i> <i>I live, etc.</i>	mourir <i>to die</i> <i>I die, etc.</i>	
je	vis	meurs	I
tu	vis	meurs	you
il/elle	vit	meurt	he/she
nous	vivons	mourons	we
vous	vivez	mourez	you
ils/elles	vivent	meurent	they
Part. passé	vécu	mort (être)	
See page	505	506	

Use **vivre** as a template for

survivre *to survive* (je survis – tu survis – il/elle survit, etc.)

revivre *to relive, to go through again* (je revis – tu revis – il/elle revit, etc.)

	écrire <i>to write</i> <i>I write, etc.</i>	rire <i>to laugh</i> <i>I laugh, etc.</i>	
j'/je	écris	ris	I
tu	écris	ris	you
il/elle	écrit	rit	he/she
nous	écrivons	rions	we
vous	écrivez	riez	you
ils/elles	écrivent	rient	they
Part. passé	écrit	ri	
See page	527	500	

Use **écrire** as a template for

décrire *to describe* (je décris – tu décris – il/elle décrit, etc.)

réécrire *to write again* (je réécris – tu réécris – il/elle réécrit, etc.)

Use **rire** as a template for

sourire *to smile* (je souris – tu souris – il/elle sourit, etc.)



Sainte-Anne, Martinique | © Copyright: Marie de France

II. Grammar

4.14 y & en

4.14.1 y

{AUDIO} **Y** is a so-called adverbial pronoun and means *there*. It replaces either places or things introduced by an **action word**.

1. Places

Je vais à Paris.	J'y vais.	I'm going <i>to Paris</i> .	I'm going <i>there</i> .
Je travaille aux États-Unis.	J'y travaille.	I work <i>in the US</i> .	I work <i>there</i> .
J'habite en Italie.	J'y habite.	I live <i>in Italy</i> .	I live <i>there</i> .

As you see, a place can be introduced by any preposition of place such as **à** (or **au** | **aux** | **à l'** | **à la**), **en**, **sur**, **sous**, etc.

2. Things introduced by **à**, **au**, **aux**, **à l'**, and **à la**

Je pense à tes aventures.	J'y pense.	I'm thinking <i>about your adventures</i> .	I'm thinking <i>about them</i> .
Je réfléchirai à ta proposition.	J'y réfléchirai.	I'll be thinking <i>about your proposal</i> .	I'll be thinking <i>about it</i> .
Je tiens à mon travail.	J'y tiens.	I care very much <i>about my job</i> .	I care very much <i>about it</i> .

This type of transformation (**à mon travail** → **y**) is only possible with action words followed by **à**.

Note also that when an action word is followed by **à + a person**, you CANNOT use *y*! In these cases you need to use the indirect object pronouns **me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur**.

Je parle à Bruno .	Je lui parle.
I am talking to Bruno.	I am talking to him.
J'ai écrit à Charlotte .	Je lui ai écrit.
I wrote to Charlotte.	I wrote to her.

4.14.2 en

{AUDIO} The pronoun **en** replaces a quantity which is either

- introduced by the partitive articles **du, de la, de l', and des**
- numbers (1, 7, 33, etc.)
- adverbs or expressions of quantity such as **beaucoup de, un peu de, un litre de, un kilo de, une bouteille de**, etc.

It also replaces things introduced by **de, du, de la, de l', des**.

1. Replacing quantities introduced by **partitive articles**

Je prendrai de l'eau .	J' en prendrai.	I'll take <i>water</i> .	I'll take <i>it</i> .
Ne mange pas de gâteau .	N' en mange pas.	Don't eat <i>cake</i> .	Don't eat <i>it</i> .
Je ne mangerai pas de grenouilles .	Je n' en mangerai pas.	I won't eat <i>frogs</i> .	I won't eat <i>them</i> .

2. Replacing quantities introduced by **numbers**

Always repeat the quantity or the adverb of quantity:

Je voudrais deux capotes .	J' en voudrais deux .	I'd like <i>two</i> <i>condoms</i> .	I'd like <i>two</i> .
--------------------------------------	--	---	-----------------------

3. Replacing quantities introduced by expressions or adverbs of **quantity**

Always repeat the quantity or the adverb of quantity:

Je voudrais une bouteille de vin.	J' en voudrais une.	I'd like a <i>bottle of wine.</i>	I'd like <i>one.</i>
Je voudrais un kilo de cerises.	J' en voudrais un kilo.	I'd like a <i>kilo of cherries.</i>	I'd like <i>one kilo.</i>
Je ne prendrai pas beaucoup de sucre.	Je n' en prendrai pas beaucoup.	I won't take a <i>lot of sugar.</i>	I won't take a lot of it.

4. Replacing things introduced by **de, du, de la, de l', des**

En is often used after action words intrinsically followed by **de**, for example **parler de** or **rêver de**:

Il parle souvent de ses aventures.	Il en parle souvent.	He speaks often <i>about his adventures.</i>	He speaks often <i>about them.</i>
--	--------------------------------	---	---------------------------------------

En is both a *preposition* and an *adverb* and can have many different meanings.

Space or time	Nous arriverons à Marseille en trois heures.	We'll arrive in Marseille in three hours.
Month	En novembre, le temps à Paris est écœurant.	In November, the weather in Paris is disgusting.
Destination	Demain il va en Angleterre.	Tomorrow he goes to England.
Means of transport	Nous allons faire un tour à bicyclette.	We will go around by bicycle.

En is also part of idioms:

Je n'en peux plus !	I've had enough!
J'en ai assez !	
J'en ai marre ! <i>fam.</i>	I'm fed up!
Ne t'en fais pas.	Don't worry.
Tu t'en vas?	Are you leaving?
Il n'en a rien à foutre.	He doesn't give a fuck.

4.15 Nouns (4)

4.15.1 Imports

{AUDIO} Nouns imported from other languages are usually masculine: le smartphone, le jazz, le basket, le tennis, le panini. Pizza remains **la** pizza.

4.15.2 Irregulars

Some nouns are irregular:

	Singular	Plural
eye	l'œil <i>m.</i>	les yeux
heaven	le ciel	les cieux
Mr.	Monsieur	Messieurs
Mrs.	Madame	Mesdames

Others have only a plural form:

Plural

les vacances <i>f.</i>	holidays
les environs <i>m.</i>	surroundings
les gens <i>m.</i>	people
les mœurs <i>f.</i>	customs, traditions

Proper nouns don't take a final **-s**.

Plural

les Obama	the Obamas
les Kennedy	the Kennedys
les Roosevelt	the Roosevelts

4.16 Adjectives (4)



{Second Round}

4.16.1 **-ain, -ein**

{AUDIO} In the following examples, the masculine forms are nasal (singular: **-ain, -ein**; plural: **-ains, -eins**) while the feminine forms are not. As always, apply the **ES rule** to obtain the feminine and the plural forms.

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular	certain [sɛʁtɛ̃]	certaine [sɛʁtɛn]
	Plural	certain s [sɛʁtɛ̃]	certain es [sɛʁtɛn]

Masc. ending	Fem. ending	Masculine	Feminine	
-ain	-aine	certain	certaine	certain, sure
		humain	humaine	human
		lointain	lointaine	distant, remote
		américain	américaine	American
		prochain	prochaine	next
		vain	vaine	useless, pointless
		romain	romaine	Roman
		vilain	vilaine	awful, dreadful
		sain	saine	healthy, well
		mondain	mondaine	society
		souterrain	souterraine	underground
		africain	africaine	African
		républicain	républicaine	republican
		contemporain	contemporaine	contemporary
		urbain	urbaine	urban
-ein	-eine	plein	pleine	full, filled
		serein	sereine	calm, relaxed

4.16.2 –on, -en

The adjectives ending in **–on** and **–en** double the final **–n** consonant. Again, the masculine forms are nasal (singular: –on, –ien; plural: –ons, –iens) while the feminine forms are not.

Gender

Number		Masculine	Feminine
		Singular	mignon [miɲɔ̃]
Number	Plural	mignons [miɲɔ̃]	mignon nes [miɲɔ̃n]

Masc. ending	Fem. ending	Masc.	Fem.			
-on	-onne	mignon	mignon ne	cute		
		cochon	cochon ne	naughty, dirty, filthy		
		couillon	couillon ne	fucking stupid, foolish		
		bon	bon ne	good		
		breton	breton ne	Breton		
		-ien	-ienne	ancien	ancien ne	old
				quotidien	quotidien ne	daily
parisien	parisien ne			from Paris		
italien	italien ne			Italian		
aérien	aérien ne			aerial, air		
prolétarien	prolétarien ne			proletarian		
végétarien	végétarien ne			vegetarian		

4.16.3 Vieux & beau

A few French adjectives go before the noun, among them **beau**, **nouveau** and **vieux**. These three adjectives have a particular singular form when placed before masculine nouns that start with a vowel or a mute *h*.

un beau garçon an attractive boy

un **bel** homme an attractive man
 une belle femme an attractive women

un nouveau livre a new book
 un **nouvel** appartement a new apartment
 une nouvelle maison a new house

un vieux Monsieur an old gentleman
 un **vieil** homme an old man
 une vieille femme an old woman

	Singular			Plural	
	Masc.	Masc. before vowel or mute <i>h</i>	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
attractive	beau	bel	belle	beaux	belles
new	nouveau	nouvel	nouvelle	nouveaux	nouvelles
old	vieux	vieil	vieille	vieux	vieilles

4.17 Jokers (4)

4.17.1 The next 21 Jokers

Open www.gigafrench.com/jokers04 for a quick smartphone check.

{AUDIO}

64	debout	standing	adv
65	mieux	better	adv
66	tout de suite	immediately	adv
67	dès	as soon as; starting at	adv; prep
68	fort	hard; strong	adv; adj
69	à gauche	left, on the left	prep
70	à droite	right, on the right	prep

71	davantage	more	adv
72	surtout	above all, in particular	adv
73	pourtant	yet, however	adv
74	autour	around	adv
75	dessus	on it	adv
76	dessous	under it, below	adv
77	malgré	despite	prep
78	assez	enough	adv
79	près de	near	prep
80	or	but, yet	conj
81	alors	in that case; well	adv
82	tard	late	adv
83	tôt	early	adv
84	d'abord	first	adv

4.17.2 Adverbs



{Second Round} In Level 3 (page 293) you heard that the vast majority of adverbs are derived from adjectives (feminine form plus the suffix **-ment**). In general, these adverbs correspond to English adverbs ending with **-ly**.

{AUDIO} Only a few of these adverbs are irregular:

- Some, but not all adjectives ending in **-ent** or **-ant**. They take the adverb ending **-emment** or **-amment**:
 - **différent** → **différemment** *differently*
 - **évident** → **évidemment** *evidently*
 - **récent** → **récemment** *recently*
 - **apparent** → **apparemment** *apparently*
 - **conscient** → **consciemment** *consciously*
 - **inconscient** → **inconsciemment** *unconsciously*
 - **fréquent** → **fréquemment** *frequently*
 - **prudent** → **prudemment** *prudently, carefully*

- **violent** → **violemment** *violently*
 - **indifférent** → **indifféremment** *indifferently*
 - **innocent** → **innocemment** *innocently*
 - **patient** → **patiemment** *patiently*
 - **décent** → **décemment** *decently*
-
- **constant** → **constamment** *constantly*
 - **courant** → **couramment** *frequently, fluently (language)*
 - **suffisant** → **suffisamment** *sufficiently*
 - **étonnant** → **étonnamment** *amazingly*
 - **brillant** → **brillamment** *brilliantly*
 - **méchant** → **méchamment** *maliciously, badly*
 - **abondant** → **abondamment** *abundantly*
 - **puissant** → **puissamment** *powerfully*
 - **incessant** → **incessamment** *shortly, in next to no time*
2. Some words convert the final **-e** into an **-é-**:
- **profonde** → **profondément** *profoundly*
 - **précise** → **précisément** *precisely*
 - **énorme** → **énormément** *enormously*
 - **commune** → **communément** *commonly*
 - **uniforme** → **uniformément** *uniformly*
 - **opportune** → **opportunément** *opportunistically*
 - **aveugle** → **aveuglément** *blindly*

Final reminder

Conjunctions (*literally: joining together*) link similar words or groups of words. French uses two types of conjunctions:

1. Coordinating conjunctions join elements with an equal importance. There are only 7 of them: **et** *and*, **ou** *or*, **mais** *but*, **donc** *thus*, **car** *for, because*, **or** *yet*, **ni** *neither*.

2. Subordinating conjunctions link dependent clauses to main clauses. The most important one is **que** *that*. There are about 50 subordinating conjunctions. You will easily identify them because most finish with **que** (*parce que because, alors que while, whereas*) or incorporate **que** (*lorsque when, puisque since [reason]*).

4.17.3 Prepositions

{AUDIO} You can classify prepositions by their use. See here prepositions of time, ordered by frequency of use.

de	de midi à minuit	from noon to midnight
à	à 10 heures	at 10 o'clock
dans	dans un mois	in a month (future)
en	en un mois	in (the course of) a month
après	après l'éjaculation	after ejaculation
depuis	depuis le début	from the beginning
avant	avant l'orgasme	before orgasm
pendant	pendant les vacances	during the holidays
jusque	jusqu'à la fin	until the end
dès	dès la semaine prochaine	as early as next week

4.18 Bits and Pieces

4.18.1 Indefinite pronouns

{AUDIO} Indefinite pronouns are, as their name implies, unspecific and vague. It's up to you to imagine the people and things someone is talking about. Indefinite pronouns can be

1. The subject of a sentence:

A Paris, **tout le monde** fait l'amour au moins six fois par semaine. In Paris, *everybody* makes love at least six times a week.

2. The object of a sentence:

Je te présenterai **quelqu'un**... I'll introduce *someone* to you...
Cela ne plaira pas à **tout le monde**. That won't please *everybody*.

For today, please memorize the following list:

tout le monde	everybody
tout	everything
plusieurs	several
quelqu'un	somebody
quelque chose	something
chacun(e)	each one
certain(e)s	certain ones

Read these words at least twice:

d'autres	others
quiconque	anyone (else)
soi	oneself, yourself, himself, herself, itself
chez soi	at one's home, at your home
un tel, une telle	somebody
quelques-uns	some, a few

Find a detailed discussion of indefinite pronouns on page xxx.

4.18.2 Capitalization

You'll use capitalized words for people (Félix, Oscar, Colin, Élise, François), legal entities (Google), nations (la France, l'Allemagne, l'Italie, l'Espagne, l'Angleterre), la géographie, (le pôle Nord), and book titles (L'Être et le Néant). You'll further capitalize Monsieur and Madame with or without titles.

4.18.3 Silent letters (4)

{AUDIO} The letters C, R, F, L (careful), B, K and Q are usually pronounced at the end of a word. Let's continue with the letter L:

L	Pronounce the final L		Don't pronounce the final L	
			Vowel + il:	
	ciel	sky	le soleil	sun
	journal	newspaper	un œil	eye
	cheval	horse	le travail	work
	hôtel	hotel	le sommeil	sleep
	sol	ground	le détail	detail
	animal	animal	le cul	ass
	poil	(body) hair		

4.19 Reading the News

{AUDIO} {AUDIO} Time for your next newspaper extract. Dissect the 100 words about the most improbable candidate of all times to the presidency of the United States of America. No pasará!

1. Action word

2. Noun

3. Adjectif

Le « **tout-sauf-Trump** » s'**organise** chez les **républicains** | Jeudi, c'**est** le **candidat républicain** à la **présidentielle** de 2012 [Mitt Romney] qui **a attaqué** frontalement le **milliardaire**. « *Donald Trump est un **charlatan**, un **imposteur**. Ses **promesses** ne **valent** pas mieux qu'un **diplôme** de l'**université** Trump. Il **prend** les **Américains** pour des **pigeons** »*, a-t-il dit, en **allusion** à l'**institution** désormais **défunte**, au **centre** d'une **procédure judiciaire** **lancée** par d'**anciens** **étudiants**. Et d'**insister** sur le **tempérament** « **instable** » du **milliardaire**, **indigne** de la **présidence** selon lui, sur sa « **malhonnêteté** », sa « **cupidité** », sa « **misogynie** » et sa **vulgarité**.

The “all-but-Trump” is being organized among **Republicans** | Thursday the Republican presidential candidate in 2012 [Mitt Romney] attacked the billionaire frontally. “Donald Trump is a charlatan, a fraud. His promises are no better than a degree from Trump University. He takes the Americans for pigeons”, he said, referring to the now-defunct institution which is at the center of legal proceedings launched by former students. And he insisted on the “unstable” temperament of the billionaire – unworthy of the presidency according to him –, his “dishonesty”, his “greed”, his “misogyny” and his “vulgarity”.

© 2016 Le Monde, France's best newspaper. Find the entire text at http://www.lemonde.fr/elections-americaines/article/2016/03/03/le-tout-sauf-trump-s-organise-chez-les-republicains_4876280_829254.html – Accessed March 2, 2016.

Read the text several times and get accustomed to the idea of analysing paragraphs word by word and understand the function of every single word.

III. Results & Preview

1.

Can you say

je **vais** – tu **vas** – il/elle **va**

nous **allons** – vous **allez** – ils/elles **vont**

I, you go, he or she goes / we, you, they go

j'**allais** – tu **allais** – il/elle **allait**

nous **allions** – vous **alliez** – ils/elles **allaient**

I, you, he or she went / we, you, they went

I, you, he or she used to go / we, you, they used to go

j'**irai** – tu **iras** – il/elle **ira**

nous **irons** – vous **irez** – ils/elles **iront**

I, you, he or she will go / we, you, they will go

j'**irais** – tu **irais** – il/elle **irait**

nous **irions** – vous **iriez** – ils/elles **iraient**

I, you, he or she would go / we, you, they would go

2.

Can you recite the **présent** of:

dormir *to sleep*

sentir *to feel*

mentir *to lie*

partir *to leave*

sortir *to go out*

servir *to serve*

3.

Do you know how to give orders using **agir** *to act* and **caresser** *to caress*?

4.

Have you memorized the *present tense* of **prendre** *to take*, **devoir** *to have to, must*, **mettre** *to put*, **suivre** *to follow*, **croire** *to believe*, etc.

5.

Have you enjoyed the most recent list of so enjoyably British adverbs?

6.

And do you remember that you should avoid soda drinks and processed foods and, instead, drink water and eat fruits and vegetables?

Well, then you have been promoted to Level 5!

Outlook

In Level 5, you'll explore Group 2 action words ending in –ir; manage double pronouns; give orders with pronouns; and – cherry on top – discover so-called **pronominal action words** and caress yourself. Savour an exclusive preview of these miraculous words:

se regarder *to look at each other*

se parler *to talk to each other*

se téléphoner *to phone each other*

se retrouver *to meet each other*

s'aimer *to love each other*

s'embrasser *to kiss*

se caresser *to caress each other*

s'envoyer en l'air *to bonk, to hump, to bang, to screw, to shag*

se disputer *to argue*

se détester *to hate each other*

se quitter *to leave each other*

As so often, what seems auspicious can at times end in despair. In any case, 'pronominal action words' are in the domain of love.

5 « Aesthetic » Medicine



Copyright © 2016 N. Allan – London

2016~4 Edition

{ GigaFrench.com/level05 } **La médecine « esthétique »** | Le Burqistan existe-t-il ? Oui, malheureusement. Imaginez cet européen qui traverse l'Atlantique pour visiter l'Équateur, les États-Unis ou le Brésil, quelle est sa toute première vision ? Partout les mêmes petits nez, traits lissés, sourires figés, yeux écarquillés – des masques de femme, en somme. Bienvenus dans le monde de la « médecine esthétique », bienvenus dans le Burqistan occidental !

Il n'y a pas que le visage que l'on transforme. Comme dans un monstrueux jeu de morphing, vous pouvez augmenter ou réduire la taille de vos seins, éclaircir votre peau, vous faire épiler au laser, faire un lifting de la main, vous faire liposucer ; ou, pourquoi pas, faire disparaître les petites et grandes lèvres de vos parties génitales. De toute évidence, les « médecins » de la chirurgie « esthétique » n'ont peur de rien. Le plus consternant ? Les hyménoplasties pour vous refaire une virginité.

Le plus inhumain dans tout ça ? Toucher au visage, miroir spirituel de la personne humaine. Les « chirurgiens esthétiques » – ou

Does Burqistan exist? Unfortunately yes. Imagine a European crossing the Atlantic Ocean to visit Ecuador, the United States or Brazil, what is his very first vision? Everywhere the same little noses, smoothed facial expressions, fixed smiles, and wide-open eyes – women's masks, in short. Welcome to the world of "aesthetic medicine", welcome to Western Burqistan!

It's not just the face that is transformed. Like in a monstrous morphing game, you can increase or decrease the size of your breasts, clear up your skin, have your body hair removed with lasers, get your hand lifted, get yourself liposucked; or why not make the small and large genital labia disappear. Obviously, the "doctors" of the "aesthetic" surgery aren't afraid of anything. The more appalling? The hymenoplasty to rebuild virginity.

The most inhuman of all this? Touching the face, spiritual mirror of the human person. The "cosmetic surgeons" – or

devons-nous les appeler « bouchers de l'apparence » ? – le mutilé, l'abîmé, le 'frankensteinisé'... pis encore : le chosifient. Encore une fois, leur répertoire est vaste : vous aurez des injections de botox (qui vous confèrent un look de poupée gonflable), vous vous ferez charcuter le nez (rhinoplastie) et les paupières (blépharoplastie). Vous aurez des implants du menton ou de nouvelles pommettes et, cerise sur le gâteau, des lèvres siliconées. N'oublions pas le must, l'intervention de base : vous faire faire tirer la peau en long, en large et en travers.

Qui sont les « chirurgiens » et « médecins » qui offrent ce genre de services ? Des hypochondriaques effrayés par les maladies horribles qui nous font souffrir et mourir ? Des dégonflés de la vieillesse et de la mort qui gonflent lèvres, seins et fesses pour compenser leur angoisse ? Ou, au contraire, tout simplement et très positivement, des âmes sensibles en quête de perfection artistique ? Qui le saura jamais ! En tout cas, les plus avides ont pu être corrompus par l'argent facile et l'idée d'exploiter la faiblesse des

should we call them "butchers of appearance"? – maim it, damage it, 'frankensteinize' it... in other words, they reify it. Again, their repertoire is wide: you'll have botox injections (which give you an inflatable doll's appearance), you'll have your nose butchered (rhinoplasty) as well as your eyelids (blepharoplasty). You'll have chin implants or new cheekbones and, the cherry on top the cake, siliconized lips. Let's not forget the must-have, the basic intervention: having your skin pulled in every conceivable direction.

Who are the "surgeons" and "doctors" who provide such services? Hypochondriacs frightened by horrible diseases that make us suffer and die? Deflated chickens terrorized by old age and death who inflate lips, breasts and buttocks to compensate their anxiety? Or, instead, simply and very positively, sensitive souls in search of artistic perfection? Who will ever know! Anyway, the most greedy may have been corrupted by easy money and the idea of exploiting the weakness of women with no self-esteem. Poor

femmes sans estime de soi
Malheureux Hippocrate ! Si ses os
non siliconés ne sont pas tombés en
poussière, il doit se retourner dans
sa tombe !

Qui sont les victimes de cette
machinerie infernale ? Des êtres à
l'égo fragile qui se font arnaquer en
dépensant des fortunes pour
l'illusion de rester éternellement
jeunes ? Qui jettent leur visage à la
poubelle dans un pacte faustien ?
Ou bêtement des brebis soumises
au diktat masculin de la mode
féminine ? Toujours est-il que ces
pauvres femmes portent sans le
savoir l'intolérable et laide burqa
qui nous fait tant horreur,
l'invisible mais irréversible, la plus
sournoise des burqas.

Avez-vous prévu un voyage sur le
continent américain ? Préparez-
vous : vous allez pénétrer au
Burqistan occidental !

Hippocrates! If his non-
siliconized bones have not
fallen into dust, he must be
turning in his grave!

Who are the victims of this
infernal machinery? Beings
with fragile egos who get
scammed into spending
fortunes on the illusion of
staying young forever?
Who throw their faces into
the trash in a Faustian
pact? Or simply sheep
subjected to the male
dictates of female fashion?
Still, these poor women
are unknowingly wearing
the intolerable and ugly
burqa which makes our
skin crawl, the invisible but
irreversible and most
insidious of all burqas.

Have you planned a trip to
the American continent?
Prepare yourself: you will
be entering Western
Burqistan!

Words

{AUDIO}

la médecine	medicine	transformer	to transform
esthétique	aesthetic	monstrueux	monstrous
malheureusement	unfortunately	le jeu	game
oui	yes	le morphing	morphing
ce/cet	this	vous pouvez	you can
européen	European	augmenter	to increase
traverser	to cross	réduire	to reduce
l'Atlantique <i>m.</i>	Atlantic Ocean	la taille	size
visiter	to visit	le sein	breast
l'Équateur	Ecuador	éclaircir	to clear up
le Brésil	Brazil	la peau	skin
quelle est	what is	se faire épiler	to have your body hair removed
premier, première	first	le laser	laser
la vision	vision	faire un lifting	to get a lifting
même	same	la main	hand
petit	little	se faire	to get yourself
le nez	nose	liposucer	liposucked
le trait	feature, expression	pourquoi pas	why not
lissé	smoothed	faire disparaître	to make disappear
le sourire	smile	la lèvre	lip, labia
figé	fixed	les parties génétales	genitalia
les yeux	eyes	de toute évidence	obviously
écarquillé	wide-open	le médecin	physician
le masque	mask	avoir peur de	to be afraid of
en somme	in short	ils n'ont peur de	they aren't afraid of
bienvenus	welcome	rien	anything
occidental	Western	plus	most
il n'y pas que	it's not just		
le visage	face		

consternant	appalling	vous vous ferez charcuter	you'll have yourself butchered
hyménoplastie <i>f.</i>	hymenoplasty	la rhinoplastie	rhinoplasty
se refaire	to rebuild	la paupière	eyelid
la virginité	virginity	la blépharoplastie	blepharoplasty
inhumain	inhuman	un implant	implant
de tout ça	of all this	le menton	chin
toucher	to touch	nouveau, nouvelles	new
le miroir	mirror	les pommettes <i>f.</i>	cheekbone
spirituel	spiritual	la cerise	cherry
la personne	person	sur	on
humain	human	le gâteau	cake
le chirurgien	surgeon	siliconé	siliconized
devons-nous ?	should we?	oublier	to forget
appeler	to call	n'oublions pas	let's not forget
le boucher	butcher	le must	must-have
l'apparence <i>f.</i>	appearance	une intervention	intervention
mutiler	to mutilate, to maim	de base	basic
abîmer	to damage	tirer	to pull
frankensteïniser	to frankensteinize	se faire tirer la peau	to have your skin pulled
pis encore	even worse	en long, en large et en travers	in every conceivable direction
chosifier	to reify (transform in merchandise)	offrir	to offer
encore une fois	(once) again	le genre	type
le répertoire	repertoire	le service	service
vaste	wide	un hypochondriaque	hypochondriac
vous aurez	you'll have	effrayé	frightened
une injection	injection	la maladie	disease
le botox	botox	horrible	horrible
conférer	to give		
la poupée	doll		
gonflable	inflatable		
charcuter	to butcher		

souffrir	to suffer	l'os, les os	bone, bones
un dégonflé	deflated; not very courageous	non siliconé	non-siliconized
la vieillesse	old age	tomber en poussière	to fall into dust
la mort	death	se retourner dans sa tombe	to be turning in his grave
gonfler	to inflate	la victime	victim
les fesses	buttocks	la machinerie	machinery
compenser	to compensate	infernal	infernal
angoisse <i>f.</i>	anxiety	un être	being
au contraire	instead, on the contrary	fragile	fragile
tout simplement	simply	se faire arnaquer	to get scammed
très	very		
positivement	positively	dépenser	to spend
une âme	soul	la fortune	fortune
sensible	sensible	une illusion	illusion
en quête de	in search of	rester jeune	to stay young
la perfection	perfection	éternellement	forever
artistique	artistic	jeter	to throw
qui le saura jamais	who will ever know	la poubelle	trash
en tout cas	anyway	le pacte	pact
avide	greedy	faustien	Faustian
corrompre	to corrupt	bêtement	simply; stupidly, foolishly
corrompu	corrupted	la brebis	ewe
l'argent <i>m.</i>	money	soumis à	subjected to
facile	easy	sans le savoir	unknowingly
l'idée <i>f.</i>	idea	le diktat	dictate
exploiter	to exploit	masculin	male
la faiblesse	weakness	la mode	fashion
l'estime <i>f.</i>	esteem	féminin	female
sans estime de soi	without self-esteem	toujours est-il que	still (the fact remains that)
malheureux	poor, unhappy		

5.1 Power Listening

Download the MP3 audio file of the text on your smartphone (www.gigafrench.com/download) and follow the instructions on Power Listening on page 34.

Remember that *GigaFrench's* Power Listening consists of cutting an audio file into portions of 2, 3 or 4 seconds and listening to these portions 5, 10 or even 15 or 20 times (examples: [slow audio](#), [normal audio](#)). As you listen, read the French text and check the English translation constantly. In this way you'll be able to:

1. figure out which word corresponds to which sound;
2. learn the meaning of the words;
3. memorise the spelling of the words.

If a single MP3 audio file lasts 2 minutes and if you listen to all “portions” 10 times, each round will last 20 minutes. During the following weeks you will repeat this exercise around 10 times for each audio file. In all, you'll therefore hear each portion of each audio file 100 times. Then will come the time when you'll understand, for the first time and distinctly, every single word of the MP3 audio file you are listening to. You'll have conquered an “island of total understanding”.

The 8 audio files of the current *GigaFrench* edition total about 20 minutes of recording. Listening to them 100 times requires about 30 hours. A perfect understanding – word for word! – of these 8 pieces with more than 2,600 words is just around the corner of your life. You can do it in less than two months! Go for the prize!

5.2 Preview

If your main interest is learning contemporary vocabulary, memorize all the words (100%) and then go straight on to *Tourism*, page 417.

For a more intimate experience of French, please do the whole chapter. The highlights are

- Group 2 action words: **agir** *to act*
- Pronominal action words: **se caresser** *to caress oneself or to caress each other*
- Four simple and composed tenses of **s'envoyer en l'air** *to bonk, have a roll in the hay*
- Double pronouns

As always, make full use of the audio files and listen to them until you can distinguish and understand every single word.

I. Action Words

5.3 Venir

{AUDIO}

Infinitif	venir <i>to come</i>
Participe passé	venu(e)(s)
Participe présent	venant
Impératif	viens venons venez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	viens	venais	vins
tu	viens	venais	vins
il/elle	vient	venait	vint
nous	venons	venions	vînmes
vous	venez	veniez	vîntes
ils/elles	viennent	venaient	vinrent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	viendrai	viendrais
tu	viendras	viendrais
il/elle	viendra	viendrait
nous	viendrons	viendrions
vous	viendrez	viendriez
ils/elles	viendront	viendraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	vienne	vinsses
que tu	viennes	vinsses
qu'il/elle	vienne	vînt
que nous	venions	vinssions
que vous	veniez	vinssiez
qu'ils/elles	viennent	vinssent

Following the same pattern:



Word cloud 6.1 – Venir, tenir, devenir, etc.

{AUDIO}

devenir (composed tenses with **être**) *to become*

intervenir (**être**) *to intervene*

prévenir *to let someone know, inform*

redevenir (**être**) *to become again*

revenir (**être**) *to come back*

se souvenir (**être**) *to remember*

+

tenir *to keep, hold*

appartenir *to belong*

obtenir *to obtain*

retenir *to hold back*

soutenir *to support*

The composed tenses of **venir** use **être**:

{AUDIO}	Passé composé <i>Perfect: I have come (+ I came)</i>	Plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect: I had come</i>	Passé antérieur <i>Preterit perfect: I had come</i>
je/j'	suis venu(e)	étais venu(e)	fus venu(e)
tu	es venu(e)	étais venu(e)	fus venu(e)
il/elle	est venu(e)	était venu(e)	fut venu(e)
nous	sommes venu(e)s	étions venu(e)s	fûmes venu(e)s
vous	êtes venu(e)s	étiez venu(e)s	fûtes venu(e)s
ils/elles	sont venu(e)s	étaient venu(e)s	furent venu(e)s

	Futur antérieur <i>Future perfect: I will have come</i>	Conditionnel passé <i>Past conditional: I would have come</i>
je	serai venu(e)	serais venu(e)
tu	seras venu(e)	serais venu(e)
il/elle	sera venu(e)	serait venu(e)
nous	serons venu(e)s	serions venu(e)s
vous	seriez venu(e)s	seriez venu(e)s
ils/elles	seront venu(e)s	seraient venu(e)s

	Subjonctif passé <i>Past subjunctive: that I came</i>	Subjonctif plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect subjunctive: that I had come</i>
que je	sois venu(e)	fusse venu(e)
que tu	sois venu(e)	fusses venu(e)
qu'il/elle	soit venu(e)	fût venu(e)
que nous	soyons venu(e)s	fussions venu(e)s
que vous	soyez venu(e)s	fussiez venu(e)s
qu'ils/ qu'elles	soient venu(e)s	fussent venu(e)s

5.4 Subjonctif (3)

{AUDIO} When expressing wishes, desires and preferences, the French language uses the *subjunctive tense*, the **subjonctif**. It also uses the **subjonctif** to express a feeling or emotion, a desire, a wish, an order and an expectation. Let's continue with expressions of emotions:

J'ai peur que...	I'm scared that...
Je crains que...	I fear that...
Je regrette que...	I regret (am sorry) that...

J'ai peur qu'il vienne .	I am scared <i>that he'll come</i> .
Je crains que ce soit trop tard.	I fear <i>that it is</i> too late.

5.5 Action words, Group 2

Remember: French grammar divides action words into three groups: Group 1 ending in **-er** (representing more than 95% of all French action words; see **caresser** to *caress*, page 246); Group 3 with approximately 300 words (page 317, 426, 476, etc.); and Group 2 presented here.

Group 2 French action words are uncommon (among the 1,500 most common French words, only 12 are action words from Group 2; see below, page 370). They end in **-ir** and their defining feature is the plural ending in **-issons**, **-issez** and **-issent**. The most important Group 2 action words are **agir** to *act, do something, take action*, **réfléchir** to *reflect, think*, **finir** to *finish, end*, **réussir** to *succeed*, and **nourrir** to *feed*.

5.5.1 Présent

Singular

j'	ag is	I	act
tu	ag is	you	act
il/elle	ag it	he/she	acts

Plural

nous	agiss ons	we	act
vous	agiss ez	you	act
ils/elles	agiss ent	they	act

{AUDIO} While reading and listening to the present tense of **agir** you'll understand that:

1. The 1st and 2nd person singular (j' **agis**, tu **agis**) are identical.
2. The pronunciation of the three singular forms (**agis–agis–agit**) is identical [aʒi].

5.5.2 Imparfait

To get the imperfect forms

- Take the 1st person plural of the present tense: nous agissons
- Drop the **–ons** ending: agiss–
- Add the imperfect endings: j'agiss**ais**, etc.

{AUDIO}

Singular

j'	agiss ais	I	acted
tu	agiss ais	you	acted
il/elle	agiss ait	he or she	acted

Plural

nous	agiss ions	we	acted
vous	agiss iez	you	acted
ils/elles	agiss aient	they	acted

As with all **imparfait** sextets,

1. The 1st person singular (j'agiss**ais**) and the 2nd person singular (tu agiss**ais**) are identical.
2. The pronunciation of the three singular forms (agiss**ais**–agiss**ais**–agiss**ait**) and the 3rd person plural form (agiss**aient**) is identical [aʒisɛ].

5.5.3 Futur

Attach the **Futur** endings (**-ai, -as, -a | -ons, -ez, -ont**) to the infinitive **agir**:

{AUDIO}

Singular

j'	agir ai	I will	act
tu	agir as	you will	act
il/elle	agir a	he/she will	act

Plural

nous	agir ons	we will	act
vous	agir ez	you will	act
ils/elles	agir ont	they will	act

While reading and listening to the **futur** of **agir** you'll notice that

1. The 1st person singular (j' **agirai**) and the 2nd person plural (vous **agirez**) sound identical [aʒiʁε].
2. The 2nd person singular (tu **agiras**) and the 3rd person singular (il/elle **agira**) sound identical [aʒiʁa].
3. The 1st person plural (nous **agirons**) and the 3rd person plural (ils/elles **agiront**) sound identical [aʒiʁɔ̃].

5.5.4 Conditionnel présent

Attach the endings of the **Présent conditionnel** (–ais, –ais, –ait | –ions, –iez, –aient) to the infinitive of **agir**:

{AUDIO}

Singular

j'	agirais	I would	act
tu	agirais	you would	act
il/elle	agirait	he/she would	act

Plural

nous	agirions	we would	act
vous	agiriez	you would	act
ils/elles	agiraient	they would	act

While reading and listening to the **conditionnel présent** of **agir** you'll find that the pronunciation of the three singular forms (**agirais**–**agirais**–**agirait**) and the 3rd person plural form (**agiraient**) is identical [aʒiʁε].

5.5.5 Subjonctif présent

{AUDIO}

To get the forms of the **subjonctif présent**

- Take the 3rd person plural of the present tense: ils agissent
- Drop the **-ent** ending: agiss-
- Add the present subjunctive endings **-e, -es -e | -ions, -iez, -ent** (que j'agisse, que tu agisses, qu'il/elle agisse, etc.)

Singular

que j'	agisse	that I	act
que tu	agisses	that you	act
que il/elle	agisse	that he/she	acts

Plural

que nous	agissions	that we	act
que vous	agissiez	that you	act
que ils/elles	agissent	that they	act

Again:

1. The endings of the 1st person singular (que j'agisse) and the 3rd person singular (que il/elle agisse) are identical.
2. The pronunciation of the three singular forms (agisse-agisses-agisse) and the 3rd person plural form (agissent) is identical [azis].

5.5.6 Passé simple

{AUDIO} Remember: When writing an historical account, use the **passé simple**. In spoken language, always use the **passé composé**. Never mix the two tenses in the same text.

Singular

j'	agis	I	acted
tu	agis	you	acted
il/elle	agit	he/she	acted

Plural

nous	agîmes	we	acted
vous	agîtes	you	acted
ils/elles	agirent	they	acted

While reading and listening to the **passé simple** of **agir** you'll find that

1. The 1st and 2nd person singular (j'ag**is**, tu ag**is**) are identical.
2. The three singular forms (j'ag**is**, tu ag**is**, il/elle ag**it**) sound identical [azi].
3. The 1st and 2nd person plural have an **î** in their ending.

5.5.7 Agir: simple tenses

{AUDIO}

Infinitif	agir
Participe passé	agi
Participe présent	agissant
Impératif	agis agissons agissez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
j'	agis	agissais	agis
tu	agis	agissais	agis
il/elle	agit	agissait	agit
nous	agissons	agissions	agîmes
vous	agissez	agissiez	agîtes
ils/elles	agissent	agissaient	agirent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
j'	agirai	agirais
tu	agiras	agirais
il/elle	agira	agirait
nous	agirons	agirions
vous	agirez	agiriez
ils/elles	agiront	agiraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que j'	agisse	agisse
que tu	agisses	agisses
qu'il/elle	agisse	agît
que nous	agissions	agissions
que vous	agissiez	agissiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	agissent	agissent

5.5.8 Agir: composed tenses

{AUDIO}

	Passé composé <i>Perfect: I (have) acted</i>	Plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect: I had acted</i>	Passé antérieur <i>Preterit perfect: I had acted (only in writing)</i>
j'	ai agi	avais agi	eus agi
tu	as agi	avais agi	eus agi
il/elle	a agi	avait agi	eut agi
nous	avons agi	avions agi	eûmes agi
vous	avez agi	aviez agi	eûtes agi
ils/elles	ont agi	avaient agi	eurent agi

	Futur antérieur <i>Future perfect: I will have acted</i>	Conditionnel passé <i>Past conditional: I would have acted</i>
j'	aurai agi	aurais agi
tu	auras agi	aurais agi
il/elle	aura agi	aurait agi
nous	aurons agi	aurions agi
vous	aurez agi	auriez agi
ils/elles	auront agi	auraient agi

	Subjonctif passé <i>Past subjunctive: that I acted</i>	Subjonctif plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect subjunctive: that I had acted</i>
que j'	aie agi	eusse agi
que tu	aies agi	eusses agi
qu'il/elle	ait agi	eût agi

que nous	ayons agi	eussions agi
que vous	ayez agi	eussiez agi
qu'ils/ elles	aient agi	eussent agi

5.5.9 Group 2: Frequent action words

{AUDIO} The following 12 Group 2 action words are among the 1,500 most frequent French words. Form the single tenses of **réfléchir** *to reflect, to think*, **finir** *to finish, to end*, **réussir** *to succeed*, and **nourrir** *to feed*.

finir	to finish, end
réussir	to succeed
réfléchir	to reflect, think
remplir	to fill
franchir	to cross, pass
nourrir	to feed
établir	to set up, create
envahir	to invade
réunir	to join, gather
fournir	to supply, provide
emplir	to fill
grandir	to grow, get taller



Word cloud 5.2 – Most frequent Group 2 action words



{Second Round} The following 14 Group 2 action words are among the 3,000 most frequent words.

obéir	to obey
trahir	to betray, let down
jouir	to enjoy, come (sexually speaking!)
gémir	to moan
vieillir	to grow old
unir	to unite
ralentir	to slow down
guérir	to cure, heal
réagir	to react
vomir	to throw up, vomit
pourrir	to rot, decay
punir	to punish
élargir	to widen, increase
garantir	to guarantee, secure

5.6 Pronominal Action Words

{AUDIO} Now comes the last great challenge of the Action Word Realm: the so-called *pronominal action words* (PAWs).

PAWs go with the pronouns **me – te – se | nous – vous – se**.

Look at a few infinitives first:

couper	to cut
se couper	to cut oneself
regarder	to look
se regarder	to look at oneself
laver	to wash
se laver	to wash oneself
caresser	to caresse
se caresser	to caresse oneself

Take a closer look at the **présent** of **se caresser** *to caress oneself* or *to caress each other*:

je	me caresse	I caress myself
tu	te caresses	you caress yourself
il/elle	se caresse	he/she caresses himself/herself
nous	nous caressons	we caress ourselves
		or
		we caress each other
vous	vous caressez	you caress yourselves
		or
		you caress each other
ils/elles	se caressent	they caress themselves
		or
		they caress each other

There are three classes of *pronominal actions words (PAW)*:

1. **Reflexive PAWs**

They express actions the subjects perform on themselves:

il/elle **se** caresse (he or she is alone in his/her bed)

2. **Reciprocal PAWs**

They express a reciprocal action between two or more persons (here we/you/they are at least 2):

nous **nous** caressons

vous **vous** caressez

ils/elles **se** caressent

3. **Idiomatic PAWs**

They don't always express a reflexive action, for example, **se souvenir de** *to remember*.

Let's first explore in detail **se caresser** which is used both as a reflexive PAW (in the sense of masturbation) and a reciprocal PAW (when two or more people participate in mutual caressing). Find more examples for the three classes on page 377.

5.6.1 Se caresser

{AUDIO}

Infinitive	se caresser <i>to caresse oneself / each other</i>
Participe passé	caressé
Participe présent	se caressant
Impératif	caresse-toi caressons-nous caressez-vous

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	me caresse	me caressais	me caressai
tu	te caresses	te caressais	te caressas
il/elle	se caresse	se caressait	se caressa
nous	nous caressons	nous caressions	nous caressâmes
vous	vous caressez	vous caressiez	vous caressâtes
ils/elles	se caressent	se caressaient	se caressèrent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	me caresserai	me caresserais
tu	te caresseras	te caresserais
il/elle	se caressera	se caresserait
nous	nous caresserons	nous caresserions
vous	vous caresserez	vous caresseriez
ils/elles	se caresseront	se caresseraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	me caresse	me caressasse
que tu	te caresses	te caressasses
qu'il/elle	se caresse	se caressât
que nous	nous caressions	nous caressassions
que vous	vous caressiez	vous caressassiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	se caressent	se caressassent

5.6.2 Caresser: composed tenses

{AUDIO}

	Passé composé <i>Perfect: I (have) caressed myself, etc.</i>	Plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect: I had caressed myself, etc.</i>
je	me suis caressé(e)	m'étais caressé(e)
tu	t'es caressé(e)	t'étais caressé(e)
il/elle	s'est caressé(e)	s'était caressé(e)
nous	nous sommes caressé(e)s	nous étions caressé(e)s
vous	vous êtes caressé(e)s	vous étiez caressé(e)s
ils/elles	se sont caressé(e)s	s'étaient caressé(e)s

	Futur antérieur <i>Future perfect: I will have caressed myself</i>	Conditionnel passé <i>Past conditional: I would have caressed myself</i>
je	me serai caressé(e)	me serais caressé(e)
tu	te seras caressé(e)	te serais caressé(e)
il/elle	se sera caressé(e)	se serait caressé(e)
nous	nous serons caressé(e)s	nous serions caressé(e)s
vous	vous serez caressé(e)s	vous seriez caressé(e)s
ils/elles	se seront caressé(e)s	se seraient caressé(e)s

	Subjonctif passé <i>Past subjunctive: that I caressed myself, etc.</i>
que je	me sois caressé(e)
que tu	te sois caressé(e)
qu'il/elle	se soit caressé(e)
que nous	nous soyons caressé(e)s
que vous	vous soyez caressé(e)s
qu'ils/ qu'elles	se soient caressé(e)s

Important note: Pronominal action words **always** form the composed tenses with **être**!

5.6.3 Negation

{AUDIO} To negate a pronominal action word, place **ne** before the pronoun (**me, te, se, nous, vous, se**) and **pas, jamais, plus**, etc. behind the action word.

Elle se caresse.

Elle **ne** se caresse **pas**.

Elle se caresse toujours.

Elle **ne** se caresse **jamais**.

In the composed tenses, place **pas, jamais, plus**, etc. behind the forms of the auxiliary **être**:

Elle s'est caressée.

Elle **ne** s'est **pas** caressée.

Elle s'est toujours caressée.

Elle **ne** s'est **jamais** caressée.

5.6.4 Imperative

{AUDIO} To form the imperative, attach **-toi, -nous**, and **-vous** to the action word:

Caresse-**toi!**

Caress yourself!

Caressons-**nous!**

Let's caress ourselves!

or

Let's caress each other!

Caressez-**vous!**

Caress yourselves!

or

Caress each other!

5.6.5 Body parts

{AUDIO} French pronominal verbs take the definite article (**le, la, les**) when associated with parts of the body; in English, you'll use possessive adjectives instead:

Je me suis lavé **les** cheveux.

I washed **my** hair.

Je vais me brosser **les** dents.

I'll brush **my** teeth.

5.6.6 Reflexive PAWs

{AUDIO}

s'appeler	to be called (je m'appelle = my name is)
se coucher	to go to bed
se caresser	to caress oneself
s'arrêter	to stop
s'endormir	to fall asleep
se réveiller	to wake up
se lever	to get up
se laver	to wash
se brosser	to brush
s'habiller	to get dressed
se promener	to take a walk

5.6.7 Reciprocal PAWs

{AUDIO} In English, you'll often use *each other* to represent the reciprocal action. The following list of the most frequent words could also be the script for a sentimental drama:

se regarder	to look at each other
se parler	to talk to each other
se téléphoner	to phone each other
se retrouver	to meet again
s'aimer	to love each other
s'embrasser	to kiss each other
se caresser	to caress each other
s'envoyer en l'air	to hump / to bonk / to bang
se disputer	to argue
se détester	to hate each other
se quitter	to separate

5.6.8 Idiomatic PAWs



{Second Round} {AUDIO} The following idiomatic expressions are in order of frequency of use of the basic form (**aller**, **passer**, **mettre**, etc.).

	Meaning without the reflexive pronoun		Meaning with the reflexive pronoun
aller	to go	s'en aller	to go away
passer	to pass	se passer	to happen
mettre	to place, to put	se mettre à	to begin to
demander	to ask	se demander	to wonder
trouver	to find	se trouver	to be located
entendre	to hear	s'entendre	to get along
sentir	to smell, to feel	se sentir	to feel (a sensation inside)
attendre	to wait for	s'attendre (à)	to expect
rendre	to give back	se rendre	to go; to surrender
rendre compte de	to account for	se rendre compte de	to realize
perdre	to lose	se perdre	to get lost
amuser	to amuse	s'amuser	to have a good time
tromper	to deceive	se tromper	to be mistaken
reposer	to rest, to put down	se reposer	to rest
endormir	to put to sleep	s'endormir	to fall asleep
inquiéter	to alarm	s'inquiéter	to worry
marier	to marry	se marier	to get married
ennuyer	to bother	s'ennuyer	to be bored
réunir	to gather, to collect	se réunir	to meet, get together
habituer	to accustom	s'habituer à	to get accustomed to
dépêcher	to dispatch	se dépêcher	to hurry
disputer	to play (a game)	se disputer	to argue
fâcher	to enrage	se fâcher	to get angry
débrouiller	to untangle	se débrouiller	to manage

5.6.9 S'envoyer en l'air



{Second Round} The following paragraph is optional. If you don't have a lot of time, go straight to the next round of frequent action words on page 380. If you do have time, taste **s'envoyer en l'air** to *hump*, to *have a roll in the hay* in four simple and composed tenses.

Infinitive	s'envoyer en l'air to <i>bonk</i> , <i>have a roll in the hay</i>
Participe passé	envoyé(e)(s) en l'air
Participe présent	s'envoyant en l'air
Impératif	envoie-toi en l'air envoyons-nous en l'air envoyez-vous en l'air

{AUDI O}

	Présent <i>Present: I am humping, etc.</i>	Imparfait <i>Imperfect: I was humping, etc.</i>
je	m'envoie en l'air	m'envoyais
tu	t'envoies en l'air	t'envoyais
il/elle	s'envoie en l'air	s'envoyait
nous	nous envoyons en l'air	nous envoyions
vous	vous envoyez en l'air	vous envoyiez
ils/elles	s'envoient en l'air	s'envoyaient
	Futur <i>I will hump, etc.</i>	Conditionnel présent <i>I would hump, etc.</i>
je	m'enverrai en l'air	m'enverrais en l'air
tu	t'enverras en l'air	t'enverrais en l'air
il/elle	s'enverra en l'air	s'enverrait en l'air
nous	nous enverrons en l'air	nous enverrions en l'air
vous	vous enverrez en l'air	vous enverriez en l'air
ils/elles	s'enverront en l'air	s'enverraient en l'air

{AUDIO}

	Passé composé <i>Perfect: I (have) humped, etc.</i>	Plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect: I had humped, etc.</i>
je	me suis envoyé(e) en l'air	m'étais envoyé(e) en l'air
tu	t'es envoyé(e) en l'air	t'étais envoyé(e) en l'air
il/elle	s'est envoyé(e) en l'air	s'était envoyé(e) en l'air
nous	nous sommes envoyé(e)s en l'air	nous étions envoyé(e)s en l'air
vous	vous êtes envoyé(e)s en l'air	vous étiez envoyé(e)s en l'air
ils/elles	se sont envoyé(e)s en l'air	s'étaient envoyé(e)s en l'air
	Futur antérieur <i>Future perfect: I will have humped, etc.</i>	Conditionnel passé <i>Past conditional: I would have humped, etc.</i>
je	me serai envoyé(e) en l'air	me serais envoyé(e) en l'air
tu	te seras envoyé(e) en l'air	te serais envoyé(e) en l'air
il/elle	se sera envoyé(e) en l'air	se serait envoyé(e) en l'air
nous	nous serons envoyé(e)s en l'air	nous serions envoyé(e)s en l'air
vous	vous serez envoyé(e)s en l'air	vous seriez envoyé(e)s en l'air
ils/elles	se seront envoyé(e)s en l'air	se seraient envoyé(e)s en l'air

5.7 Forty-nine action words (5)



{Second Round} Please check the word cloud and our last table of 7 x 7 action words. While the first 196 words (see page 100, 186, 265, and 321) represent around 79% of all action words you'll see in your life, this fifth set represents another 5%.

Learning the words today is optional. However, you should read them at least once because you'll soon need to know them all.



Word cloud 5.3 – Action words 197-245

{AUDIO} The percentages in the table below indicate the cumulative frequency, including the 7 x 7 words of Levels 1-4. Group 3 **participes passé** are shown in blue.

#	Infinitif	Participe passé	Infinitive	Past participle
197	observer	observé	to observe	observed
198	baisser	baissé	to lower	lowered
199	soulever	soulevé	to raise	raised
200	arracher	arraché	to tear	torn
201	mêler	mêlé	to mix	mixed
202	habiter	habité	to reside	resided
203	deviner	deviné	to guess	guessed

80.3%

204	entourer	entouré	to surround	surrounded
205	étendre	éteint	to spread	spread
206	éviter	évité	to avoid	avoided
207	former	formé	to form	formed
208	séparer	séparé	to separate	separated
209	ramener	ramené	to bring	brought
210	ignorer	ignoré	to ignore	ignored

81.1%

211	craindre	craint	to be afraid of	been afraid of
212	obliger	obligé	to force	forced
213	coller	collé	to glue	glued
214	poursuivre	poursuivi	to pursue	pursued
215	prier	prié	to pray	prayed
216	emmener	emmené	to take	taken
217	songer	songé	to think of	thought of

81.8%

218	enfoncer	enfoncé	to sink	sunk
219	brûler	brûlé	to burn	burnt
220	élever	élevé	to bring up	brought up
221	respirer	respiré	to breathe	breathed
222	placer	placé	to place	placed
223	durer	duré	to last	last
224	promettre	promis	to promise	promised

82.5%

225	marquer	marqué	to mark	marked
226	entraîner	entraîné	to train	trained
227	éclater	éclaté	to burst	burst
228	terminer	terminé	to end	ended
229	accrocher	accroché	to hang up	hung up
230	dresser	dressé	to tame	tamed
231	risquer	risqué	to risk	risked

83.2%

232	sauver	sauvé	to save	saved
233	maintenir	maintenu	to keep	kept
234	retirer	retiré	to remove	removed
235	adresser	adressé	to address	addressed
236	promener	promené	to take for a walk	taken for a walk
237	tromper	trompé	to cheat	cheated
238	juger	jugé	to judge	judged

83.8%

239	avouer	avoué	to confess	confessed
240	diriger	dirigé	to guide	guided
241	engager	engagé	to commit	committed
242	trembler	tremblé	to shiver	shivered
243	amener	amené	to bring	brought
244	casser	cassé	to break	broken
245	vendre	vendu	to sell	sold

84.4%

5.8 Action Word + Action Word (1)

In English, we chain two actions words together all the time:

- I want **to drink** something. (want + drink)
- I love **eating** that. (love + eat)
- I know **how to do** it. (know + do)

The second verb appears either in the *-ing* form or as an infinitive attached by the preposition *to*.

The French system is different. First, the **second verb** is ALWAYS in the infinitive form (in the examples above **boire, manger, faire**; there is no such thing as an *-ing* form in French). Second, the first action word links to the second one in one of three possible ways:

1. without any preposition
2. with the preposition **de**
3. with the preposition **à**

Third, there is no logic as to why some action words use **de**, others **à**, and still others no preposition at all. As a consequence, you'll have to memorize which action word comes with **de**, **à** or **nothing**.

{AUDIO}

1. Nothing

Je **veux boire** quelque chose.
J'**aime manger** cela.
Je **sais le faire**.

I **want to drink** something.
I **love eating** that.
I **know how to do** it.

2. de

Je lui **demanderais de venir**.

I'll **ask him to come**.

3. à

Elle a **commencé à travailler**.

She's **begun to work**.

5.8.1 No preposition

{AUDIO} The list below shows the 7 most important actions words which use **no** preposition.

Formula: [action word] + [action word].

aller	to be going to
aimer	to like/enjoy
laisser	to allow/let (something to be done)
devoir	to have to
vouloir	to want to
préférer	to prefer to
savoir	to know how to

Laisse-moi dormir !	Let me sleep!
Je dois aller à Paris.	I have to go to Paris.
Je préfère savoir la vérité.	I prefer knowing the truth.
Je vais aller faire les courses.	I'm going to have some groceries.

5.8.2 de

{AUDIO} The 7 most important action words followed by the preposition **de**.

Formula: [action word] + **de** + [action word].

décider de	to decide to
continuer de (à)	to continue (-ing)
finir de	to finish (-ing)
demander (à quelqu'un) de	to ask (someone) to
dire (à quelqu'un) de	to tell (someone) to
se souvenir de	to remember (-ing)
oublier de	to forget to

J'ai décidé de vendre mon appartement.	I have decided to sell my apartment.
Continue de travailler !	Continue working!
Tu as fini de faire des conneries ?	Have you finished with your bullshit?
J'ai oublié de lui envoyer un texto.	I forgot to send him/her an SMS.

5.8.3 à

{AUDIO} The 7 most important action words followed by the preposition **à**.

Formula: [action word] + **à** + [action word].

réussir à	to succeed in (-ing)
continuer à / (de)	to continue to
commencer à	to begin to
se préparer à	to prepare oneself to
se décider à	to decide
renoncer à	to give up (-ing)
avoir à	to have to / be obliged to

J'ai réussi à le convaincre.	I succeeded in convincing him.
J'ai commencé à tout préparer.	I've started preparing everything.
Il s'est finalement décidé à étudier sérieusement.	He has finally decided to start studying seriously.
Regarde tout ce que j'ai à faire !	Look at everything I have to do!

5.9 Participé présent (2) : Pitfalls

{AUDIO} In English, action words have the *present participle* in **-ing**: **going, doing, studying**. In English, the *-ing forms* are frequently used, but not in French. As a consequence, there are numerous cases in which an English *-ing form* cannot be translated with a French **participe présent**.

1.

When two French action words come together (see above), the second action word is always an infinitive:

I love eating.

J'aime manger.

2.

The English continuous form of action words (*I am working, I am going*) doesn't exist in French. In French, you'll simply use the **présent** for the *present continuous*: **je travaille, je vais**. If you want to stress that an action is ongoing now, use **être en train de**:

Je suis en train de lire.

I am reading (now!).

3.

The English present participle can be used as a noun that indicates an activity: '**Reading and writing...**' Again, in French you must use the infinitive:

Lire et écrire est un vrai plaisir.

Reading and writing is a true pleasure.

5.10 Sequence of Tenses

{AUDIO} The sequence of tenses – in French: **la concordance des temps** – is tricky terrain. Let's imagine two different settings:

1. Thomas speaking **now** about the present, past and future.
2. Thomas speaking **yesterday** about the present, past and future.

Now imagine that both **today** (here and now) and **yesterday**, you hear/heard him say the same three sentences:

- I am in Paris (present).
Je suis à Paris.
- Last year, I was in London (past).
L'année dernière, j'étais à Londres.
- Next month, I'll be in Berlin (future).
Le mois prochain, je serai à Berlin.

Now imagine that someone rings you up on your cellphone and wants to know what Thomas is/was saying. Your answer depends on whether Thomas is speaking at this very moment or if he spoke yesterday:

1. Thomas speaking **now**

- Thomas dit qu'il **est** à Paris.
Thomas says that he is in Paris.
- Thomas dit qu'il **était** à Londres l'année dernière.
Thomas says that he was in London last year.
- Thomas dit qu'il **sera** à Berlin le mois prochain.
Thomas says that he'll be in Berlin next month.

Let's put these sentences in a table:

Main Clause: Present	Dependant clause	Tense of the dependant clause
	qu'il est (simultaneous)	Présent
Il dit	qu'il était (before)	Imparfait
	qu'il sera (after)	Futur

2. Thomas speaking **yesterday**

- Thomas a dit qu'il **était** à Paris. (Thomas – yesterday – speaking about his present).
Thomas said that he was in Paris.
- Thomas a dit qu'il **avait été** à Londres l'année dernière. (Thomas – yesterday – speaking about his past).
Thomas said that he had been in London last year.
- Thomas a dit qu'il **serait** à Berlin le mois prochain. (Thomas – yesterday – speaking about his future).
Thomas said that he would be in Berlin next month.

In a table:

Main Clause: Past	Dependant clause	Tense of the dependant clause
	qu'il était (simultaneous)	Passé composé or Imparfait
Il a dit	qu'il avait été (before)	Plus-que-parfait
	qu'il serait (after)	Conditionnel présent

This is the skeleton of the rules that govern the sequence of tenses. When fully developed, the scheme is only slightly more complicated. Find more in Level 9, page xxx.

5.11 Présent: Ten Action Words (3)

{AUDIO}

	boire <i>to drink</i> <i>I drink, etc.</i>	courir <i>to run</i> <i>I run, etc.</i>	
je	bois	cours	I
tu	bois	cours	you
il/elle	boit	court	he/she
nous	buvons	courons	we
vous	buvez	courez	you
ils/elles	boivent	courent	they
Part. passé	bu	couru	
See page	522	541	

	recevoir <i>to receive</i> <i>I receive, etc.</i>	battre <i>to beat</i> <i>I beat, etc.</i>	
je	je reçois	bats	I
tu	je reçois	bats	you
il/elle	je reçoit	bat	he/she
nous	recevons	battons	we
vous	recevez	battez	you
ils/elles	je reçoivent	battent	they
Part. passé	reçu	battu	
See page	499	518	

	valoir <i>to cost, be worth</i> <i>I cost, am worth, etc.</i>	conduire <i>to drive</i> <i>I drove, etc.</i>	
je	vaux	conduis	I
tu	vaux	conduis	you
il/elle	vaut	conduit	he/she
nous	valons	conduisons	we
vous	valez	conduisez	you
ils/elles	valent	conduisent	they
Part. passé	valu	conduit	
See page	535	526	

	plaire <i>to please</i> <i>I please somebody, etc.</i>	se taire <i>to keep quiet</i> <i>I keep quiet, etc.</i>	
je	plais	me tais	I
tu	plais	te tais	you
il/elle	plaît	se tait	he/she
nous	plaisons	nous taisons	we
vous	plaisez	vous taisez	you
ils/elles	plaisent	se taisent	they
Part. passé	plu	tu(e)(s)	
See page	541	512	

	craindre <i>to be scared of</i> <i>I am scared of, etc.</i>	peindre <i>to paint</i> <i>I paint, etc.</i>	
je	crains	peins	I
tu	crains	peins	you
il/elle	craint	peint	he/she
nous	craignons	peignons	we
vous	craignez	peignez	you
ils/elles	craignent	peignent	they
Part. passé	craint	peint	
See page	535	xxx	

II. Grammar

5.12 If...then

{AUDIO} Sometimes, your life is subject to conditions, something might happen or might not happen. To express these situations, you'll use so-called *if-then clauses*, or *conditional sentences*. Conditional sentences are sentences where 1) one clause states a condition or possibility, while 2) the second clause gives the result (which, of course, is dependent upon the preceding condition).

There are different *if-then clauses* with different degrees of probability: likely, unlikely, and impossible.

1. Likely

For likely results, the action word of the *if-clause* uses the **présent**, whereas the action word of the main clause can be in the **présent**, **futur**, or the **impératif**.

If clause	Main clause (result)	Tense
Si tu veux , If you want,	je te prépare un thé. I'll make you a cup of tea.	Présent
Si tu viens , If you come,	nous irons au cinéma. we'll go to the movies.	Futur
Si tu es en retard, If you are late,	appelle-moi sur mon portable. call me on my cellphone.	Impératif

2. Unlikely

For unlikely results, the action word of the *if-clause* uses the **imparfait**, whereas the action word of the main clause uses the **conditionnel présent**.

If clause	Main clause (result)	Tense
Si tu venais avant 8 heures, If you came before 8 o'clock,	nous pourrions aller au cinéma. we could go to the movies.	Conditionnel présent

3. Impossible

For impossible results, the action word of the *if-clause* uses the **plus-que-parfait** and the action word of the main clause the **conditionnel passé**.

If clause	Main clause (result)	Tense
Si tu étais venu(e) avant 8 heures, If you had come before 8 o'clock,	nous aurions pu aller au cinéma. we could have gone to the movies.	Conditionnel passé

5.13 Double Pronouns

5.13.1 Give it to me

{AUDIO} You'll often use two pronouns with an action word, for example in sentences like '*He gives **it to me***'. The French translations of this sentence – '*Il **me le** donne*' or '*Il **me la** donne*' – are governed by three rules which make it fairly different from English:

1. Pronouns go **before** the action word
2. The **indirect** object pronoun (English: *to me*, French: **me**) goes *before* the **direct** object pronoun (English: *it*, French: **le**).
3. Depending on the gender, *it* must be translated with **le** or **la**.

Indirect object pronoun	Direct object pronoun
me	
te	le
se*	la
nous	les
vous	

* To be precise, **se** is a reflexive pronoun.

That's the way it is... as long as the indirect object pronoun is **me, te, se, nous, vous**. Things flip around when you give something to *him* or *her* (French: **lui** for both sexes) or *them* (**leur**). Now the **indirect** object pronoun (**lui** vs. *to him/to her*) goes *behind* the **direct** object pronoun: 'Il **le lui** donne.' 'He gives *it to him/her*.'

Direct object pronoun	Indirect object pronoun
le	lui
la	
les	leur

To put it simply: If **lui** or **leur** is in the game, they come second. Otherwise, **le**, **la** or **les** come second. The two tables combined:

Indirect object pronoun	Direct object pronoun
me te se* nous vous	le la les

Direct object pronoun	Indirect object pronoun
le la les	lui leur

* To be precise, **se** is a reflexive pronoun.

Tu me le feras ?	Will you do it to me?
Il me l'a fait.	He did it to me.
Tu le lui as fait ?	Did you do it to him?
Ils le leur ont dit.	They told them so.

5.13.2 y

{AUDIO} If one of the pronouns is **y** or **en**, you'll put them at the end. Remember: **y** replaces a place or a thing, but never a person (page 331). Often, it can be translated with *there*. With **y**, the first pronoun is always a **direct** pronoun.

Direct object pronoun **Adverbial pronoun**

m'

t'

l' (from *le* or *la*)**y**

nous

vous

les

Most often you'll see double pronouns including **y** in combination with the following action words:

emmener	to take, drive, carry
retrouver	to find, meet again
conduire	to drive
laisser	to leave
accompagner	to accompany
voir	to see
abandonner	to abandon
inviter	to invite
faire penser	to remind
obliger	to force, oblige
autoriser	to authorize
contraindre	to force, pressure (someone into doing something)

Tu **nous y**
emmèneras ?

Will you take **us there**?

J'aimerais **t'y** retrouver.

I would like to meet **you there** again.

Tu **m'y** feras penser ?

Will you remind me (about it)?

Je **les y**
accompagnerai.

I will accompany them **there**.

Je ne **t'y** obligerai pas.

I won't force you (to do it).

5.13.3 en

{AUDIO} With **en**, the first pronoun is always an **indirect** pronoun. Most often you'll see double pronouns with **en** in combination with **donner** *to give*, **parler** *to speak, talk*, and **demander** *to ask*.

Indirect object pronoun **Adverbial pronoun**

m'
t'
lui

en

nous
vous
leur

Il t'en parlera.	He'll tell you about it.
Tu m'en donneras ?	Will you give me (some)?
Tu m'en demandes trop.	You ask too much (of me).

The same construction is used for many colloquial expressions:

Tu m'en veux ?	Are you angry with me?
Il nous en a mis plein la vue.	He really impressed us.
Je t'en ai bouché un coin, hein ?	I took the wind out of your sails, didn't I?
Tu m'en diras des nouvelles !	You'll love it!

5.14 Pronouns and Impératif

{AUDIO} If affirmative commands such as **donne!** *give!* – **mange!** *eat!* come with pronouns, you need to place them after the action word, attached by hyphens. If you have two pronouns, put the *direct* pronouns first:

Passe-**moi** le beurre...

Passe-**le-moi**, s'il te plaît.

Raconte-**lui** l'histoire.

Raconte-**la-lui**.

Pass **me** the butter...

Pass **it to me**, please.

Tell **him/her** the story.

Tell **it to him/her**.

**Direct
object pronoun**

**Indirect
object pronoun**

le
la
les

moi
toi
lui
nous
vous
leur

Using affirmative commands with **y** and **en** is theoretically possible, but is a slippery terrain where even French fail. You may well hear one day a bloodcurdling **Donne-moi-s-en !** *Give me some (of that)!* – an extreme *faux pas* because the s-liaison is altogether *verboten* in this context. Please never say **moi-s-en!**

To stay clear of such unsafe ground, simply avoid affirmative commands with **y** and **en**. Instead, use negative questions: **Tu m'en donnes?** *Will you give me some (of that)?*

In negative commands the word order follows the rules outlined in the preceding section ('Double Pronouns', page 393): no inversion, no hyphens and **lui** and **leur** always in the second position.

Ne **me** fais plus jamais cela.

Ne **me le** dis pas. Je ne veux rien entendre.

Ne **lui** raconte pas cette histoire.

Ne **la lui** raconte pas.

Ne **m'y** fais pas penser !

Don't ever do that **to me** again.

Don't say **it to me**. I don't want to hear anything.

Don't tell **him/her** this story.

Don't tell **it to him/her**.

Don't make me think of it!

5.15 dont

{AUDIO} Remember **qui** & **que** from Level 1 (page 137): Relative pronouns link a relative clause to a main clause. While **qui** functions as the **subject** of the relative clause:

Main clause	Relative clause	
	Relative pronoun	
J'admire la femme <i>I admire the woman</i>	qui <i>who</i>	a découvert la radioactivité. <i>discovered radioactivity.</i>

qui is the *subject* of the relative clause.

que functions as the **direct object** of the relative clause:

Main clause	Relative clause	
	Relative pronoun	
Je connais l'homme <i>I know the man</i>	que <i>(whom)</i>	ta sœur a épousé. <i>your sister married.</i>

que is the *direct object* of the relative clause; the subject is 'ta sœur'.

French has three other relative pronouns: **dont**, **lequel** (see page 447), and **où**. Of these, **dont** [dɔ̃] is the most improbable and nasty one. Let's try and unveil the **dont** secret step by step.

5.15.1 Action word + *de* + noun

Look at the following variations:

1. Original sentences

Il m'a parlé d'une femme. Elle est plutôt curieuse.
He told me about a woman. She is rather strange.

Both sentences are correct and perfectly autonomous, and that's how French would describe similar situations.

If you prefer a slightly more elegant form, you might wish to fuse both sentences into a single sentence, now with a main clause and a relative clause:

2. New sentence

La femme dont il m'a parlé est plutôt curieuse.

The woman he told me about is rather strange.

For this construction to come to life, there is one condition: one of the original sentences must have an **object** attached by the preposition **de** to an action word or an adjective (see **d'une femme**). In other words: no **dont** without a previous **de**.

The elegant transformation formula is

$$[\mathbf{de} + \mathbf{x}] \rightarrow [\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{dont}]$$

where **x** is the 1) object in one of the original sentences and 2) the subject in the new sentence. The English translation of **dont** is usually *whom/of which/about whom*, but in some cases, it isn't translated at all.

Again:

J'ai rêvé d'une chatte. Elle doit être celle de ma voisine.

I dreamed of a female cat. It must be that of my neighbor.

$$[\mathbf{de} + \mathbf{x}] \rightarrow [\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{dont}]$$

La chatte dont j'ai rêvé doit être celle de ma voisine.

The female cat I dreamed of must be that of my neighbor.

Some action words and expressions using **de** to attach nouns:

rire de	to laugh at
souffrir de	to suffer
se servir de	to use
avoir peur de	to fear
avoir besoin de	to need
parler de	to speak of, tell about
rêver de	to dream of

La femme dont je rêve...	The woman I am dreaming of...
La maladie dont il souffre...	The illness he is suffering from...
La femme dont il a peur...	The woman he is scared of...
L'homme dont elle a besoin...	The man she needs...

Note that these action words use the preposition **de** to attach the following nouns: **rêver de**, **parler de**, **avoir peur de**.

Fortunately, most action words don't use the preposition **de**, for example, **raconter** *to tell*, **vouloir** *to want*, **faire** *to do*, **dire** *to say*, etc. In these cases you'll use the standard relative pronoun **que** which is translated with *that*, *which* or not at all.

Il a raconté une histoire. Elle est plutôt curieuse.
He told a story. It is rather strange.

[{nothing} + **x**] → [**x** + **que**]

L'histoire qu'il a racontée est plutôt curieuse.
The story he told is rather strange.

You'll need some time to become comfortable with **dont**.

5.15.2 Adjectif + *de* + noun

Some adjectives, too, use the preposition **de** to attach to nouns:

être satisfait de	to be satisfied with
être content de	to be happy with

être responsable de	to be responsible for
être sûr de	to be sure of
être certain de	to be certain of
être fou/folle de	to be crazy about
être fier/fière de	to be proud of
être capable de	to be capable of

Je suis satisfait de ce travail.

I'm satisfied with my work.

[de + x] → [x + dont]

C'est **un travail dont je suis satisfait.**

That's work I'm satisfied with.

Je suis fou de cette femme.

I'm crazy about this woman.

[de + x] → [x + dont]

C'est **une femme dont je suis fou.**

She's a woman I'm crazy about.

Please find more about **dont** in Level 10.

5.16 Adjectives (5)



{AUDIO} {Second Round}

5.16.1 -eux

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular	heureux	heureuse
	Plural	heureux	heureuses

Masculine ending	Feminine ending	Masculine	Feminine	
-eux	-euse	heureux	heureuse	happy
		silencieux	silencieuse	silent
		curieux	curieuse	curious
		sérieux	sérieuse	serious
		nombreux	nombreuse	numerous
		malheureux	malheureuse	unhappy
		amoureux	amoureuse	in love
		mystérieux	mystérieuse	mysterious, impenetrable
		fameux	fameuse	famous
		dangereux	dangereuse	dangerous
		joyeux	joyeuse	joyful, happy
		furieux	furieuse	furious
		merveilleux	merveilleuse	marvellous, wonderful
		lumineux	lumineuse	bright, light
		affreux	affreuse	awful, terrible
		précieux	précieuse	precious
		douloureux	douloureuse	painful
		nerveux	nerveuse	nervous
		délicieux	délicieuse	delicious

5.16.2 -eur

Number		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
	Singular	rêveur	rêveuse
	Plural	rêveurs	rêveuses

Masculine ending	Feminine ending	Masculine	Feminine	
-eur	-euse	rêveur	rêveuse	dreamy
		porteur	porteuse	supporting (wall)
		trompeur	trompeuse	deceptive
		moqueur	moqueuse	teasing, mocking
		flatteur	flatteuse	flattering
		menteur	menteuse	lying

5.17 Jokers

5.17.1 The next 21

{AUDIO}

85	ailleurs	elsewhere	adv
86	nulle part	nowhere	adv
87	longtemps	a long time	adv
88	dehors	outside	adv
89	dedans	inside	adv
90	pourquoi	why	adv
91	parce que	because	adv
92	ensemble	together	adv
93	plus que	more than	conj
94	moins que	less than	conj
95	comment	how	adv
96	presque	almost	adv
97	d'ailleurs	by the way	adv
98	souvent	often	adv
99	parfois	sometimes	adv
100	ensuite	then, afterwards	adv
101	vite	fast, quickly	adv
102	lentement	slowly	adv
103	hier	yesterday	adv
104	aujourd'hui	today	adv
105	demain	tomorrow	adv

5.17.2 Adverbs (5)

{AUDIO} This is the last set of irregular adverbs!

1. A few adjectives, those ending in **-é**, **-i** and **-u**, add **-ment** directly to the masculine form:

- passionné → passionné**ment** *passionately*
- spontané → spontané**ment** *spontaneously*
- vrai → vra**iment** *really*
- poli → pol**iment** *politely*
- absolu → absol**ument** *absolutely*

2. Other forms are irregular:

- bon *good* → **bien** *well*
- mauvais *bad* → **mal** *badly*
- meilleur *better* → **mieux** *better*
- rapide *fast* → **vite** *quickly*
- bref *brief* → **brève**ment**** *briefly*
- gentil *kind* → **gentil**ment**** *kindly, gently*

3. Some adverbs simply take the singular masculine form of the adjective:

- sentir **bon** *to smell nice,*
- travailler **dur** *to work hard*
- coûter **cher** *to cost a lot*
- parler **bas** *to talk quietly*

5.17.3 Prepositions

{AUDIO} See the following prepositions of **space**, ordered by frequency of use.

à	à Paris	in Paris
dans	dans la maison	in the house
en	en Italie	in Italy
chez	chez mon ami(e)	at my friend's place
devant	devant Notre-Dame	in front of Notre Dame
derrière	derrière la Tour Eiffel	behind the Eiffel Tower
vers	vers le bonheur	towards happiness
sur	sur le lit	on the bed
sous	sous le lit	under the bed
par	par la Rue Rivoli	by Rivoli Street
près	près du Louvre	close to the Louvre
contre	contre le mur	against the wall
à côté	à côté de l'Opéra	next to the Opéra
à droite de	à droite du Sacré-Cœur	to the right of Sacré-Cœur
à gauche de	à gauche de l'Hôtel de Ville	to the left of City Hall
au-dessus	au-dessus du bar	above the bar
au-dessous	au-dessous des cartes	beneath the cards
en face	en face de Beaubourg	opposite Beaubourg
à travers	à travers la Seine	across the Seine
hors	hors des murs	outside the walls
au-delà	au-delà des Champs-Élysées	beyond the Champs-Élysées

5.18 Bits and Pieces

5.18.1 Emphasis

{AUDIO} To summarize a lengthy argument, you can make clear-cut statements such as

I am right and **you** are wrong!

To emphasize **I** and **you**, all you need to do is lengthen the vowels and slightly raise your voice.

In French, lengthening vowels and raising voices doesn't work for personal pronouns such as **je** and **tu**. Instead, you need a combination of a *stressed pronoun* (**moi**, **toi**, **lui/elle**,

etc; see page 284) plus the standard subject pronouns (**je, tu, il/elle**, etc):

Moi, j'ai raison et **toi, tu** as tort.

The complete picture:

	Stressed
moi, je...	<i>I</i>
toi, tu...	<i>you</i>
lui, il...	<i>he</i>
elle, elle...	<i>she...</i>
nous, nous...	<i>we</i>
vous, vous...	<i>you</i>
eux, ils...	<i>they (m.)</i>
elles, elles...	<i>they (f.)</i>

Nous, nous avons raison et **vous, vous** avez tort.

We are right, and **you** are wrong!

Elle, elle a toujours raison et **lui, il** a toujours tort.

She is always right and **he** is always wrong.

You can place the *stressed pronouns* **moi, toi, lui/elle**, etc. also at the end of the sentence, separated by a comma:

Je n'en veux pas, **moi** !

I don't want it.

=

Moi, je n'en veux pas !

You can also create emphasis using the construction **c'est... qui/que** (singular) and **ce sont... qui/que** (plural). Use **qui** when it refers to the **subject** and **que** when it refers to the **object**.

C'est Arnaud qui est arrivé le premier.

Arnaud arrived first (and not someone else).

C'est le président que j'ai appelé.

I called **the president** (and not his assistant).

Ce sont mes filles qui ont raison.

My daughters are right (and not yours).

Ce sont Luc et Eric que tu vois là-bas.

You are seeing **Luc and Eric** over there (and not Cristiano and

Fabrice).

Finally, you can emphasize a word by putting it at the beginning or the end of a sentence, separated by a comma:

Colin, il n'a rien fait. **Colin** didn't do anything.

=

Il n'a rien fait, **Colin**.

Ça, ça ne va pas ! **That's** not right!

=

Ça ne va pas, **ça** ! or
It doesn't work!

5.18.2 Ordinal Numbers (1)



{Second Round} {AUDIO} You'll use so-called *ordinal numbers* to order things and express position or rank: the first, the second, the third, etc. You'll create an ordinal number by dropping the final –e (if there is any) from the corresponding cardinal number and add –**ième**, both for masculine and feminine words.

There is one exception: *first* is translated by **premier** for masculine words and **première** for feminine words.

Deuxième (2nd) has also the alternative of **second** (masc) / **seconde** (fem).

Note the irregular **cinquième** (cinq) and **neuvième** (neuf).

1er	premier	1st	first
1re	première		
2e	deuxième	2nd	second
3e	troisième	3rd	third
4e	quatrième	4th	fourth
5e	cinquième	5th	fifth
6e	sixième	6th	sixth
7e	septième	7th	seventh
8e	huitième	8th	eighth
9e	neuvième	9th	ninth
10e	dixième	10th	tenth

11e	onzième	11th	eleventh
12e	douzième	12th	twelfth
13e	treizième	13th	thirteenth
14e	quatorzième	14th	fourteenth
15e	quinzième	15th	fifteenth
16e	seizième	16th	sixteenth
17e	dix-septième	17th	seventeenth
18e	dix-huitième	18th	eighteenth
19e	dix-neuvième	19th	nineteenth
20e	vingtième	20th	twentieth
21e	vingt et unième	21st	twenty-first
25e	vingt-cinquième	25th	twenty-fifth
29e	vingt-neuvième	29th	twenty-ninth
30e	trentième	30th	thirtieth
40 ^e	quarantième	40th	fortieth
50 ^e	cinquantième	50th	fiftieth
60 ^e	soixantième	60th	sixtieth
70 ^e	soixante-dixième	70th	seventieth
80 ^e	quatre-vingtième	80th	eightieth
90 ^e	quatre-vingt-dixième	90th	ninetieth
100 ^e	centième	100th	hundredth

Please also note that the definite articles **le** and **la** remain unchanged (i.e., do not contract) before **huit**, **huitième**, **onze**, or **onzième**:

le huit janvier	January 8 th
la onzième place	the 11 th position

5.18.3 Silent letters (5)

{AUDIO} The letters C, R, F, L (careful), B, K and Q are usually pronounced at the end of a word. Let's continue with the letters B, K and Q:

	Pronounce the final B		Don't pronounce the final B	
B	le snob	snob	le plomb	lead (metal)
	le club	club	un aplomb	self-confidence
	le toubib (<i>fam.</i>)	physician		
	le pub	pub		
	le job	job		
	le baobab	baobab		

	Pronounce the final K	
K	le stock	stock
	le bifteck	steak
	le tank	tank
	le punk	punk
	le dock	dock
	le souk	souk
	le drink	drink

	Pronounce the final Q	
Q	cinq	five
	le coq	cockerel
	le Nasdaq	Nasdaq

5.19 Reading the News

{AUDIO} Time for your next newspaper article about the relationship between drought in India and Indian politicians.

1. Action word

2. Noun

3. Adjectif

Inde : un quart de la population est touché par une grave sécheresse | Les faibles précipitations de ces deux dernières années sont en cause dans cette sécheresse, mais pas seulement. L'Inde paie le choix d'une politique agricole centrée sur la hausse des rendements au détriment de la protection de ses ressources naturelles. C'est le cas de la culture du coton, forte consommatrice en eau, dans le Gujarat, un Etat pourtant très sec, ou encore de celle de la canne à sucre dans le Maharashtra. Cette dernière est cultivée sur 4 % des surfaces agricoles de l'Etat et absorbe 75 % de sa consommation en eau. Si le Maharashtra est réticent à promouvoir d'autres cultures, c'est que la plupart des coopératives sucrières appartiennent à des hommes politiques.

India: a quarter of the population is affected by severe drought | The low rainfall of the past two years is involved in this drought, but not only. India pays for the choice of an agricultural policy based on the rise in yields at the expense of the protection of its natural resources. This is the case of cotton agriculture, high water-consuming, in Gujarat, a very dry state, or that of sugarcane in Maharashtra. The latter is grown on 4% of agricultural land of the State and absorbs 75% of its water consumption. If Maharashtra is reluctant to promote other crops, it's because most of the sugar cooperatives are owned by politicians.

© Le Monde 2016. Find the entire article at http://www.lemonde.fr/planete/article/2016/04/22/inde-un-quart-de-la-population-est-touche-par-une-grave-secheresse_4906970_3244.html – Accessed 12 July 2016.

III. Results & Preview

1.

{AUDIO} Do you remember

je **agis** – tu **agis** – il/elle **agit**
 nous **agissons** – vous **agissez** – ils/elles **agissent**
I, you act, he or she acts / we act, you act, they act

j'**agissais** – tu **agissais** – il/elle **agissait**
 nous **agissions** – vous **agissiez** – ils/elles **agissaient**
I, you, he or she acted / we, you, they acted
I, you, he or she used to act / we, you, they used to act

j'**agirai** – tu **agiras** – il/elle **agira**
 nous **agirons** – vous **agirez** – ils/elles **agiront**
I, you, he or she will act / we, you, they will act

j'**agirais** – tu **agirais** – il/elle **agirait**
 nous **agirions** – vous **agiriez** – ils/elles **agiraient**
I, you, he or she would act / we, you, they would act

2.

{AUDIO} Do you remember the 12 most frequent action words of Group 2 following the same scheme:

finir	to finish, end
réussir	to succeed
réfléchir	to reflect, think
remplir	to fill
franchir	to cross, pass
nourrir	to feed
établir	to set up, create
envahir	to invade
réunir	to join, gather
fournir	to supply, provide
emplir	to fill
grandir	to grow, get taller

3.

Can you say **je me caresse** in all imaginable variations?

4.

Have you memorized the *present tense* of **boire** to *drink*, **courir** to *run*, **recevoir** to *receive*, **battre** to *beat*, **conduire** to *drive*, etc.?

5.

Do you remember

aimer	to like/enjoy
laisser	to allow/let (something to be done)
aller	to be going to
devoir	to have to
vouloir	to want to
préférer	to prefer to
savoir	to know how to

6.

Do you remember the sequence of tenses and Thomas being in Paris, London and Berlin?

- Thomas a dit qu'il **était** à Paris.
Thomas said that he was in Paris.
- Thomas a dit qu'il **avait été** à Londres l'année dernière.
Thomas said that he had been in London last year.
- Thomas a dit qu'il **irait** à Berlin le mois prochain.
Thomas said that he would go to Berlin next month.

7.

Do you remember the double pronouns?

Tu **me le** feras ? Will you do it to me?

Il **me l'**a fait. He did it to me.

Tu **le lui** as fait ? Did you do it to him?

Ils **le leur** ont dit. They told them so.

Well, then you have been promoted to Level 6!

Outlook

Level 6 is common administration – almost. After the usual assortment of action words (**vouloir** *to want*, **prendre** *to take*, **comprendre** *to understand*, **apprendre** *to learn*, **surprendre** *to surprise*) you'll suddenly realize that past participles in composed tenses with **avoir**, too, may have variable endings and that they obey, in a few specific situations, the **ES rule**. Do you remember allé(e)s and venu(e)(s)? Well, you'll soon see **embrassé(e)s** *kissed*, **déshabillé(e)s** *undressed* and **caressé(e)s** *caressed*.

The second part of Level 6 is heterogeneous. You'll discover the multifaceted **tout** (*all, everything, every, whole*) and learn how to say *it's mine* and *it's yours*. You'll also combat the tedious and tasteless **lequel – laquelle | lesquels – lesquelles** (interrogative and relative pronouns), the boring **celui – celle | ceux – celles** (demonstrative pronouns) and the ever irritating comparisons and superlatives. We have no power to protect you from these 10 pages of *taedium vitae* but ask you to keep your head up – Level 6 will be your last grammar rubbish heap ☺. In Level 7, on the seventh day, you won't do grammar at all and from Level 8 onward, our grammar study will evolve into a gentlemanly conversation. Let's go for it!

6 Tourism



Copyright © 2016 N. Allan – Barcelona

{GigaFrench.com/level06} Le tourisme serait-il un cancer, infiltrant et métastasé, détruisant tout ce qu'il touche, et ce avec une prédilection pour le pittoresque et l'exceptionnel ?

Vous connaissiez autrefois un joli bord de plage ? Bétonnée ! Un quartier historique charmant ? Muté en hypermarché à l'air libre ! Un restaurant typique connu depuis des générations ? Transformé en fast food. Y aurait-il au monde encore de beaux endroits épargnés par le cancer du tourisme ? Rien n'est moins sûr. [Ce n'est pas sûr du tout.] Le charme des pays et des paysages est en voie d'extinction – comme les tigres, les orangs-outans et les ours polaires.

Une des 10 plaies de l'Égypte, c'étaient les sauterelles : « Elles recouvrirent la surface de toute la terre et la terre fut dans l'obscurité ; elles dévorèrent toutes les plantes de la terre et tous les fruits des arbres. » (Exode 10).

Aujourd'hui, les sauterelles, c'est nous ! En quelques heures, nous sommes ailleurs – que ce soit en avion, en voiture ou en bateau de croisière – et nous débarquons peut-être même chez vous, en

Would tourism be a cancer, infiltrating and metastasizing, destroying everything it touches and, what is more, with a predilection for the picturesque and the unique?

Did you once know a nice beachfront? Concreted! A charming historic district? Mutated into an open-air hypermarket! A typical restaurant known for generations? Turned into a fast food chain. Would there still beautiful places be in the world, untouched by the tourism cancer? Nothing is less sure. The charm of countries and landscapes is becoming extinct - such as tigers, orangutans and polar bears.

One of the 10 plagues of Egypt were the locusts, for "they covered the surface of the whole land, so that the land was darkened; and they ate every plant of the land and all the fruit of the trees."

Today, locusts, that's us! Within hours, we are elsewhere - be it by plane, by car or cruise ships - and perhaps we even disembark at your home, in mass, upsetting your daily life. No one protests?

masse, bouleversant votre vie quotidienne. Personne ne proteste ? Forcément, puisque le monde entier veut vivre du tourisme ! De même que certains médecins vivent du cancer, certains pays vivent des touristes. Avec ses plus de 80 millions par an, à la France le pompon !

Les prix des fruits et légumes grimpent ? Tant pis pour les habitants du lieu ! Des gratte-ciel avec vue sur la plage ? Vive l'urbanisation de notre planète ! On offre des jeunes filles à la prostitution ? Fâcheux dommage collatéral, mais les hommes veulent baiser à moindre frais.

Vive la globalisation ? Partout la même malbouffe – hamburgers, kebabs et crêpes –, les mêmes fringues et bibelots, la même musique ? C'est à vomir d'ennui. Cela vous arrive-t-il parfois d'en avoir marre de la globalisation ? D'avoir une terrible envie de lire des romans d'aventure et de vous replonger dans un monde où il fallait prendre des risques et souffrir pour franchir les longues distances (sans réservation sur internet), sans avoir la certitude qu'une fois arrivé, on trouverait un lit pour la nuit ? Existe-t-il encore

Inevitably, because the whole world wants to live from tourism! Just as some doctors live from cancer, some countries are living from tourists. With more than 80 million per year, France takes the cake!

Prices of fruit and vegetables are rising? So much for the locals! Skyscrapers overlooking the beach? Long live the urbanization of our planet! We offer girls for prostitution? Unfortunate collateral damage, but men want to fuck cheaply.

Long live globalization? Everywhere the same junk food - burgers, kebabs and crepes - the same clothes and trinkets, the same music? So boring, you want to shoot yourself in the face. Does it sometimes happen to you, being fed up with globalization? To have a terrible urge to read adventure novels and plunge into a world where you had to take risks and suffer to cross long distances (without internet booking), without the certainty that once arrived one would find a bed for

en ce monde des lieux non globalisés (non américanisés) ? En ce cas, gardons-nous bien d'en parler !

the night? Are there still globalized places in this world that are not Americanized? In this case, we must not speak of it.

Words

{AUDIO}

le tourisme	tourism	depuis des générations	for generations
le cancer	cancer	y aurait-il	would there be
infiltrant	infiltrating	un endroit	place
métastasé	metastasizing	de beaux endroits	beautiful places
détruire	to destroy	épargné	here: untouched
tout ce que	everything	rien n'est moins sûr	nothing is less sure
toucher	to touch	le charme	charm
		le pays	country
avec	with	le paysage	landscape
la prédilection	predilection	l'extinction <i>f.</i>	extinction
le pittoresque	the picturesque	être en voie d'extinction	to become extinct
l'exceptionnel	the unique	le tigre	tiger
autrefois	once	un orang-outan	orangutan
joli	nice	l'ours <i>m.</i>	bear
le bord de plage	beachfront	polaire	polar
		la plaie	plague
la plage	beach	l'Égypte <i>f.</i>	Egypt
bétonner	to concrete	la sauterelle	locust, grasshopper
le quartier	district	recouvrir	to cover
historique	historic	la surface	surface
charmant	charming	l'obscurité <i>f.</i>	obscurity
muter	to mutate		
hypermarché <i>m.</i>	hypermarket		
à l'air libre	open-air		
le restaurant	restaurant		
typique	typical		
connu	known		

dévor	to devour, to eat up	le gratte-ciel	skyscraper
la plante	plant	avec vue sur une urbanisation	overlooking urbanisation
un arbre	tree	la jeune fille	young girl
aujourd'hui	today	la prostitution	prostitution
en quelques heures	within hours	fâcheux	unpleasant, unfortunate
ailleurs	elsewhere	le dommage	damage
que ce soit	be it	collatéral	collateral
un avion	plane	baiser	to fuck
la voiture	car	les frais <i>m.</i>	costs
le bateau	ship	à moindre frais	cheaply
la croisière	cruise	le kebab	kebab
débarquer	to disembark	la crêpe	crepe
peut-être	maybe	les fringues <i>f.</i>	clothes
même	even	un bibelot	trinket
chez vous	at your home	vomir	to throw up, to vomit
en masse	in mass	l'ennui <i>m.</i>	boredom
bouleverser	to upset	en avoir marre	to be fed up
quotidien	daily	la globalisation	globalisation
personne	no one, nobody	terrible	terrible
protester	to protest	une envie	longing, desire
forcément	inevitably	lire	to read
puisque	because, since	le roman	novel
vouloir	to want	une aventure	adventure
de même que	just as	se replonger	to plunge again
certains	certain	il fallait	you had to
par an	per year	prendre	to take
le pompon	here: jackpot	le risque	risk
le prix	price	souffrir	to suffer
grimper	to rise	long, longue	long
tant pis pour	so much for	la distance	distance
un habitant	inhabitant, local	sans	without
le lieu	place		

6.1 Power Listening

Download the MP3 audio file of the text on your smartphone (www.gigafrench.com/download) and follow the instructions on Power Listening on page 34.

Remember that *GigaFrench's* Power Listening consists of cutting an audio file into portions of 2, 3 or 4 seconds and listening to these portions 5, 10 or even 15 or 20 times (examples: [slow audio](#), [normal audio](#)). As you listen, read the French text and check the English translation constantly. In this way you'll be able to:

1. figure out which word corresponds to which sound;
2. learn the meaning of the words;
3. memorise the spelling of the words.

If a single MP3 audio file lasts 2 minutes and if you listen to all “portions” 10 times, each round will last 20 minutes. During the following weeks you will repeat this exercise around 10 times for each audio file. In all, you'll therefore hear each portion of each audio file 100 times. Then will come the time when you'll understand, for the first time and distinctly, every single word of the MP3 audio file you are listening to. You'll have conquered an “island of total understanding”.

The 8 audio files of the current *GigaFrench* edition total about 20 minutes of recording. Listening to them 100 times requires about 30 hours. A perfect understanding – word for word! – of these 8 pieces with more than 2,600 words is just around the corner of your life. You can do it in less than two months! No need to hesitate!

6.2 Preview

If your main interest is learning contemporary vocabulary, memorize all the words (100%) and then go straight on to *Nobel for Snowden*, page 465.

For a more intimate experience of French, please do the whole chapter. The highlights are

- variable past participles
- tout *all, everything, every, whole*
- le mien, le tien, etc. – *mine, yours, etc.*
- comparisons and superlatives

As always, make full use of the audio files and listen to them until you can distinguish and understand every single word.

I. Action Words

6.3 Vouloir *to want*

{AUDIO}

Infinitif	vouloir
Participe passé	voulu
Participe présent	voulant
Impératif	veuille voulons veuillez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	veux	voulais	voulus
tu	veux	voulais	voulus
il/elle	veut	voulait	voulut
nous	voulons	voulions	voulûmes
vous	voulez	vouliez	voulûtes
ils/elles	veulent	voulaient	voulurent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	voudrai	voudrais
tu	voudras	voudrais
il/elle	voudra	voudrait
nous	voudrions	voudrions
vous	voudrez	voudriez
ils/elles	voudront	voudraient

	Subjonctif présent <i>(irregular)</i>	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	veuille	voulusse
que tu	veuilles	voulusses
qu'il/elle	veuille	voulût
que nous	voulions	voulussions
que vous	vouliez	voulussiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	veuillent	voulussent

6.4 Group 3: Prendre

Remember the overview of Group 3 action words we presented in Level 5 (page 362). Now Look at Type 3, words ending on **-dre**:

	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3	Type 4
.				
je	-s	-e	-ds	-x
tu	-s	-es	-ds	-x
il/elle	-t	-e	-d	-t
nous	-ons	-ons	-ons	-ons
vous	-ez	-ez	-ez	-ez
ils/elles	-ent	-ent	-ent	-ent

{AUDIO} The most important action words of Type 3 are **prendre** *to take* and its derivatives:

comprendre *to understand*

apprendre *to learn*

surprendre *to surprise*

entreprendre *to start doing something*

reprendre *to take back*



Word cloud 6.2 – Prendre, comprendre, apprendre, etc.

{AUDIO}

Infinitif	prendre <i>to take</i>
Participe passé	pris
Participe présent	prenant
Impératif	prends prenons prenez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	prends	prenais	pris
tu	prends	prenais	pris
il/elle	prend	prenait	prit
nous	prenons	prenions	prîmes
vous	prenez	preniez	prîtes
ils/elles	prennent	prenaient	prirent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	prendrai	prendrais
tu	prendras	prendrais
il/elle	prendra	prendrait
nous	prendrons	prendrions
vous	prendrez	prendriez
ils/elles	prendront	prendraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	prenne	prisse
que tu	prennes	prisses
qu'il/elle	prenne	prît
que nous	prenions	prissions
que vous	preniez	prissiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	prennent	prissent

You'll need to remember:

- The endings of the present singular: **-ds, -ds, -d.**
- The *past participle* ending in **-is** : prendre → pris, comprendre → compris, apprendre → appris, surprendre → surpris.
- The *present* 1st person plural **prenons** that we use as the template for the **imparfait** (**prenons** → stem : **pren-** → **prenais, prenais, prenait** | **prenions, preniez, prenaient**)

- The *present* 3rd person plural **prennent** that we use as the template for 1) the three singular forms and 2) the 3rd person plural of the **subjonctif présent** (**prennent** → stem : **prenn-** → que je **prenne** – que tu **prennes** – qu’il/elle **prenne** | qu’ils/elles **prennent**)
- The *future* root **prendr-** which gives you the complete **futur** and **conditionnel présent**.

6.5 Subjonctif (4)

{AUDIO} Let’s continue with expressions of doubt and uncertainty.

douter que	to doubt that
Il est douteux que	it is doubtful, uncertain that
Il est possible que	it is possible that
Il est impossible que	it is impossible that
Il est improbable que	it is improbable that
Il est peu probable que	it is unlikely that

Je doute que nous puissions partir demain.	I doubt that we’ll be able to leave tomorrow.
Il est peu probable qu’elle vienne .	It’s unlikely that she’ll come .
Il est peu probable qu’il réussisse dans son travail.	It’s unlikely that he’ll be successful in his job.

6.6 Action Word + Action Word (2)

6.6.1 No preposition

{AUDIO}

il faut	to have to
espérer	to hope to
penser	to think
pouvoir	to be able to
aimer mieux	to rather
adorer	to love
sembler	to seem to be

Il faut venir tout de suite. You have to come immediately.

Elle peut faire mieux. She can do better.

J'adore lui faire des choses. I love doing things to him/her.

J'espère pouvoir le faire la semaine prochaine. I hope to be able to do it next week.

Il pense recevoir bientôt une réponse. He hopes that he'll soon receive an answer.

6.6.2 de

{AUDIO}

avoir besoin de	to need to
avoir envie de	to feel like (-ing)
avoir l'intention de	to intend to
avoir raison de	to be right to
avoir tort de	to be wrong to
avoir l'air de	to seem to be (-ing)
avoir peur de	to be afraid of (-ing)

J'ai envie de venir tout de suite.	I want to come now.
Tu as tort d'attendre.	You are wrong to wait.
Il a l'air d'être fatigué.	He seems to be tired.
Elle a raison de se méfier.	She has reason to be suspicious.

6.6.3 à

{AUDIO}

penser à	to think of (-ing)
se mettre à	to start (-ing)
tenir à	to insist on (-ing)
hésiter à	to hesitate to
s'attendre à	to expect
s'amuser à	to have fun (-ing)
chercher à	to attempt to

Il hésite à t'appeler.	He hesitates to call you.
Elle s'est mise à boire.	She started drinking.
Tu t'amuses à le faire attendre ?	Are you having fun making him wait?
Nous cherchons à faire de notre mieux.	We are trying to do our best.

6.7 Présent: Ten Action Words (4)

{AUDIO} If you studied French when you were young, please learn the present tense of the following 10 action words.

If this is your first approach to French, you may skip the list. All action words will be presented later in detail.

	fuir <i>to flee</i> <i>I flee, etc.</i>	conclure <i>to conclude</i> <i>I conclude, etc.</i>	
je	fuis	conclus	I
tu	fuis	conclus	you
il/elle	fuit	conclut	he/she
nous	fuyons	concluons	we
vous	fuyez	concluez	you
ils/elles	fuient	concluent	they
Part. passé	fui	conclu	

	pleuvoir <i>to rain</i>	joindre <i>to attach</i> <i>I attach, etc.</i>	
je		joins	I
tu		joins	you
il/elle	il pleut	joint	he/she
nous		joignons	we
vous		joignez	you
ils/elles		joignent	they
Part. passé	plu	joint	

	acquérir <i>to buy</i> <i>I buy, etc.</i>	vaincre <i>to defeat</i> <i>I defeat, etc.</i>	
je	acquiers	vaincs	I
tu	acquiers	vaincs	you
il/elle	acquiert	vainc	he/she
nous	acquérons	vainquons	we
vous	acquérez	vainquez	you
ils/elles	acquièrent	vainquent	they
Part. passé	acquis	vaincu	

	cuire <i>to cook</i> <i>I cook, etc.</i>	croître <i>to grow</i> <i>I grow, etc.</i>	
je	cuis	croît	I
tu	cuis	croît	you
il/elle	cuit	croît	he/she
nous	cuisons	croissons	we
vous	cusez	croissez	you
ils/elles	cuisent	croissent	they
Part. passé	cuit	crû	

	coudre <i>to sew</i> <i>I sew, etc.</i>	
je	couds	I
tu	couds	you
il/elle	coud	he/she
nous	cousons	we
vous	cousez	you
ils/elles	cousent	they
Part. passé	cousu	

6.8 Past Participle

{AUDIO} We said that almost all French action words form the composed tenses with **avoir** + **participe passé** and that only a few use the auxiliary **être**. We also said that action words which use **être** to form the composed tenses, change the ending of the **participe passé** according to our **ES rule**: if the corresponding noun is feminine, the **participe passé** adds an **-e**; and all plural forms add an **-s**.

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular	allé	allée
	Plural	allés	allées

être + participe passé

	Passé composé <i>Perfect:</i> <i>I have gone (+ I went)</i>	Plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect:</i> <i>I had gone</i>
je/j'	suis allé(e)	étais allé(e)
tu	es allé(e)	étais allé(e)
il/elle	est allé(e)	était allé(e)
nous	sommes allé(e)s	étions allé(e)s
vous	êtes allé(e)s	étiez allé(e)s
ils/elles	sont allé(e)s	étaient allé(e)s

We also said that action words that use **avoir** to form the composed tenses, *generally* don't change the endings of the participe passé, as you can see in the following case of **voir** to see:

avoir + participe passé

	Passé composé <i>Perfect:</i> <i>I have seen (+ I saw)</i>	Plus-que-parfait <i>Past perfect :</i> <i>I had seen</i>
j'	ai vu	avais vu
tu	as vu	avais vu
il/elle	a vu	avait vu
nous	avons vu	avions vu
vous	avez vu	aviez vu
ils/elles	ont vu	avaient vu

Let's now see the exceptions to the rule.

6.8.1 Past participles as adjectives

{AUDIO} When used as an adjective, a past participle agrees in number and gender with the noun it specifies:

un homme abandonné	an abandoned man
une femme abandonnée	an abandoned woman
deux hommes abandonnés	two abandoned men
deux femmes abandonnées	two abandoned women

6.8.2 Direct object pronouns

{AUDIO} Now imagine that you want to communicate to your friends that you have ‘kissed, undressed and caressed her’. In oral French communication, you would say **je l’ai [ãbrãse, dezãbijẽ, kavẽse]** – and if everybody knows who you are talking about, that’s fine. Note, however, that the meaning of these spoken sentences is ambiguous because you would use exactly the same sound to say that you kissed, undressed and caressed a man or a woman. French writing is more precise, both in the singular and in the plural. Look how elegant it is:

Kissed, undressed and caressed one or more men?

1 : **je l’ai embrassé, je l’ai déshabillé, je l’ai caressé**
 2-∞ : **je les ai embrassés, je les ai déshabillés, je les ai caressés**

Kissed, undressed and caressed one or more women?

1 : **je l’ai embrassée, je l’ai déshabillée, je l’ai caressée**
 2-∞ : **je les ai embrassées, je les ai déshabillées, je les ai caressées**

You see that whenever a *direct object pronoun* (here: **l’** [short form for **le** and **la**] or **les**) comes before the auxiliary **avoir**, the following **participe passé** must agree in number and gender with the pronoun.

Subject pronoun	Direct object pronoun	Auxiliary avoir	Past participle
je	l'	ai	embrassé(e) deshabillé(e) caressé(e)
je	les	ai	embrassé(e) s deshabillé(e) s caressé(e) s

In the following table, you'll find three composed tenses built with **avoir + participe passé** (passé composé : **j'ai vu**, etc. ; plus-que-parfait : **j'avais vu**, etc. ; conditionnel passé : **j'aurais vu**, etc.). As soon as you place one of the *direct object pronouns* **m', t', l', nous, vous** or **les** before one of the **avoir** forms, the **participe passé** (*past participle*) takes the feminine and/or plural endings **-e**, **-s** and **-es** as needed.

Direct object pronoun	Auxiliary avoir			Past participle
	m' / t' / l'	ai as a	avais avais avait	
nous, vous, les	avons avez ont	avons aviez avaient	aurions auriez auraient	vus or vues

Some more examples:

Tu as vu le spectacle ?	Have you seen the show?
Oui, je l'ai vu.	Yes, I've seen it.
As-tu vu la prof ?	Have you seen the teacher?
Oui, je l'ai vue.	Yes, I've seen her.
Aurais-tu regardé les deux films ?	Would you have watched the two movies?
Oui, je les aurais regardés.	Yes, I would have watched them.
Avez-vous vu mes capotes ?	Have you seen my condoms?
Non, nous ne les avons pas vues.	No, we haven't seen them.

6.8.3 que

{AUDIO} You'll often use the *relative pronoun que* to provide detailed information about a **noun**. In these cases, too, the past participle must agree with that noun in gender and number. Remember that in English you can often omit **que**:

Ouvrons le champagne qu'Elise a apporté ?	Shall we open the champagne Elise brought?
Je n'aime pas la capote que tu as choisie.	I don't like the condom you've chosen.
J'adore les vins que tu m'as conseillés.	I adore the wines you recommended me.
Je n'aime pas les capotes que tu as achetées.	I don't like the condoms you bought.

II. Grammar

6.9 Jokers

6.9.1 The next 21 Jokers

Open www.gigafrench.com/jokers06 for a quick smartphone check.

{AUDIO}

106	au-dessus	above	prep, adv
107	au-dessous	underneath, under	prep, adv
108	y	there	adv
109	bien que	although	conj
110	à côté de	next to, alongside	prep
111	autrefois	in the old days	adv
112	doucement	softly, quietly	adv
113	partout	everywhere	adv
114	jusque	until; to the point of	prep; adv
115	autant	as much as, as many as	adv
116	vraiment	really	adv
117	tellement	so much, so many	adv
118	d'où	from where	adv
119	en bas	downstairs, down	adv
120	en haut	upstairs, up	adv
121	bientôt	soon	adv
122	ainsi que	just as	conj
123	pour que	in order to, to	conj
124	cependant	yet, nevertheless	adv
125	en face de	opposite	prep
126	certainement	certainly	adv

6.10 Adjectives (6)



{Second Round} {AUDIO}

Masculine ending	Feminine ending	Masculine	Feminine	
-teur	-trice	protecteur	protectrice	protective
		créateur	créatrice	creative
		conservateur	conservatrice	conservative
		révélateur	révélatrice	revealing
		destructeur	destructrice	destructive
		séducteur	séductrice	seductive, alluring
-s	-sse	gros	grosse	big, fat
		gras	grasse	fat, fatty
-et	-ette	muet	muette	mute
		net	nette	clear, distinct
		violet	violette	purple
		douillet	douillette	cosy, snugly
		coquet	coquette	stylish, trendy
		grassouillet	grassouillette	pudgy, plump
		simplet	simplette	simple-minded
		-et	-ète	secret
inquiet	inquiète			worried
complet	complète			complete
discret	discrète			reserved
concret	concrète			tangible

6.11 Tout

Tout is an extremely versatile French word. You'll use it, for example, to say *all the men – all the women – every day – everybody – all the time – all my children – all those poor people*.

6.11.1 Tout: pronoun

{AUDIO} When used as a *pronoun*, the singular **tout** [tu] is generally translated by *all* or *everything*.

Je veux tout.	I want it all.
C'est tout.	That's all.
Tout est parfait.	Everything's perfect.
avant tout	above all
malgré tout	nevertheless ('in spite of everything')

The plural **tous** [tus] (masculine) et **toutes** [tut] (feminine) mean *everyone* or *all* and refer usually to something mentioned earlier:

Où sont mes livres ? Ils sont tous dans ta valise.	Where are my books? They are all in your suitcase.
Où sont nos femmes ? Elles sont toutes allées à la plage.	Where are our wives? They all went to the beach.

6.11.2 Tout: adjective

{AUDIO} **Tout** as an adjective agrees in gender and number with the noun it modifies and has therefore four forms: **tout** – **tous** (same pronunciation) and **toute** – **toutes** (same pronunciation).

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular	tout [tu]	toute [tut]
	Plural	tous [tu]	toutes [tut]

The adjectif **tout** is used to modify

1. definite articles (le, la, l', les)
2. possessive adjectives (mon, ton, son, etc.)
3. demonstrative adjectives (ce, cette, ces)
4. nouns

The English translation is generally *all, every, whole, any*.

Let's see:

1. Modifying definite articles

When **tout** modifies *definite articles*, you'll usually translate it with *all*:

tout le temps	all the time
tout e l'actualité	all the news
tou s les hommes	all the men
tout e s les femmes	all the women

In some cases, English offers more individual translations:

tout le monde	everybody
tou s les jours	every day
tou s les deux jours	every other day

2. Modifying possessive adjectives

When **tout** modifies *possessive adjectives* like **mon, ton, son**, etc., you'll usually translate it with *all*:

tout mon amour	all my love
tout e sa famille	all his/her family
tou s leurs enfants	all their children
tout e s vos conneries	all your bullshit

Again, in some cases, English offers individual translations:

toute sa famille	his/her whole family
Prenez tout votre temps.	Take your time.

3. Modifying demonstrative adjectives

When modifying *demonstrative adjectives* (**ce, cette, ces**), **tout** is generally translated by *all*:

tout ce bordel	all this mess
toute cette misère	all this misery
tous ces médecins	all these doctors
toutes ces crises	all these crises
toute cette merde	all this shit

4. Modifying nouns

Tout can also modify nouns. In these cases, the English translation is more varied:

en tout cas	in any case
tout réfugié qui	every refugee who
à tout moment	at any moment
tous frais compris	all expenses included

6.11.3 Tout: adverb

{AUDIO} **Tout** can also be an adverb and modify

1) adjectives (for example in **il est tout heureux** *he is very happy*) or 2) other adverbs. We'll present the details later (page xxx). For today, take a look at frequent combinations of **tout + de** and **tout + à**:

tout à l'heure	a bit earlier (past) + a bit later on (future)
tout de suite	immediately
tout à fait	absolutely
tout de même	all the same, anyway
tout au contraire	very much to the contrary
tout à coup, tout d'un coup	all of a sudden, suddenly

6.12 Possessive pronouns

{AUDIO} In the short dialogue

Is this your cellphone? – Yes, it's mine.

'mine' is the so-called *possessive pronoun* that replaces the 'cellphone' of the first sentence. In French, the corresponding word is **mien**. French is slightly more complicated than English:

1. **mien** comes always in combination with the appropriate definite article: **le mien**. (C'est ton portable ? Oui, c'est **le mien**.)
2. The French possessive pronoun must agree with the noun being replaced in number and gender:
le mien – les miens | la mienne – les miennes
3. When preceded by **de** and **à**, the definite articles **le** and **les** contract to **du** and **des**, and **au** and **aux**, respectively (see details below).

Singular		Plural		
Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine	
le mien	la mienne	les miens	les miennes	mine
le tien	la tienne	les tiens	les tiennes	yours
le sien	la sienne	les siens	les siennes	his, hers, its
le nôtre	la nôtre	les nôtres	les nôtres	ours
le vôtre	la vôtre	les vôtres	les vôtres	yours
le leur	la leur	les leurs	les leurs	theirs

C'est ta voiture ?

Is that your car?

Oui, c'est **la mienne**.

*Yes, it's **mine**.*

Ce n'est pas notre chat, c'est **le vôtre**.

*It's not our cat, it's **yours**.*

Ce ne sont pas nos croissants, ce sont **les leurs**.

*These are not our croissants, they are **theirs**.*

Of course, when **de** precedes a possessive pronoun, it contracts with the definite article to form **du** (~~de + le~~) and **des** (~~de + les~~).

Singular		Plural		
Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine	
du mien	de la mienne	des miens	des miennes	of mine
du tien	de la tienne	des tiens	des tiennes	of yours
du sien	de la sienne	des siens	des siennes	of his, hers, its
du nôtre	de la nôtre	des nôtres	des nôtres	of ours
du vôtre	de la vôtre	des vôtres	des vôtres	of yours
du leur	de la leur	des leurs	des leurs	of theirs

Parles-tu de ton père ?
Non, je parle **du** tien.

Are you talking about your father?

No, I'm talking about yours.

As-tu peur de mon chien ?
Non, j'ai peur **du** leur.

Are you afraid of my dog?

No, I'm afraid of theirs.

When **à** precedes the possessive pronoun, it contracts with the definite article to form **au** (à+le) and **aux** (à+les).

Singular		Plural		
Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine	
au mien	à la mienne	aux miens	aux miennes	to mine
au tien	à la tienne	aux tiens	aux tiennes	to yours
au sien	à la sienne	aux siens	aux siennes	to his, hers, its
au nôtre	à la nôtre	aux nôtres	aux nôtres	to ours
au vôtre	à la vôtre	aux vôtres	aux vôtres	to yours
au leur	à la leur	aux leurs	aux leurs	to theirs

Ce bateau est identique **au** mien. This boat is identical to mine.
 Nos problèmes sont similaires **aux** leurs. Our problems are similar to theirs.

6.13 Quel

{AUDIO} **Quel** is an adjective that functions as an interrogative (*what? which?; sometimes also: how? who?*) and as an exclamative (*what! what a...!*). In all cases, **quel** agrees in number and gender with the noun it modifies. Here, find our usual quartet:

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular	quel	quelle
	Plural	quels	quelles

Note that the pronunciation of all four forms is identical: [kɛl].

When used as an interrogative, **quel** is followed by a noun or by **être** + a noun:

Quel âge as-tu?	How old are you?
Quelle heure est-il?	What time is it?
Quelle capote préfères-tu?	Which condom do you prefer?
Quels sont tes chanteurs préférés ?	Who are your favorite singers?

When used as an exclamative to express emphasis, **quel** is followed by an adjective or a noun. The English translation is *what! what a... !*:

Quel enfoiré!	What a bastard!
Quelle injustice!	What injustice!

Please make a **liaison** after the plural forms **quels** and **quelles** if the following word begins with a vowel:

Quels_idiots!	What idiots!
Quels_enfoirés!	What bastards!

6.14 Lequel, laquelle

6.14.1 Lequel as an interrogative pronoun

{AUDIO} When asking ‘Which one?’ you’ll use the *interrogative pronoun* **lequel**:

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| – J’ai rencontré ton petit copain. | – I have met your boyfriend. |
| – Lequel ? | – Which one? |
| – J’ai rencontré ta petite copine. | – I have met your girlfriend. |
| – Laquelle ? | – Which one? |

Lequel agrees in gender and number with the noun it replaces:

		Gender	
		Masculine	Feminine
Number	Singular	lequel [ləkɛl]	laquelle [lakɛl]
	Plural	lesquels [ləkɛl]	lesquelles [ləkɛl]

– J'ai rencontré tes copains.
Lesquels ?

– I have met your friends (boys).
– Which ones?

– J'ai rencontré tes copines.
Lesquelles ?

– I have met your friends (girls).
– Which ones?

6.14.2 Lequel as a relative pronoun

{AUDIO} **Lequel** and its variants can also be a *relative pronoun*. In these cases, they replace the *inanimate* object of a preposition.

La maison d'édition **pour laquelle** j'ai écrit ce livre a fait faillite.

The publishing house **for which** I wrote this book went bankrupt.

L'hôpital **pour lequel** j'ai travaillé...

The hospital I worked **for**...

Les projets **sur lesquels** je travaille...

The projects I'm working **on**...

C'est un problème **auquel** j'ai beaucoup réfléchi.

That's a problem I have been thinking about a lot.

See also the following examples:

Action word : cacher quelque chose **à** quelqu'un to hide something **from** someone

Un père, **auquel** on cache les histoires de femme. (Zola, *Nana*) A father **from which** one hides women's risqué stories.

Action word : s'adresser **à** quelqu'un to address someone

Les hommes **auxquels** il s'adressait... The men he was speaking to...

What do you see? You see that **lequel** and **lesquels** fuse with the prepositions **de** and **à**:

	Singular		Plural	
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
Preposition	lequel	laquelle	lesquels	lesquelles
de	duquel	de laquelle	desquels	desquelles
à	auquel	à laquelle	auxquels	auxquelles

Please note that **duquel**, **auquel**, **desquels**, **auxquels**, etc. are relatively rare. In 17 novels by Émile Zola (see details on page xxx), they occurred once every 15-20 pages (absolute numbers shown in parentheses):

Singular		Plural	
<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>
lequel	laquelle	lesquels	lesquelles
duquel (83)	de laquelle (45)	desquels (29)	desquelles (21)
auquel (147)	à laquelle (88)	auxquels (49)	auxquelles (36)

Remember: **duquel, auquel, desquels, auxquels** replace the *inanimate* object of a preposition. Things are easier when the object of the preposition is a *person*. In these cases, just use **qui**:

Le professeur **pour qui** je travaillais est mort.

The professor I worked **for** is dead.

Les amis **sur qui** je pouvais compter sont partis.

The friends (**who**) I could lean **on** have left.

La fille **avec qui** je travaille est sensationnelle.

The girl I work **with** is amazing.

L'homme **à qui** je parlais était mon frère.

The man I talked **to** was my brother.

6.15 Celui – celle | ceux – celles

{AUDIO} You have met the *demonstrative adjectives* **ce, cette | ces** in Level 1 (page 120). They always come directly before a noun:

ce petit Dieu

this little God

masculine singular

cette vierge

this virgin

feminine singular

Demonstrative pronouns **celui – celle | ceux – celles**

(translated into English generally with *one*, for example, *the left one, the right one*) are different. They stand alone and clarify which person (or animal, thing, idea, place) you are talking about. Of multiple persons, animals, etc. you indicate just one or a few:

– Qu'est-ce qu'il est beau, ce garçon !

– *How beautiful is that boy!*

– Lequel ? **Celui de** gauche ou **celui de** droite ?

– *Which one? The one on the left or the one on the right?*

– **Celui de** gauche.

– The one on the left.

- Qu'est-ce qu'elle est belle, cette fille ! – *How beautiful is that girl!*
 – Laquelle ? **Celle de** gauche ou **celle de** droite ? – *Which one? The one on the left or the one on the right?*
 – **Celle de** droite. – *The one on the right.*

You'll use these so-called *simple demonstrative pronouns*

- 1) when the *demonstrative pronoun* is followed by the preposition **de** (as in our examples: **de gauche, de droite**) or
 2) when the *demonstrative pronoun* is followed by a relative clause, for example **que**:

- Ces filles sont **celles que** j'ai repérées depuis longtemps. These girls are **the ones** I spotted a long time ago.
 Ces garçons sont **ceux que** j'ai repérés depuis longtemps. These boys are **the ones** I spotted a long time ago.

In all other cases, use the *compound* forms which attach **-ci** (here) ou **-là** (there):

- Quels beaux gâteaux ! Je prendrai **celui-ci**. What beautiful cakes! I'll take this one.
Ceux-là sont moins bons, par contre. Those ones are less delicious, however.

In summary:

		Demonstrative...		
		...adjectives	...pronouns (simple)	...pronouns (compound)
<i>masculine</i>	<i>singular</i>	ce, cet	celui	celui-ci / celui-là
	<i>plural</i>	ces	ceux	ceux-ci / ceux-là
<i>feminine</i>	<i>singular</i>	cette	celle	celle-ci / celle-là
	<i>plural</i>	ces	celles	celles-ci / celles-là

6.16 h muet vs. h aspiré

{AUDIO} Two rules govern the letter **h** in French:

1. You never pronounce it.
2. You divide words beginning with *h* into two groups: Group 1 with a so-called *mute h* and Group 2 with a so-called *aspirated h*.

The distinction between *mute h* and *aspirated h* can be captured in two rules:

1) a **mute h** commands contractions:

- le → l': **l'**hôtel, **l'**hôpital
de l'hôtel, **de l'**hôpital
à l'hôtel, **à l'**hôpital

2) a **mute h** allows *liaisons* :

- les → les_ : **les_**hôtels, **les_**hôpitaux
- des → des_ : **des_**hôtels, **des_**hôpitaux
- aux → aux_ : **aux_**hôtels, **aux_**hôpitaux

On the contrary, there are neither contractions nor liaisons before an *aspirated h*.

- le : **le** hachisch [lə aʃiʃ]
du hachisch de bonne qualité
un thé **au** hachisch
- les : **les** héros [le ɛʁo]
des : **des** héros [de ɛʁo]
aux : **aux** héros [o ɛʁo]



{Second Round} The following words always begin with an *aspirated h* (no contractions, no liaisons).

From now on, we'll mark an *aspirated h* with an asterisk [*].

la *Hollande	Holland
la *Hongrie	Hungary
le *hippie	hippie
le *hachisch	hashish
le *hobby	hobby
le *haricot	bean
la *haine	hatred
la *hauteur	height
la *honte	shame
le *hasard	luck, chance
le *héros	hero
*Hong-Kong	Hong Kong
*haut	high
*hurler	to shriek
la *honte	shame
le *hors-d'œuvre	appetiser



{Second Round} The following words all begin with a *mute h* and therefore require contractions and allow

liaisons (**l'**homme – **les_**hommes ; **l'**heure – **les_**heures ; **l'**histoire – **les_**histoires ; **l'**habitude – **les_**habitudes, etc.) :

homme <i>m.</i>	man
heure <i>f.</i>	hour
histoire <i>f.</i>	story, history
habitude <i>f.</i>	habit
heureux	happy
hésiter	to hesitate
herbe <i>f.</i>	grass
habiter	to live in
humain <i>m.</i>	human

hiver <i>m.</i>	winter
honneur <i>m.</i>	honor
hier	yesterday
horreur <i>f.</i>	horror
habiller	to dress
horizon <i>m.</i>	horizon
humeur <i>f.</i>	mood
hôpital <i>m.</i>	hospital
humide	humid
huile <i>f.</i>	oil
honnête	honest
horrible	horrible
hommage <i>m.</i>	tribute
horloge <i>f.</i>	clock
harmonie <i>f.</i>	harmony
honorer	to honor
hommage <i>m.</i>	tribute
horloge <i>f.</i>	clock
harmonie <i>f.</i>	harmony

Note also that the personal pronouns **me, te, le, la, se** drop the **-e** before action words starting with a *mute h*, but not before those starting with an aspirated *h*.

habiller *to dress*Mute *h*: le → l' | me → m'**haïr** *to hate*Aspirated *h*: no contractionJe l'**h**abille.
*I dress him.*Elle **m'**habille.
*She dresses me.*Je **l**e haïs.
*I hate him.*Elle **m**e haït.
She hates me.

6.17 Comparisons and Superlatives

{AUDIO} Sometimes you want to say that someone *is bigger* or *runs faster* than someone else. Or you might enthusiastically state that he or she is *the fastest*, *the greatest* and *the best*. In French, the magic words for comparisons and superlatives are **plus**, **moins** and **aussi**.

In English, you say *big*, *bigger*, *the biggest*. French can't do that. Instead, they always follow a pattern that is similar to the English *more...than* (**plus...que**) and *the most...* (**le plus...**):

Oscar est **plus grand que** Colin.

Oscar is **bigger than** Colin.

Oscar est **le plus grand** des trois frères.

Oscar is **the biggest** of the three brothers.

Moins...que (*less...than*) and **le moins...** (*the least...*) function in the same way:

Il est **moins** important **que** toi.

He is **less** important **than** you.

Il est **le moins** important.

He is **the least** important.

In situations of equality, use **aussi...que** (*as...as*):

Il est **aussi** important **que** toi.

He is **as** important **as** you.

Adjectives, summary:

Comparison

plus important **que**
more important than

moins important **que**
less important than

Superlative

le plus important
the most important

le moins important
the least important

Equality

aussi important **que**
as important as

Comparisons and superlatives of adverbs (instead of adjectives) follow the same pattern. Let's check **vite** *quickly*:

Comparison	Superlative	Equality
plus vite que <i>more quickly than</i>	le plus vite <i>the most quickly</i>	aussi vite que <i>as quickly as</i>
moins vite que <i>less quickly than</i>	le moins vite <i>the least quickly</i>	

Please note that after the comparative **que** only stressed pronouns (**moi, toi, lui/elles | nous, vous, eux/elles**) are allowed.

Il est plus important que **toi**.

He is more important than **you** (are).

In Level xxx, we'll present comparisons of nouns and verbs.

6.18 Silent letters (6)



{Second Round} {AUDIO} Letters other than C, R, F, L (careful), B, K and Q are usually silent at the end of a word.

	Don't pronounce the final d	Pronounce the final consonant
D	grand	big
	le pied	foot
	le regard	glance, gaze
	tard	late
	lourd	heavy
	chaud	hot
	allemand	German
		In some proper nouns David

	Don't pronounce the final g		Pronounce the final consonant	
G	le sang	blood	le gro g	grog
	long	long		
	le poing	fist		
	rang	rank		
	faubourg	suburb		
	hareng	hering		

Please note that words imported from English retain the final –ing pronunciation: parking, meeting, smoking, dancing, building, camping, big bang.

	Don't pronounce the final m		Pronounce the final consonant	
M	le nom	name	le film	fil m
	la faim	hunger	le forum	for u m
	le parfum	perfume	un album	albu m
	le daim	deer	un *harem	hare m
			le maximum	maximu m
			le rhum	ru m
			le minimum	minimu m
			opium <i>m.</i>	opi u m

	Don't pronounce the final n		Pronounce the final consonant	
N	le son	sound	ame n	amen
	mon	my		
	la main	hand		
	bon	good		
	an	year		
	la maison	house		
	loin	far		
	enfin	finally		

The final –n is almost always silent. Note that it causes the preceding vowel to become nasal.

	Don't pronounce the final p		Pronounce the final consonant	
P	beaucoup	a lot	la cap p	cape
	trop	too, too much	et ho p !	and there you have it!
	le champ	field	le sli p	pants
	le camp	camp	sto p	stop
	le drap	sheet	le hold-up p	hold-up
	le galop	gallop	la jee p	jeep
	le sirop	syrup	le handica p	handicap
	le sparadrap	plaster	le pick-up p	pick-up

In typical French words the final –p is not pronounced. In words imported from other languages, it generally is.

	Don't pronounce the final s		Pronounce the final consonant	
S	ne...pas	not	le fili s	son
	les os	bones	un o s	bone
	dans	in	héla s	unfortunately
	sans	without	mar s	March
	le temps	time, weather	mœur s <i>f.</i>	customs, habits
	jamais	never	un our s	bear
	très	very	le cyprè s	cypress
	toujours	always		

Don't pronounce the final t		Pronounce the final consonant	
T	et	and	sept 7
	tout	everything	huit 8
	petit	small	ouest west
	dont	whose, of which	direct direct
	la nuit	night	le contact contact
	enfant <i>m./f.</i>	child	compact compact
	le moment	moment	le concept concept
	maintenant	now	le rapt kidnapping

Don't pronounce the final x		Pronounce the final consonant	
X	la voix	voice	dix 10
	vieux	old	six 6
	mieux	better	un index index
	heureux	happy	Aix-en-Provence city in southern France
	doux	soft	le silex flint
	faux	wrong	le kleenex kleenex
	le prix	price, prize	le duplex split-level apartment
	la paix	peace	le latex latex
	le choix	choice	
	curieux	curious	

		Don't pronounce the final z	Pronounce the final consonant	
Z	chez	at	le gaz	
	assez	enough	le jazz	jazz
	le nez	nose	la merguez	spicy sausage
	le riz	rice	le fritz	German (<i>offensive</i>)
	le raz	current	le quartz	quartz
			un ersatz	ersatz
			le showbiz	showbiz
			le jerez	sherry
			le kibboutz	kibbutz

III. Results & Preview

1.

{AUDIO} Do you remember

	Présent
je	veux
tu	veux
il/elle	veut
nous	voul ons
vous	voulez
ils/elles	veulent

2.

{AUDIO} Do you remember

	Présent
je	prends
tu	prends
il/elle	prend
nous	prenons
vous	prenez
ils/elles	prennent

	Futur
je	prendrai
tu	prendras
il/elle	prendra
nous	prendrons
vous	prendrez
ils/elles	prendront

	Subjonctif présent
que je	prenne
que tu	prennes
qu'il/elle	prenne
que nous	prenions
que vous	preniez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	prennent

3.

{AUDIO} Do you remember at least two action words of each group?

il faut	to have to
espérer	to hope to
penser	to think
pouvoir	to be able to
aimer mieux	to rather
adorer	to love
sembler	to seem to be

avoir besoin de	to need to
avoir envie de	to feel like (-ing)
avoir l'intention de	to intend to
avoir raison de	to be right to
avoir tort de	to be wrong to
avoir l'air de	to seem to be (-ing)
avoir peur de	to be afraid of (-ing)

penser à	to think of (-ing)
se mettre à	to start (-ing)
tenir à	to insist on (-ing)
hésiter à	to hesitate to
s'attendre à	to expect to
s'amuser à	to have fun (-ing)
chercher à	to attempt to

4.

{AUDIO} Is the difference between men and women clear to you?

- Kissed, undressed and caressed one or more men?
1 : je l'ai embrassé, je l'ai déshabillé, je l'ai caressé
2-∞ : je les ai embrassés, je les ai déshabillés, je les ai caressés
- Kissed, undressed and caressed one or more women?
1 : je l'ai embrassée, je l'ai déshabillée, je l'ai caressée
2-∞ : je les ai embrassées, je les ai déshabillées, je les ai caressées

Have you memorized the *present tense* of **boire** to drink, **courir** to run, **recevoir** to receive, **battre** to beat, **conduire** to drive, etc.?

5.

{AUDIO} Do you remember the condom examples?

Je n'aime pas la **capote** que tu as choisie. I don't like the condom you've chosen.

Je n'aime pas les **capotes** que tu as achetées. I don't like the condoms you bought.

6.

{AUDIO} Do you remember the extremely versatile **tout**?

Je veux tout.	I want it all.
C'est tout.	That's all.
Tout est parfait.	Everything's perfect.
avant tout	above all
malgré tout	nevertheless ('in spite of everything')

7.

And finally, do you remember

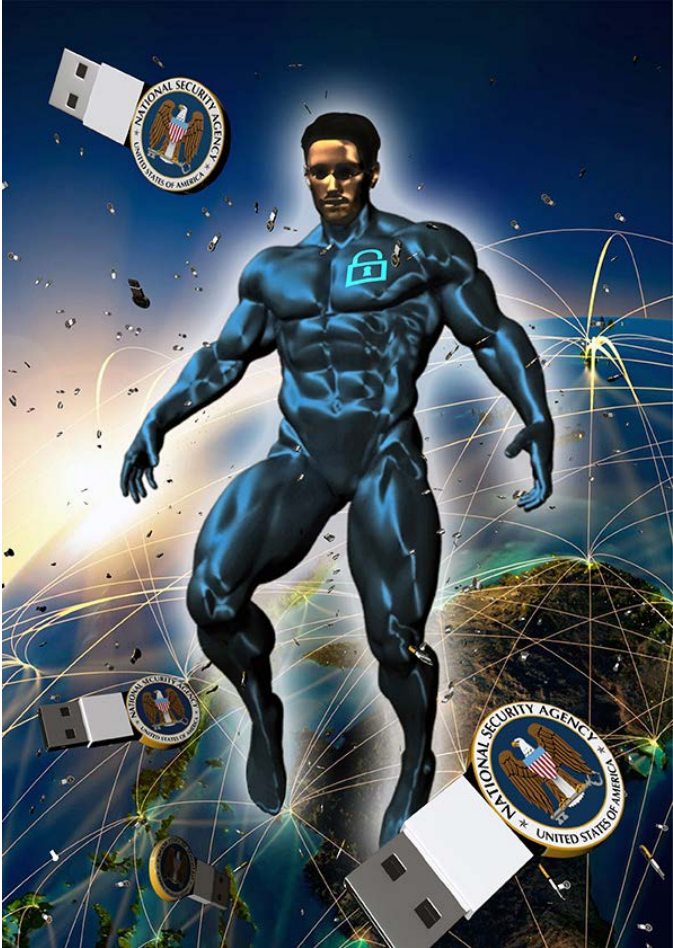
Singular		Plural		
<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	
le mien	la mienne	les miens	les miennes	mine
le tien	la tienne	les tiens	les tiennes	yours
le sien	la sienne	les siens	les siennes	his, hers, its
le nôtre	la nôtre	les nôtres	les nôtres	ours
le vôtre	la vôtre	les vôtres	les vôtres	yours
le leur	la leur	les leurs	les leurs	theirs

Well then, you've been promoted to Level 7!

Outlook

In Level 7 you will discover the action words **dire** *to say*, **pouvoir** *to be able to*, **falloir** *to have to* and **ouvrir** *to open*, but as it is the seventh day, you won't do grammar. At the end of the second grammar overview, take a breath and look back at what you've accomplished.

7 Nobel for Snowden



Copyright © 2016 N. Allan – Mosca

{ GigaFrench.com/level07 }

Edward Snowden recevra-t-il un jour le **Prix Nobel de la Paix** ? Son coup de génie le vaudrait bien: dévoiler que la National Security Agency (NSA) américaine espionnait citoyens américains, nations et entreprises étrangères, ennemies et amies ; d'expliquer que cet espionnage était massif et illégal ; et de dénoncer l'hypocrisie des États-Unis, qui mettaient sur écoute leurs alliés mêmes*. La politique entre nations ne connaîtrait-elle plus d'amis ?

Edward Snowden – quel courage ! À l'aide d'une minuscule clé USB, tel un Prométhée des temps modernes, il dérobe une quantité énorme de documents ultraconfidentiels (plus d'un million aux dernières nouvelles !), quitte les États-Unis en mai 2013 et confie ces documents aux trois journalistes Laura Poitras, Glenn Greenwald et Ewen MacAskill. Deux semaines plus tard, le *Guardian* et le *Washington Post* publient les premiers articles sur le système de surveillance et d'espionnage des États-Unis. D'autres journaux ([Le Monde](#), [El](#)

Will Edward Snowden win the Nobel Peace Prize one day? His stroke of genius would be worth it: revealing that the National Security Agency (NSA) was spying on American citizens, foreign nations and companies, enemies and friends; explaining that this spying was massive and illegal; and denouncing the hypocrisy of the United States, who even eavesdropped on their allies. Politics between nations wouldn't know friends anymore? (Wouldn't there be friendship between nations anymore?)

Edward Snowden - what courage! Using a tiny USB stick, like a Prometheus of modern times, he steals a huge amount of ultra-confidential documents (over a million at last count!), leaves the United States in May 2013 and entrusts these documents to three journalists, Laura Poitras, Glenn Greenwald and Ewen MacAskill. Two weeks later, the *Guardian* and the *Washington Post* publish the first articles on the system of surveillance and espionage of the United States. Other newspapers (*Le Monde*, *El Mundo*, *Der Spiegel*, *The New York Times*, and *The*

Mundo, Der Spiegel, le New York Times, et The Intercept) suivront. Edward Snowden, quant à lui, en est réduit à se réfugier en Russie pour échapper à un procès dont on imagine l'impartialité...

Edward Snowden – quelle détermination ! En révélant le système illégal d'écoute massive des États-Unis, il renonce à sa famille et à un salaire de 200.000 dollars par an. Il sacrifie une vie confortable à un bien supérieur : « Je suis prêt à tout sacrifier », déclare-t-il, « car je ne peux pas, en conscience, laisser le gouvernement américain détruire la protection de la vie privée, la liberté sur Internet et les libertés de base dans le monde avec la machine de surveillance qu'il est en train de construire. » (Le Figaro, 5 Mars 2016)

Edward Snowden – quelle force ! « Le gouvernement américain ne pourra pas étouffer [cette affaire] en m'emprisonnant ou en me tuant. La vérité est en marche et ne pourra pas être arrêtée », explique-t-il lors d'un échange en direct avec des internautes sur le site du Guardian (“All I can say right now is the US Government is not going

Intercept) follow. Edward Snowden, meanwhile, is driven to taking refuge in Russia to escape a trial whose impartiality we imagine... (...a trial we imagine would not be impartial.)

Edward Snowden - what determination! By revealing the illegal system of mass surveillance of the US, he gives up his family and a salary of \$200,000 a year. He sacrifices a comfortable life for a higher good: “I am ready to sacrifice everything,” he declares, “because I can not in conscience allow the US government to destroy the protection of privacy, the freedom on the Internet and the basic freedoms in the world with the surveillance machine it is currently building.”

Edward Snowden - what a force! “The US government can not stifle [the matter] by jailing me or killing me. The truth is out there and can not be stopped,” he says during a live exchange with netizens on the Guardian website.

to be able to cover this up by jailing or murdering me. Truth is coming, and it cannot be stopped.” (The Guardian, cité par Libération, 5 Mars 2016)

Aux États-Unis, certains ont fantasmé, publiquement ou en privé, la mise à mort d'Edward Snowden. L'histoire les oubliera. En avril 2014, le prix Pulitzer est attribué au *Guardian* et au *Washington Post* pour avoir publié les révélations de Snowden sur le système de surveillance de masse de la NSA. Edward Snowden, lui, entrera dans l'histoire comme le champion de la transparence. Il recevra un jour le Prix Nobel de la Paix. Inclignons-nous devant son courage, sa détermination et sa force.

In the US, some have fantasised, publicly or privately, about the killing of Edward Snowden. History will forget them. In April 2014, the Pulitzer Prize is awarded to the Guardian and the Washington Post for having published Snowden's revelations about NSA mass surveillance. Edward Snowden will enter history as the champion of transparency. He will one day receive the Nobel Peace Prize. Let us bow our heads to his courage, determination and strength.

* Des bureaux de l'Union européenne à Washington et à New York, ainsi qu'un bâtiment de l'Union Européenne à Bruxelles (CNN, <http://edition.cnn.com/2013/07/01/world/europe/eu-nsa> – accessed 5 March 2016).

Words

{AUDIO}

recevoir	to receive	tel	like
un jour	one day	moderne	modern
le prix	prize	dérober	to steal
la paix	peace		
le coup	stroke	la quantité	amount, quantity
le génie	genius	énorme	huge
valoir	to be worth	le document	document
		ultraconfidentiel	ultraconfidential
il le vaudrait bien	it would be worth it	aux dernières nouvelles	at last count (at last news)
dévoiler	to reveal	quitter	to leave
espionner	to spy	en mai 2013	in May 2013
le citoyen	citizen		
la nation	nation	confier	to entrust
une entreprise	company	le journaliste	journalist
étranger	foreign	la semaine	week
		plus tard	later
ennemi	enemy	publier	to publish
ami	friend	premier, première	first
expliquer	to explain	un article	article
un espionnage	spying		
massif	massive	le système	system
illégal	illegal	la surveillance	surveillance
dénoncer	to denounce	d'autres journaux	other newspapers
une hypocrisie	hypocrisy	suivre	to follow
mettre sur écoute	to eavesdrop	quant à lui	meanwhile (as far as he is concerned)
un allié	ally		
la politique	politics	en être réduit à	to be driven to (to be reduced to)
entre	between	se réfugier	to take refuge
le courage	courage		
à l'aide de	using (with the help of)		
une clé USB	USB stick		

la Russie Russia
 échapper to escape
 le procès trial
 dont of which
 imaginer to imagine
 l'impartialité *f.* impartiality
 la détermination determination

renoncer to give up
 la famille family
 le salaire salary
 par an a year
 sacrifier to sacrifice
 confortable comfortable
 le bien good

supérieur superior
 déclarer to declare
 car because
 la conscience conscience
 laisser to let, to allow
 le gouverne- government
 ment
 la protection protection

la vie privée privacy
 la liberté freedom
 les libertés de basic freedoms
 base
 la machine machine
 être en train de to be doing
 construire to build
 la force force

étouffer to stifle
 une affaire matter
 emprisonner to jail
 tuer to kill
 la vérité truth
 être en marche to be in
 operation
 arrêter to stop

lors during
 un échange exchange
 en direct live
 un internaute netizen
 le site website
 fantasmer to fantasise
 publiquement publicly

en privé in private
 la mise à mort the killing
 l'histoire *f.* history
 oublier to forget
 attribuer to award
 la révélation revelation
 entrer to enter

le champion champion
 la transparence transparency
 s'incliner to bow your
 head
 inclinons-nous let us bow our
 heads
 devant in front of

the time when you'll understand, for the first time and distinctly, every single word of the MP3 audio file you are listening to. You'll have conquered an "island of total understanding".

The 8 audio files of the current *GigaFrench* edition total about 20 minutes of recording. Listening to them 100 times requires about 30 hours. A perfect understanding – word for word! – of these 8 pieces with more than 2,600 words is just around the corner of your life. You can do it in less than two months! Don't stop now!

7.2 Preview

If your main interest is learning contemporary vocabulary, memorize all the words (100%) and then go on to *Brexit* on page 483.

For a more intimate experience of French, please continue here. As always, make extensive use of the audio files (listen, listen, and listen again!).

I. Action Words

7.3 Dire

{AUDIO}

Infinitif	dire <i>to say</i>
Participe passé	dit
Participe présent	disant
Impératif	dis disons dites

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	dis	disais	dis
tu	dis	disais	dis
il/elle	dit	disait	dit
nous	disons	disions	dîmes
vous	dites	disiez	dîtes
ils/elles	disent	disaient	dirent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	dirai	dirais
tu	diras	dirais
il/elle	dira	dirait
nous	dirons	dirions
vous	direz	diriez
ils/elles	diront	diraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	dise	disse
que tu	dises	disSES
qu'il/elle	dise	dît
que nous	disions	disSions
que vous	disiez	disSiez
qu'ils/elles	disent	disSissent

7.4 Pouvoir

{AUDIO}

Infinitif	pouvoir <i>to be able to</i>
Participe passé	pu
Participe présent	pouvant
Impératif	–

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	peux	pouvais	pus
tu	peux	pouvais	pus
il/elle	peut	pouvait	put
nous	pouvons	pouvions	pûmes
vous	pouvez	pouviez	pûtes
ils/elles	peuvent	pouvaient	purent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	pourrai	pourrais
tu	pourras	pourrais
il/elle	pourra	pourrait
nous	pourrions	pourrions
vous	pourriez	pourriez
ils/elles	pourront	pourraient

	Subjonctif présent <i>(irregular)</i>	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	puisse	pusse
que tu	puisses	pusses
qu'il/elle	puisse	pût
que nous	puissions	pussions
que vous	puissiez	pussiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	puissent	pussent

7.5 Falloir

{AUDIO}

Infinitif **falloir** *to have to, need to*

Participe passé **fallu**

il	Présent faut	Imparfait fallait	Passé simple fallut
	Futur faudra	Conditionnel présent faudrait	
qu'il	Subjonctif présent faill	Subjonctif imparfait fallût	

Falloir is a defective action word – only the 3rd person singular exists. It is used in two different ways. In the first variant it attaches the **infinitive** of a second action word:

Il **faut** absolument **acheter** des capotes anglaises. We/You/They must absolutely buy condoms.

Il **faut** le **faire** tout de suite. It must be done immediately.

In this variant, only the context will tell you who has to perform the imperative action. (P.S. **Capote** can be the hood of a car or a military greatcoat. When stated explicitly as being **anglais** *English*, it's a condom.)

The second variant is more precise but also unwieldy: **falloir + que + subjonctif**.

Il faut que tu le **fasses** tout de suite. You must do it immediately.

Encore faut-il que tu **puisses** la mettre (la copote, bien sûr). But it's still necessary that you can put it on.

7.6 Group 3: Ouvrir

Remember Group 3 action words with its 4 different types of endings in the **présent**:

	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3	Type 4
je	-s	-e	-ds	-x
tu	-s	-es	-ds	-x
il/elle	-t	-e	-d	-t
nous	-ons	-ons	-ons	-ons
vous	-ez	-ez	-ez	-ez
ils/elles	-ent	-ent	-ent	-ent

Today, we'll see Type 2 words.

ouvrir *to open*

couvrir *to cover*

découvrir *to discover*

souffrir *to suffer*

{AUDIO}

Infinitif	ouvrir <i>to open</i>
Participe passé	ouvert
Participe présent	ouvrant
Impératif	ouvre ouvrons ouvrez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
j'	ouvre	ouvrais	ouvris
tu	ouvres	ouvrais	ouvris
il/elle	ouvre	ouvrait	ouvrit
nous	ouvrons	ouvriions	ouvrîmes
vous	ouvrez	ouvriez	ouvrîtes
ils/elles	ouvrent	ouvraient	ouvrirent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
j'	ouvrirai	ouvrirais
tu	ouvriras	ouvrirais
il/elle	ouvrira	ouvrirait
nous	ouvrirons	ouvririons
vous	ouvrirez	ouvririez
ils/elles	ouvriront	ouvriraient
	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que j'	ouvre	ouvrisse
que tu	ouvres	ouvrisses
qu'il/elle	ouvre	ouvrît
que nous	ouvrions	ouvrissions
que vous	ouvriez	ouvrissiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	ouvrent	ouvrissent

You'll need to remember:

- The endings of the present singular: **-e, -es, -e.**
- The *past participle* ending in **-ert** : ouvrir → **ouvert**, couvrir → **couvert**, découvrir → **découvert**, souffrir → **souffert**.
- The *present* 1st person plural **ouvrons** serving as a model for the **imparfait** (**ouvrons** → ouvr- → j'ouvr**ais**, tu ouvr**ais**, il/elle ouvr**ait**, etc.)
- The *present* 3rd person plural **ouvrent** serving as a model for the **subjonctif présent** (**ouvrent** → **ouvr-** → que je ouvre – que tu ouvres – qu'il/elle ouvre, etc.

Everything else is standard procedure.

7.7 Subjonctif (5)

{AUDIO} Let's continue with some impersonal expressions which require the use of the **subjonctif**.

c'est dommage que	it's a pity that
il vaut mieux que	it's better that
il faut que	one needs to
il est normal que	it is normal that
il semble que	it seems that
il est incroyable que	it is incredible that
Il est important nécessaire possible impossible naturel probable difficile...que	It is important necessary possible impossible natural probable difficult that...

C'est dommage que tu ne puisses pas venir.	It's a pity that you cannot come.
Il faut absolument que tu saches la vérité.	It's imperative that you know the truth.

7.8 Irregular Future Stems (3)

{AUDIO} In Level 3 (page 268) you learned the irregular future stems of important action words. Please take a second look:

Infinitive	Future	
avoir	j' aurai	I will have
être	je serai	I will be
faire	je ferai	I will do
aller	j' irai	I will go
vouloir	je voudrai	I will want
pouvoir	je pourrai	I will be able
voir	je verrai	I will see
revoir	je reverrai	I will see again

venir	je viendrai	I will come
revenir	je reviendrai	I will come back
devenir	je deviendrai	I will become
tenir	je tiendrai	I will hold
obtenir	j' obtiendrai	I will obtain
maintenir	je maintiendrai	I will keep
soutenir	je soutiendrai	I will support
savoir	je saurai	I will know
devoir	je devrai	I will have to
falloir	il faudra	it will be necessary
courir	je courrai	I will run
parcourir	je parcourrai	I will roam
concourir	je concourrai	I will compete
recevoir	je recevrai	I will receive
pleuvoir	il pleuvra	it will rain
valoir	je vaudrai	I will be worth
mourir	je mourrai	I will die
envoyer	j' enverrai	I will send
acquérir	j' acquerrai	I will buy
conquérir	je conquerrai	I will conquer

You'll soon discover that some **Group 1 action words** also have spelling changes in the **présent** (appeler → j'appelle [page 520], employer → j'emploie [page 537], acheter → j'achète [page 528]). To obtain the *future stem* of these action words, just add **-r** to the **1st person singular**. In the following table, please memorize also the 1st person singular. More details will be presented in Level xxx.

Infinitive	1 st person singular	Future	
appeler	j'appelle	j' appellerai	I will call
renouveler	je renouvelle	je renouvelerai	I will renew
épeler	j'épelle	j' épellerai	I will spell
rappeler	je rappelle	je rappellerai	I will call back I will remember
jeter	je jette	je jetterai	I will throw
projeter	je projette	je projetterai	I will project
rejeter	je rejette	je rejetterai	I will reject
acheter	j'achète	j' achèterai	I will buy
se lever	je me lève	je me lèverai	I will stand up
se promener	je me promène	je me promènerai	I will go for a walk
amener	j'amène	j' amènerai	I will bring
emmener	j'emmène	j' emmènerai	I will take, carry
achever	j'achève	j' achèverai	I will complete
payer	je paie	je paierai	I will pay
essayer	j'essaie	j' essaierai	I will try
balayer	je balaie	je balaierai	I will sweep
employer	j'emploie	j' emploierai	I will employ
nettoyer	je nettoie	je nettoierai	I will clean
tutoyer	je tutoie	je tutoierai	I'll address as 'tu' (I'll use the informal)
vousvoyer	je vousvoie	je vousvoierai	I'll address as 'vous' (I'll use the formal)
noyer	je noie	je noierai	I will drown (someone)
appuyer	j'appuie	j' appuierai	I will support, lean
ennuyer	j'ennuie	j' ennuierai	I will bore
essuyer	j'essuie	j' essuierai	I will wipe

7.9 Action Word + Action Word (3)

{AUDIO}

7.9.1 No preposition

Find another 7 actions words that are followed by **no** preposition. The formula: [action word] + [action word].

désirer	to want to
souhaiter	to wish to
détester	to hate to
oser	to dare to
prétendre	to pretend to
compter	to intend to
regarder quelqu'un	to watch someone

7.9.2 de

Seven action words followed by the preposition **de**.

essayer de	to try to
venir de faire quelque chose	to have just done something
choisir de	to choose to
s'agir de	it's a question of (-ing)
arrêter de	to stop (-ing)
rêver de	to dream of (-ing)
tâcher de	to try to

7.9.3 à

Seven actions words followed by the preposition **à**.

apprendre à	to learn how to
s'habituer à	to get used to (-ing)
arriver à	to manage / succeed in (-ing)
obliger (quelqu'un) à	to force (someone) to
réfléchir à	to consider (-ing)
résister à	to resist (-ing)
inviter (quelqu'un) à	to invite (someone) to

II. Grammar

In an ideal world, people should not work on the seventh day and shops should remain closed. So you shall rest and not do grammar.

Outlook

Levels 8 to 14 represent the second *GigaFrench* cycle. Although we'll show you more action words at the beginning of each chapter, you'll soon realize, that apart from a few details, you already know it all! Grammar, too, is basically over. You'll find a few construction sites here and there, but the *GigaFrench* grammar study will now evolve into a gentlemen's conversation. From now on, you'll focus on what is your last huge task in French: learning thousands of words. As always, we'll be there to give you the best advice.

8 Brexit



2016 Atlantic Ocean – Modified version of a picture by NASA's Earth Observatory (<http://earthobservatory.nasa.gov/IOTD/view.php?id=84468>)

© Copyright NASA 2012

{ GigaFrench.com/level08 } Vous avez donc décidé de nous quitter ? Eh bien, chers amis anglais, nous vous souhaitons un bon voyage. Adieu !

Certes, nos relations n'ont pas toujours été bonnes - nous vous tenions rancœur d'[Azincourt](#), de Trafalgar et de Waterloo. Mais il est vrai aussi qu'après la guerre de 1940, nous avions passé l'éponge, car sans vous, nous aurions vécu plus longtemps encore sous le régime nazi. Nous ne l'oublierons jamais ! Espérons seulement que votre départ ne sera pas la fin du projet d'une Europe unie et solidaire - et la fin de 70 ans de paix.

Seriez-vous des déserteurs ? Il y a sûrement un droit à la désertion - l'on peut (et devrait !) fuir un régime nazi, un régime fasciste laïque ou religieux ou n'importe quel autre régime totalitaire. Mais désertier le plus important projet politique de l'histoire européenne relève de la démence. En plein désarroi global, vous vous payez le luxe d'un splendide autisme politique et d'enfermer votre pays dans un isolement psychotique. Faut-il être enfoiré !

So you have decided to leave us? Well, dear English friends, we wish you a good trip. Farewell!

Admittedly, our relations have not always been good - we cultivated resentment for [Agincourt](#), Trafalgar and Waterloo. But it is also true that after the Second World War, we had passed the sponge, because without you, we would have lived even longer under the Nazi regime. We will never forget! Let's just hope your leaving will not be the end of the project of a united and cohesive Europe - and the end of 70 years of peace.

Would you be deserters? There is surely a right to desert - you can (and should!) flee a Nazi regime, a secular or religious fascist regime or any other totalitarian regime. But deserting the most important political project in European history is a sign of dementia. Right in the middle of global confusion, you afford the luxury of splendid political autism and lock your country in psychotic isolation. Must be a bastard!

Si vous avez voté pour le Brexit, laissez passer quelques années avant de revenir voyager en Europe. Si vous revenez trop tôt sur notre cher continent - qui ne sera plus le vôtre ! - on vous traitera de déserteurs, de lâches, de traîtres, de fuyards, de dégonflés, de déloyaux, de chiffes molles et de poules mouillées.

Votre départ de notre Europe marquera le début d'une longue dérive où votre petite île se perdra toujours plus dans les eaux de l'Atlantique. Vous avez tourné le dos à l'Europe - rien ne sera plus comme avant ! Vos enfants et petits-enfants vous accuseront un jour d'avoir été fous à lier.

If you voted for Brexit, let a few years go by before returning to travel to Europe. If you come back too soon to our dear continent - which will no longer be yours! – people will treat you as deserters, cowards, traitors, fugitives, deflated, disloyal, Milquetoasts and wimps.

Your leaving our Europe will mark the beginning of a long drift where your little island will get increasingly lost in Atlantic waters. You have turned your back on Europe - nothing will ever be like before! Your children and grandchildren will accuse you one day of having been raving mad.

Words

{AUDIO}

donc	so, so then	vrai	true
décider	to decide	aussi	also
quitter	to leave	après	after
eh bien	well		
cher	dear	la guerre	war
un ami	friend	passer l'éponge	to pass the sponge
souhaiter	to wish		
		nous aurions vécu	we would have lived
bon, bonne	good	plus longtemps encore	even longer
adieu	farewell	le régime	regime
la relation	relation, relationship	nazi	Nazi
la rancœur	resentment		

jamais	never	laisser	to let
le déserteur	deserter	passer	to go by
sûrement	surely	quelques années	a few years
le droit	right	avant de	before
la désertion	desertion	revenir	to return, to come back
l'on peut	one can		
l'on devrait	one should	voyager	to travel
fuir	to flee	trop tôt	too early
fasciste	fascist	le vôtre	yours
laïque	secular	traiter de	to treat as
religieux	religious	lâche	coward
n'importe quel	any other	le traître	traitor
totalitaire	totalitarian		
		le fuyard	fugitive
le plus important	the most important	dégonflé	deflated
le projet	project	déloyal	disloyal
européen, européenne	European	une chiffre molle	Milquetoast
la démence	dementia	une poule mouillée	wimp
relever de la démence	to be a sign of dementia	le départ	leaving, departure
en plein	right in the middle of	marquer	to mark
le désarroi	confusion		
		le début	beginning
se payer le luxe de	to afford the luxury of	la dérive	drift
splendide	splendid	où	where
un autisme	autism	une île	island
enfermer	to lock	se perdre	to get lost
un isolement	isolation	toujours plus	increasingly
psychotique	psychotic	les eaux	waters
faut-il être	must be		
		l'Atlantique	Atlantic Ocean
enfoiré	bastard, asshole	le dos	back
voter	to vote	tourner le dos à	to turn your back to
		rien	nothing
		comme avant	like before
		les enfants	children

1. figure out which word corresponds to which sound;
2. learn the meaning of the words;
3. memorise the spelling of the words.

If a single MP3 audio file lasts 2 minutes and if you listen to all “portions” 10 times, each round will last 20 minutes. During the following weeks you will repeat this exercise around 10 times for each audio file. In all, you’ll therefore hear each portion of each audio file 100 times. Then will come the time when you’ll understand, for the first time and distinctly, every single word of the MP3 audio file you are listening to. You’ll have conquered an “island of total understanding”.

The 8 audio files of the current *GigaFrench* edition total about 20 minutes of recording. Listening to them 100 times requires about 30 hours. A perfect understanding – word for word! – of these 8 pieces with more than 2,600 words is just around the corner of your life. You can do it in less than two months! What a triumph!

9 The Future

The 5th edition of *GigaFrench* including Level 8, 9 and 10 (600+ pages) will be published in October 2016. The 6th edition (700+ pages) is scheduled for publication at Christmas 2016.

For future updates, please check
www.GigaFrench.com/updates.

10 Appendix



{Second Round} The appendix includes material that will be published in future editions of *GigaFrench*.

10.1 Savoir

Infinitif	savoir <i>to know</i>
Participe passé	su
Participe présent	sachant
Impératif	sache sachons sachez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	sais	savais	sus
tu	sais	savais	sus
il/elle	sait	savait	sut
nous	savons	savions	sûmes
vous	savez	saviez	sûtes
ils/elles	savent	savaient	surent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	saurai	saurais
tu	sauras	saurais
il/elle	saura	saurait
nous	saurons	saurions
vous	saurez	sauriez
ils/elles	sauront	sauraient

	Subjonctif présent <i>(irregular)</i>	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	sache	susse
que tu	saches	susses
qu'il/elle	sache	sût
que nous	sachions	sussions
que vous	sachiez	sussiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	sachent	sussent

10.2 Voir

Infinitif	voir <i>to see</i>
Participe passé	vu
Participe présent	voyant
Impératif	vois voyons voyez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	vois	voyais	vis
tu	vois	voyais	vis
il/elle	voit	voyait	vit
nous	voyons	voyions	vîmes
vous	voyez	voyiez	vîtes
ils/elles	voient	voyaient	virent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	verrai	verrais
tu	verras	verrais
il/elle	verra	verrait
nous	verrons	verrions
vous	verrez	verriez
ils/elles	verront	verraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	voie	visse
que tu	voies	visSES
qu'il/elle	voie	vît
que nous	voyions	visSIONS
que vous	voyiez	visSIEZ
qu'ils/ qu'elles	voient	visSENT

10.3 Devoir

Infinitif	devoir <i>to have to, must</i>
Participe passé	dû
Participe présent	devant

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	dois	devais	dus
tu	dois	devais	dus
il/elle	doit	devait	dut
nous	devons	devions	dûmes
vous	devez	deviez	dûtes
ils/elles	doivent	devaient	durent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	devrai	devrais
tu	devras	devrais
il/elle	devra	devrait
nous	devrons	devrions
vous	devrez	devriez
ils/elles	devront	devraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	doive	duisse
que tu	doives	duusses
qu'il/elle	doive	dût
que nous	devions	dussions
que vous	deviez	dussiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	doivent	dussent

10.4 Group 3: Attendre

Infinitif	attendre <i>to wait</i>
Participe passé	attendu
Participe présent	attendant
Impératif	attends attendons attendez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
j'	attends	attendais	attendis
tu	attends	attendais	attendis
il/elle	attend	attendait	attendit
nous	attendons	attendions	attendîmes
vous	attendez	attendiez	attendîtes
ils/elles	attendent	attendaient	attendirent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
j'	attendrai	attendrais
tu	attendras	attendrais
il/elle	attendra	attendrait
nous	attendrons	attendrions
vous	attendrez	attendriez
ils/elles	attendront	attendraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que j'	attende	attendisse
que tu	attendes	attendisses
qu'il/elle	attende	attendît
que nous	attendions	attendissions
que vous	attendiez	attendissiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	attendent	attendissent

10.5 Group 1: Sucer

Infinitif	sucer <i>to suck</i>
Participe passé	sucé
Participe présent	suçant
Impératif	suce suçons sucez

	sucer	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	suce	suçais	suçai
tu	suces	suçais	suças
il/elle	suce	suçait	suça
nous	suçons	sucions	suçâmes
vous	sucez	suciez	suçâtes
ils/elles	sucent	suçaient	sucèrent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	sucerais	sucerais
tu	suceras	sucerais
il/elle	sucera	sucerait
nous	sucérons	suceri ons
vous	sucerez	sucerie ez
ils/elles	suceront	suceraie nt

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	suce	suçasse
que tu	suces	suçasses
qu'il/elle	suce	suçât
que nous	sucions	suçassions
que vous	suciez	suçassiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	sucent	suçassent

10.6 S'en aller

Infinitif	s'en aller <i>to go away</i>
Participe passé	allé(e)(s)
Participe présent	s'en allant
Impératif	va-t'en allons-nous-en allez-vous-en

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	m'en vais	m'en allais	m'en allai
tu	t'en vas	t'en allais	t'en allas
il/elle	s'en va	s'en allait	s'en alla
nous	nous en allons	nous en allions	nous en allâmes
vous	vous en allez	vous en alliez	vous en allâtes
ils/elles	s'en vont	s'en allaient	s'en allèrent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	m'en irai	m'en irais
tu	t'en iras	t'en irais
il/elle	s'en ira	s'en irait
nous	nous en irons	nous en irions
vous	vous en irez	vous en iriez
ils/elles	s'en iront	s'en iraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	m'en aille	m'en allasse
que tu	t'en ailles	t'en allasses
qu'il/elle	s'en aille	s'en allât
que nous	nous en allions	nous en allussions
que vous	vous en alliez	vous en allussiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	s'en aillent	s'en allussent

10.7 Mettre

Infinitif	mettre <i>to put, place</i>
Participe passé	mis
Participe présent	mettant
Impératif	mets mettons mettez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	mets	mettais	mis
tu	mets	mettais	mis
il/elle	met	mettait	mit
nous	mettons	mettions	mîmes
vous	mettez	mettiez	mîtes
ils/elles	mettent	mettaient	mirent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	mettrai	mettrais
tu	mettras	mettrais
il/elle	mettra	mettrait
nous	mettrons	mettrions
vous	mettrez	mettriez
ils/elles	mettront	mettraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	mette	misse
que tu	mettes	misses
qu'il/elle	mette	mît
que nous	mettions	missions
que vous	mettiez	missiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	mettent	missent

10.8 Rire

Infinitif	rire <i>to laugh</i>
Participe passé	ri
Participe présent	riant
Impératif	ris rions riez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	ris	ria is	ris
tu	ris	ria is	ris
il/elle	rit	ria it	rit
nous	ri ons	ri ions	rîmes
vous	riez	rie z	rîtes
ils/elles	ri ent	ria ient	ri rent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	ri rai	ri rais
tu	ri ras	ri rais
il/elle	ri ra	ri rait
nous	ri rons	ri rions
vous	ri rez	ri riez
ils/elles	ri ront	ri raient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	ri e	risse
que tu	ri es	risse
qu'il/elle	ri e	ri t
que nous	ri ions	rissions
que vous	ri iez	rissiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	ri ent	rissent

10.9 Group 3: Recevoir

Infinitif	recevoir <i>to receive</i>
Participe passé	reçu
Participe présent	recevant
Impératif	reçois recevons recevez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	reçois	recevais	reçus
tu	reçois	recevais	reçus
il/elle	reçoit	recevait	reçut
nous	recevons	recevions	reçûmes
vous	recevez	receviez	reçûtes
ils/elles	reçoivent	recevaient	reçurent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	recevrai	recevrais
tu	recevras	recevrais
il/elle	recevra	recevrait
nous	recevrons	recevrions
vous	recevrez	recevriez
ils/elles	recevront	recevraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	reçoive	reçusse
que tu	reçoives	reçusses
qu'il/elle	reçoive	reçût
que nous	recevions	reçussions
que vous	receviez	reçussiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	reçoivent	reçussent

10.10 Group 1: Manger

Infinitif	manger <i>to eat</i>
Participe passé	mangé
Participe présent	mangeant
Impératif	mange mangeons mangez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	mange	mangeais	mangeai
tu	manges	mangeais	mangeas
il/elle	mange	mangeait	mangea
nous	mangeons	mangions	mangeâmes
vous	mangez	mangiez	mangeâtes
ils/elles	mangent	mangeaient	mangèrent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	mangerai	mangerais
tu	mangeras	mangerais
il/elle	mangera	mangerait
nous	mangerons	mangerions
vous	mangerez	mangeriez
ils/elles	mangeront	mangeraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	mange	mangeasse
que tu	manges	mangeasses
qu'il/elle	mange	mangeât
que nous	mangions	mangeassions
que vous	mangiez	mangeassiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	mangent	mangeassent

Following the same pattern:



Word cloud 6.3 – Manger, changer, bouger, etc.

1

changer	to change
partager	to share
échanger	to exchange, trade
voyager	to travel
protéger	to protect
encourager	to support, encourage
déranger	to disturb

2

juger	to judge
diriger	to guide
exiger	to demand, require
soulager	to relieve, ease
prolonger	to prolong, extend
envisager	to contemplate, consider
bouger	to move, move around

3

interroger	to question, examine
charger	to load, charge
obliger	to force, oblige
songer	to think, consider, dream
engager	to commit, engage
allonger	to lay down; make longer
plonger	to dive, plunge

4

arranger	to arrange, settle
ranger	to clean, put away
dégager	to clear, unblock
loger	to stay, lodge
longer	to go along
figer	to immobilize, fix in place
émerger	to surface, emerge
ronger	to gnaw, eat away at

10.11 Vivre

Infinitif	vivre <i>to live</i>
Participe passé	vécu
Participe présent	vivant
Impératif	vis vivons vivez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	vis	vivais	vécus
tu	vis	vivais	vécus
il/elle	vit	vivait	vécut
nous	vivons	vivions	vécûmes
vous	vivez	viviez	vécûtes
ils/elles	vivent	vivaient	vécurent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	vivrai	vivrais
tu	vivras	vivrais
il/elle	vivra	vivrait
nous	vivrons	vivrions
vous	vivrez	vivriez
ils/elles	vivront	vivraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	vive	vécusse
que tu	vives	vécusses
qu'il/elle	vive	vécût
que nous	vivions	vécussions
que vous	viviez	vécussiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	vivent	vécussent

10.12 Mourir

Infinitif	mourir <i>to die</i>
Participe passé	mort
Participe présent	mourant
Impératif	meurs mourons mourez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	meurs	mourais	mourus
tu	meurs	mourais	mourus
il/elle	meurt	mourait	mourut
nous	mourons	mourions	mourûmes
vous	mourez	mouriez	mourûtes
ils/elles	meurent	mouraient	moururent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	mourrai	mourrais
tu	mourras	mourrais
il/elle	mourra	mourrait
nous	mourrons	mourrions
vous	mourrez	mourriez
ils/elles	mourront	mourraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	meure	mourusse
que tu	meures	mourusses
qu'il/elle	meure	mourût
que nous	mourions	mourussions
que vous	mouriez	mourussiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	meurent	mourussent

10.13 Group 1: Mener

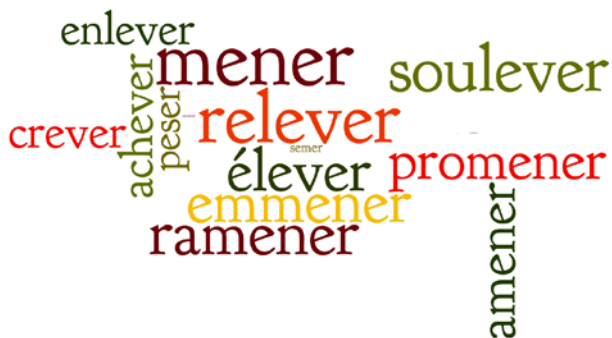
Infinitif	mener <i>to lead</i>
Participe passé	mené
Participe présent	menant
Impératif	mène menons menez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	mène	menais	menai
tu	mènes	menais	menas
il/elle	mène	menait	mena
nous	menons	menions	menâmes
vous	menez	meniez	menâtes
ils/elles	mènent	menaient	menèrent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	mènerai	mènerais
tu	mèneras	mènerais
il/elle	mènera	mènerait
nous	mènerons	mènerions
vous	mèneriez	mèneriez
ils/elles	mèneront	mèneraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	mène	menasse
que tu	mènes	menasses
qu'il/elle	mène	menât
que nous	menions	menassions
que vous	meniez	menassiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	mènent	menassent

Following the same pattern:



Word cloud 6.4 – Mener, soulever, promener, etc.

1

se lever	to stand up, get out of bed
se promener	to go for a walk
crever	to burst, puncture; to die
relever	to pick up
peser	to weigh
soulever	to lift up

2

prélever	to remove, debit
ramener	to take back, bring
emmener	to take, drive
élever	to raise, erect
amener	to bring, carry

3

achever	to finish, complete
enlever	to remove, kidnap
semer	to sow
parsemer	to scatter, sprinkle
malmener	to mistreat
sevrer	to wean

10.14 Croire

Infinitif	croire <i>to believe</i>
Participe passé	cru
Participe présent	croyant
Impératif	crois croyons croyez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	crois	cro yais	crus
tu	crois	croyais	crus
il/elle	croit	croyait	crut
nous	cro yons	croyions	crûmes
vous	croyez	croyiez	crûtes
ils/elles	cro ient	croyaient	crurent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	cro irai	cro irais
tu	croiras	croirais
il/elle	croira	croirait
nous	croirons	croirions
vous	croirez	croiriez
ils/elles	croiront	croiraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	cro ie	crusse
que tu	cro ies	crusses
qu'il/elle	cro ie	crût
que nous	croyions	crussions
que vous	croyiez	crussiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	cro ient	crussent

10.15 Courir

Infinitif	courir <i>to run</i>
Participe passé	couru
Participe présent	courant
Impératif	cours courons courez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	cours	courais	courus
tu	cours	courais	courus
il/elle	court	courait	courut
nous	courons	courions	courûmes
vous	courez	couriez	courûtes
ils/elles	courent	couraient	coururent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	courrai	courrais
tu	courras	courrais
il/elle	courra	courrait
nous	courrons	courrions
vous	courrez	courriez
ils/elles	courront	courraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	coure	courusse
que tu	coures	courusses
qu'il/elle	coure	courût
que nous	courions	courussions
que vous	couriez	courussiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	courent	courussent

10.16 Se Taire

Infinitive	se taire <i>to keep quiet</i>
Participe passé	tu
Participe présent	se taisant
Impératif	tais-toi taisons-nous taisez-vous

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	me tais	me taisais	me tus
tu	te tais	te taisais	te tus
il/elle	se tait	se taisait	se tut
nous	nous taisons	nous taisions	nous tûmes
vous	vous taisez	vous taisiez	vous tûtes
ils/elles	se taisent	se taisaient	se turent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	me tairai	me tairais
tu	te tairas	te tairais
il/elle	se taira	se tairait
nous	nous tairons	nous tairions
vous	vous tairiez	vous tairiez
ils/elles	se tairont	se tairaient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	me taise	me tusse
que tu	te taises	te tusses
qu'il/elle	se taise	se tût
que nous	nous taisions	nous tussions
que vous	vous taisiez	vous tussiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	se taisent	se tussent

10.17 Group 1: Préférer

Infinitif	préférer <i>to prefer</i>
Participe passé	préféré
Participe présent	préférant
Impératif	préfère préférons préférez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	préfère	préférais	préférai
tu	préfères	préférais	préféras
il/elle	préfère	préférerait	préféra
nous	préférons	préférions	préférâmes
vous	préférez	préfériez	préférâtes
ils/elles	préfèrent	préféraient	préfèrent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	préférerai	préférerais
tu	préfèreras	préfèreras
il/elle	préfèrera	préfèrerait
nous	préférerons	préférerions
vous	préfèrerez	préfèreriez
ils/elles	préfèreront	préfèreraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	préfère	préférasse
que tu	préfères	préférasses
qu'il/elle	préfère	préférât
que nous	préférions	préférassions
que vous	préfériez	préférassiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	préfèrent	préférassent

Only four forms in the **présent** and the **subjonctif présent** are irregular. Note that the second –é– in the **futur** and **conditionnel présent** forms is pronounced in an open manner [ʁeʔeʔeʔe].



Word cloud 6.5 – Répéter, espérer, préférer, etc.

Action words following the –é[er] scheme are frequent. The following list is ordered by frequency of use.

1

répéter	to repeat
espérer	to hope
préférer	to prefer
considérer	to consider
pénétrer	to penetrate
posséder	to possess
inquiéter	to trouble, disturb

2

céder	to give in, collapse
révéler	to reveal
régler	to adjust
libérer	to release, free
régner	to reign
précéder	to arrive ahead of
sécher	to dry

3

succéder	to succeed, follow
recupérer	to get back, recover
repérer	to notice, detect
procéder	to proceed
suggérer	to suggest
opérer	to operate
lécher	to lick

4

exagérer	to exaggerate
refléter	to reflect
célébrer	to celebrate
exaspérer	to exasperate
accélérer	to accelerate
imprégner	to impregnate
désespérer	to despair

5

péter	to fart
dessécher	to dry out
compléter	to complete
tolérer	to tolerate, permit
conférer	to award, impart
accéder	to access
pécher	to commit a sin

6

interpréter	to interpret
décréter	to decree
modérer	to moderate
transférer	to transfer
insérer	to insert
prosperer	to prosper
délibérer	to deliberate

7

aérer	to air, ventilate
adhérer	to adhere, stick
gérer	to manage, handle
persévérer	to persevere
décéder	to die
déposséder	to rob, strip of
dégénérer	to degenerate

8

proliférer	to proliferate, multiply
différer	to differ
excéder	to exceed
digérer	to digest
obséder	to obsess
proférer	to proclaim, declare
altérer	to degrade, spoil

9

énumérer	to enumerate, list
s'avérer	to prove to be
intégrer	to include, incorporate
déléguer	to delegate
téter	to suck (at)
concéder	to concede, allow
léguer	to leave, bequeath

10

vénération	to honour, respect
rapicéer	to patch
reléguer	to relegate
lacérer	to rip, tear
vociférer	to yell, shout
tempérer	to temper, assuage
référer	to refer, relate

11

assécher	to dry up, drain
végéter	to vegetate
réitérer	to reiterate, repeat
bécher	to dig
crécher	to live, stay
aliéner	to alienate
disséquer	to dissect

12

obtempérer	to comply, obey
sidérer	to stupefy
allécher	to tempt, seduce
perpétrer	to perpetrate, commit
blasphémer	to blaspheme
désaltérer	to quench thirst
empiéter	to encroach upon

13

refréner	to restrain
macérer	to macerate
incinérer	to incinerate, burn
rouspéter	to grumble, moan
agglomérer	to aggregate, gather

10.18 Battre

Infinitif	battre <i>to beat</i>
Participe passé	battu
Participe présent	battant
Impératif	bats battons battez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	bats	battais	battis
tu	bats	battais	battis
il/elle	bat	battait	battit
nous	battions	battions	battîmes
vous	battez	battiez	battîtes
ils/elles	battaient	battaient	battirent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	battrai	battrais
tu	battras	battrais
il/elle	battrà	battrait
nous	battrons	battrions
vous	battrez	battriez
ils/elles	battront	battraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	batte	battisse
que tu	battes	battisses
qu'il/elle	batte	battît
que nous	battions	battissions
que vous	battiez	battissiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	battent	battissent

10.19 Suivre

Infinitif	suivre <i>to follow</i>
Participe passé	suivi
Participe présent	suivant
Impératif	suis suivons suivez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	suis	suivais	suivis
tu	suis	suivais	suivis
il/elle	suit	suivait	suivit
nous	suivons	suivions	suivîmes
vous	suivez	suiviez	suivîtes
ils/elles	suivent	suivaient	suivirent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	suivrai	suivrais
tu	suivras	suivrais
il/elle	suivra	suivrait
nous	suivrons	suivrions
vous	suivrez	suivriez
ils/elles	suivront	suivraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	suive	suivisse
que tu	suives	suivisses
qu'il/elle	suive	suivît
que nous	suivions	suivissions
que vous	suiviez	suivissiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	suivent	suivissent

10.20 Group 1: Appeler

Infinitif	appeler <i>to call</i>
Participe passé	appelé
Participe présent	appelant
Impératif	appèle appelons appelez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
j'	appelle	appelais	appelai
tu	appelles	appelais	appelas
il/elle	appelle	appelait	appela
nous	appelons	appelions	appelâmes
vous	appelez	appeliez	appelâtes
ils/elles	appellent	appelaient	appelèrent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
j'	appellerai	appellerais
tu	appelleras	appellerais
il/elle	appellera	appellerait
nous	appellerons	appellerions
vous	appellerez	appelleriez
ils/elles	appelleront	appelleraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que j'	appelle	appelasse
que tu	appelles	appelasses
qu'il/elle	appelle	appelât
que nous	appelions	appelassions
que vous	appeliez	appelassiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	appellent	appelassent

Following the same pattern:

s'appeler	to be called (je m'appelle Marie – my name is Marie)
rappeler	to call back, remind
renouveler	to renew
ruisseler	to flow, drip
chanceler	to stagger, totter
atteler	to harness, yoke
épeler	to spell (out)

10.21 Boire

Infinitif	boire <i>to drink</i>
Participe passé	bu
Participe présent	buvant
Impératif	bois buvons buvez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	bois	buvais	bus
tu	bois	buvais	bus
il/elle	boit	buvait	but
nous	buvons	buvions	bûmes
vous	buvez	buviez	bûtes
ils/elles	boivent	buvaient	burent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	boirai	boirais
tu	boiras	boirais
il/elle	boira	boirait
nous	boirons	boirions
vous	boirez	boiriez
ils/elles	boiront	boiraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	boive	busse
que tu	boives	busses
qu'il/elle	boive	bût
que nous	buvions	bussions
que vous	buviez	bussiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	boivent	bussent

10.22 Naître

Infinitif	naître <i>to be born</i>
Participe passé	né
Participe présent	naissant
Impératif	nais naissons naissez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	nais	naissais	naquis
tu	nais	naissais	naquis
il/elle	naît	naissait	naquit
nous	naissions	naissions	naquîmes
vous	naissez	naissiez	naquîtes
ils/elles	naissent	naissaient	naquirent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	naîtrai	naîtrais
tu	naîtras	naîtrais
il/elle	naîtra	naîtrait
nous	naîtrons	naîtrions
vous	naîtrez	naîtriez
ils/elles	naîtront	naîtraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	naisse	naquisse
que tu	naisses	naquisses
qu'il/elle	naisse	naquît
que nous	naissions	naquissions
que vous	naissiez	naquissiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	naissent	naquissent

10.23 Group 1: Jeter

Infinitif	jeter <i>to throw</i>
Participe passé	jeté
Participe présent	jetant
Impératif	jète jetons jetez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	jette	jetais	jetai
tu	jettes	jetais	jetas
il/elle	jette	jetait	jeta
nous	jetons	jetions	jetâmes
vous	jetez	jetiez	jetâtes
ils/elles	jettent	jetaient	jetèrent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	jetterai	jetterais
tu	jetteras	jetterais
il/elle	jettera	jetterait
nous	jetterons	jetterions
vous	jetterez	jetteriez
ils/elles	jetteront	jetteraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	jette	jetasse
que tu	jettes	jetasses
qu'il/elle	jette	jetât
que nous	jetions	jetassions
que vous	jetiez	jetassiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	jettent	jetassent

Following the same pattern:

rejeter to reject, throw back

projeter to project, launch

feuilleter to leaf through

10.24 Connaître

Infinitif	connaître <i>to know</i>
Participe passé	connu
Participe présent	connaissant
Impératif	connais connaissons connaissez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	connais	connaissais	connus
tu	connais	connaissais	connus
il/elle	connaît	connaissait	connut
nous	connaissions	connaissions	connûmes
vous	connaissez	connaissiez	connûtes
ils/elles	connaissent	connaissaient	connurent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	connaîtrai	connaîtrais
tu	connaîtras	connaîtrais
il/elle	connaîtra	connaîtrait
nous	connaîtrons	connaîtrions
vous	connaîtrez	connaîtriez
ils/elles	connaîtront	connaîtraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	connaisse	connusse
que tu	connaises	connusses
qu'il/elle	connaisse	connût
que nous	connaissons	connussions
que vous	connaissez	connussiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	connaissent	connussent

10.25 Écrire

Infinitif	écrire <i>to write</i>
Participe passé	écrit
Participe présent	écrivant
Impératif	écris écrivons écrivez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
j'	écris	écrivais	écrivis
tu	écris	écrivais	écrivis
il/elle	écrit	écrivait	écrivit
nous	écrivons	écrivions	écrivîmes
vous	écrivez	écriviez	écrivîtes
ils/elles	écrivent	écrivaient	écrivirent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
j'	écrirai	écrivais
tu	écriras	écrivais
il/elle	écrira	écrirait
nous	écrivons	écrivions
vous	écrivez	écriviez
ils/elles	écriront	écriraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que j'	écrive	écrivisse
que tu	écrives	écrivisses
qu'il/elle	écrive	écrivît
que nous	écrivions	écrivissions
que vous	écriviez	écrivissiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	écrivent	écrivissent

10.26 Group 1: Acheter

Infinitif	acheter <i>to buy</i>
Participe passé	acheté
Participe présent	achetant
Impératif	achète achetons achetez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
j'	achète	achetais	achetai
tu	achètes	achetais	achetas
il/elle	achète	achetait	acheta
nous	achetons	achetions	achetâmes
vous	achetez	achetiez	achetâtes
ils/elles	achètent	achetaient	achetèrent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
j'	achèterai	achèterais
tu	achèteras	achèterais
il/elle	achètera	achèterait
nous	achèterons	achèterions
vous	achèterez	achèteriez
ils/elles	achèteront	achèteraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que j'	achète	achetasse
que tu	achètes	achetasses
qu'il/elle	achète	achetât
que nous	achetions	achetassions
que vous	achetiez	achetassiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	achètent	achetassent

Following the same pattern:



Word cloud 6.6 – Acheter, geler, etc.

racheter	to buy (more)
geler	to freeze, be freezing
marteler	to hammer, pound
décélér	to detect, discover
étinceler	to sparkle, shine
harceler	to harass
modélér	to model
peler	to peel, strip
écarteler	to quarter

10.27 Lire

Infinitif	lire <i>to read</i>
Participe passé	lu
Participe présent	lisant
Impératif	lis lisons lisez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	lis	lisais	lus
tu	lis	lisais	lus
il/elle	lit	lisait	lut
nous	lisons	lisions	lûmes
vous	lisez	lisiez	lûtes
ils/elles	lisent	lisaient	lurent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	lirai	lirais
tu	liras	lirais
il/elle	lira	lirait
nous	lirons	lirions
vous	lirez	liriez
ils/elles	liront	liraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	lise	lusse
que tu	lises	lusses
qu'il/elle	lise	lût
que nous	lisions	lussions
que vous	lisiez	lussiez
qu'ils/elles	lisent	lussent

10.28 Conduire

Infinitif	conduire <i>to drive</i>
Participe passé	conduit
Participe présent	conduisant
Impératif	conduis conduisons conduisez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	conduis	conduisais	conduisis
tu	conduis	conduisais	conduisis
il/elle	conduit	conduisait	conduisit
nous	conduisons	conduisions	conduisîmes
vous	conduisez	conduisiez	conduisîtes
ils/elles	conduisent	conduisaient	conduisirent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	conduirai	conduirais
tu	conduiras	conduirais
il/elle	conduira	conduirait
nous	conduirons	conduirions
vous	conduirez	conduiriez
ils/elles	conduiront	conduiraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	conduise	conduisisse
que tu	conduises	conduisisses
qu'il/elle	conduise	conduisît
que nous	conduisions	conduisissions
que vous	conduisiez	conduisissiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	conduisent	conduisissent

10.29 Group 1: Payer

Infinitif	payer <i>to pay</i>
Participe passé	payé
Participe présent	payant
Impératif	paie payons payez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	paie	payais	payai
tu	paies	payais	payas
il/elle	paie	payait	paya
nous	payons	payions	payâmes
vous	payez	payiez	payâtes
ils/elles	paient	payaient	payèrent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	paierai	paierais
tu	paieras	paierais
il/elle	paiera	paierait
nous	paierons	paierions
vous	paieriez	paieriez
ils/elles	paieront	paieraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	paie	payasse
que tu	paies	payasses
qu'il/elle	paie	payât
que nous	payions	payassions
que vous	payiez	payassiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	paient	payassent

Following the same pattern:



Word cloud 6.7 – Payer, essayer, balayer, etc.

1

essayer	to try
monnayer	to make money out of
effrayer	to frighten, terrify
balayer	to sweep
rayer	to eliminate, draw lines
bégayer	to stutter
égayer	to amuse, brighten up

2

relayer	to take over from
déblayer	to clear up, out
délayer	to mix, dilute
embrayer	to put in gear
enrayer	to jam, stop

3

frayer	to clear, open up
défrayer	to be subject of gossip
débrayer	to depress the clutch pedal
pagayer	to paddle
zézayer	to lisp, have a lisp

10.30 Valoir

Infinitif	valoir <i>to be worth, to cost</i>
Participe passé	valu
Participe présent	valant
Impératif	vaux valons valez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	vaux	valais	valus
tu	vaux	valais	valus
il/elle	vaut	valait	valut
nous	valons	valions	valûmes
vous	valez	valiez	valûtes
ils/elles	valent	valaient	valurent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	vaudrai	vaudrais
tu	vaudras	vaudrais
il/elle	vaudra	vaudrait
nous	vaudrons	vaudrions
vous	vaudrez	vaudriez
ils/elles	vaudront	vaudraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	vaille	valusse
que tu	vailles	valusses
qu'il/elle	vaille	valût
que nous	valions	valussions
que vous	valiez	valussiez
qu'ils/elles	vaillent	valussent

10.31 Conclure

Infinitif	conclure <i>to conclude; to bring to a close</i>
Participe passé	conclu
Participe présent	conquant
Impératif	conclus concluons concluez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	conclus	concluais	conclus
tu	conclus	concluais	conclus
il/elle	conclut	concluait	conclut
nous	concluons	concluions	conclûmes
vous	concluez	concluiez	conclûtes
ils/elles	concluent	concluaient	conclurent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	conclurai	conclurais
tu	concluras	conclurais
il/elle	conclura	conclurait
nous	conclurons	conclurions
vous	conclurez	concluriez
ils/elles	concluront	concluraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	conclue	conclusse
que tu	conclues	conclusses
qu'il/elle	conclue	conclût
que nous	concluions	conclussions
que vous	concluiez	conclussiez
qu'ils/elles	concluent	conclussent

10.32 Group 1: Envoyer

Infinitif	envoyer <i>to send</i>
Participe passé	envoyé
Participe présent	envoyant
Impératif	envoie envoyons envoyez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
j'	envoie	envoyais	envoyai
tu	envoies	envoyais	envoyas
il/elle	envoie	envoyait	envoya
nous	envoyons	envoyions	envoyâmes
vous	envoyez	envoyiez	envoyâtes
ils/elles	envoient	envoyaient	envoyèrent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
j'	enverrai	enverrais
tu	enverras	enverrais
il/elle	enverra	enverrait
nous	enverrons	enverrions
vous	enverrez	enverriez
ils/elles	enverront	enverraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que j'	envoie	envoyasse
que tu	envoies	envoyasses
qu'il/elle	envoie	envoyât
que nous	envoyions	envoyassions
que vous	envoyiez	envoyassiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	envoient	envoyassent

Following the same pattern:



Word cloud 6.8 – Envoyer, employer, renvoyer, etc.

1

employer	to employ, use
renvoyer	to send again, back
noyer	to drown
déployer	to deploy, roll out
nettoyer	to clean
aboyer	to bark
tutoyer	to be on first-name terms

2

vouvoyer	to use 'vous' with
tournoyer	to swirl, whirl
foudroyer	to strike
broyer	to grind, crush
côtoyer	to mix, rub shoulders with
ployer	to bow, bend
s'apitoyer	to feel pity

3

octroyer	to grant
rougeoyer	to glow (fire)
flamboyer	to flame
louvoyer	to hedge, equivocate
ondoyer	to undulate, ripple
fourvoyer	to mislead, misguide
choyer	to pamper, cosset
convoyer	to escort

4

larmoyer	to cry, snivel
rudoyer	to mistreat
guerroyer	to make war
soudoyer	to bribe
festoyer	to feast, celebrate
coudoyer	to rub shoulder with

10.33 Craindre

Infinitif	craindre <i>to fear</i>
Participe passé	craint
Participe présent	craignant
Impératif	crains craignons craignez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	crains	craignais	craignis
tu	crains	craignais	craignis
il/elle	craint	craignait	craignit
nous	craignons	craignions	craignîmes
vous	craignez	craigniez	craignîtes
ils/elles	craignent	craignaient	craignirent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	craindrai	craignrais
tu	craindras	craignrais
il/elle	craindra	craignrait
nous	craignons	craindrions
vous	craindrez	craignriez
ils/elles	craindront	craindraient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	craigne	craignisse
que tu	craignes	craignisses
qu'il/elle	craigne	craignît
que nous	craignons	craignissions
que vous	craigniez	craignissiez
qu'ils/ qu'elles	craignent	craignissent

10.34 Plaire

Infinitif	plaire <i>to please</i>
Participe passé	plu
Participe présent	plaisant
Impératif	plais plaisons plaisez

	Présent	Imparfait	Passé simple
je	plais	plaisais	plus
tu	plais	plaisais	plus
il/elle	plaît	plaisait	plut
nous	plaisons	plaisions	plûmes
vous	plaisez	plaisiez	plûtes
ils/elles	plaisent	plaisaient	plurent

	Futur	Conditionnel présent
je	plairai	plairais
tu	plairas	plairais
il/elle	plaira	plairait
nous	plairons	plairions
vous	plairez	plairiez
ils/elles	plairont	plairaient

	Subjonctif présent	Subjonctif imparfait
que je	plaise	plusse
que tu	plaises	plusses
qu'il/elle	plaise	plût
que nous	plaisions	plussions
que vous	plaisiez	plussiez
qu'ils/elles	plaisent	plussent

10.35 Feminine nouns ending in –ion

Words in **bold** are masculine (un avion, le million, le camion, le lion, le champion, un espion).

1-100

question, impression, attention, conversation, direction, occasion, situation, condition, passion, action, **avion**, expression, opération, intention, position, décision, émotion, **million**, région, relation, **camion**, imagination, mission, illusion, nation, sensation, explication, révolution, disposition, libération, opinion, division, solution, vision, satisfaction, organisation, fonction, génération, conviction, réflexion, information, précaution, religion, tradition, population, discussion, **lion**, admiration, apparition, respiration, affection, allusion, réaction, occupation, ambition, instruction, union, réunion, possession, éducation, communication, administration, collection, explosion, hésitation, exception, télévision, précision, station, construction, exécution, disparition, dimension, vocation, réputation, section, déclaration, pression, agitation, discrétion, conclusion, tentation, confusion, révélation, considération, proposition, inscription, civilisation, pension, permission, représentation, création, invitation, inspiration, provision, protection, composition, commission, institution, manifestation

101-200

déception, perfection, réception, signification, excitation, édition, légion, indignation, exaltation, intervention, application, profession, obligation, invention, tension, destruction, observation, expédition, **champion**, production, circulation, séparation, résolution, évolution, concession, élection, distraction, notion, exposition, aviation, humiliation,

protestation, communion, contradiction, version, répétition,
 délégation, proportion, convention, vibration, installation,
 collaboration, indication, rédaction, obstination,
 démonstration, formation, préoccupation, décoration,
 exclamation, irruption, conception, description, opposition,
 succession, **espion**, négociation, invasion, traduction,
 obsession, intuition, provocation, soumission, émission,
 fraction, consolation, prétention, association, préparation,
 méditation, concentration, arrestation, appréhension,
 procession, destination, distinction, évasion, autorisation,
 intonation, compréhension, confession, résignation,
 approbation, consommation, contemplation, addition,
 végétation, punition, malédiction, inspection, irritation,
 séduction, détonation, constitution, interrogation, accusation,
 recommandation, distribution, condamnation, transition

201-300

évocation, attribution, participation, dérision, munition,
 impulsion, présentation, complication, dépression, traction,
 animation, consultation, bénédiction, ration, citation,
 résurrection, dévotion, ascension, stupéfaction, objection,
 reproduction, réparation, fabrication, suspension, illustration,
 suggestion, capitulation, interprétation, attraction, promotion,
 fondation, portion, fascination, compassion, imitation,
 publication, définition, prévision, coopération, orientation,
 oppression, exploitation, désolation, constellation,
 justification, interdiction, restriction, projection, progression,
 transmission, jubilation, adhésion, **pion**, effusion, affirmation,
 plantation, précipitation, variation, diversion, transformation,
 aspiration, agression, correction, articulation, ondulation,
 mention, superstition, fusion, partition, domination,
 compensation, fréquentation, indiscretion, interruption,
 hallucination, habitation, convulsion, démission,
 réconciliation, navigation, location, supposition, contribution,
 affectation, confirmation, répulsion, réprobation, restauration,

incarnation, fiction, félicitation, adoration, inflexion,
constatation, sanction, détermination, compétition,
supplication, embarcation, lamentation

301-400

profusion, faction, adaptation, acclamation, inquisition,
persécution, incompréhension, excursion, cohésion,
exploration, abomination, consternation, privation, aberration,
exaspération, acceptation, initiation, mobilisation, mutation,
injonction, incursion, utilisation, modification, reconstruction,
pulsation, illumination, alimentation, proclamation,
réalisation, dispersion, allocution, répression, érection,
lampion, appréciation, augmentation, spéculation, crispation,
damnation, exclusion, conversion, rébellion, frustration,
accumulation, acquisition, revendication, révision, inondation,
intrusion, improvisation, perception, insurrection, contagion,
extinction, inversion, négation, convocation, rénovation,
palpitation, abnégation, corruption, rotation, **fanion**,
confection, décomposition, coalition, vérification,
confrontation, pénétration, évacuation, ostentation,
délectation, imprécation, appellation, conservation,
contestatation, reddition, prédiction, sommation, transpiration,
réduction, **talion**, prédilection, élévation, nomination, torsion,
répartition, liquidation, récrimination, accélération,
émanation, dissertation, réclusion, introduction, abstraction,
prostitution, digestion, contraction, potion, agrégation

401-500

légation, expérimentation, conspiration, dégradation,
récitation, adoption, vénération, détention, érudition, équation,
rémission, infusion, extension, inauguration, réquisition,
exhibition, corporation, affliction, bastion, circonspection,
prospection, aversion, **fion**, **scorpion**, migration, audition,

célébration, prémonition, sélection, reconstitution,
investigation, figuration, inclination, mutilation, suspicion,
prévention, incantation, dénégation, dissolution, ovation,
expansion, dénonciation, absolution, prescription, procuration,
commisération, déformation, narration, conjonction,
documentation, désertion, amélioration, déposition, friction,
exagération, multiplication, fédération, modération, inaction,
salutation, démolition, modulation, filiation, perte,
fortification, déjection, dissimulation, sollicitation, prestation,
session, abjection, émulation, perquisition, inflation,
substitution, circoncision, gestion, inattention, déportation,
contorsion, anticipation, caution, collision, désillusion,
divagation, importation, manipulation, déduction, indécision,
ruminant, énumération, coordination, machination,
agglomération, éclosion, omission, option, éruption,
suppression, persuasion

10.36 Masculine nouns ending in –ism

organisme, mécanisme, communisme, égoïsme, mutisme, socialisme, capitalisme, fascisme, optimisme, cynisme, héroïsme, réalisme, scepticisme, catéchisme, tourisme, christianisme, marxisme, romantisme, rhumatisme, patriotisme, journalisme, snobisme, érotisme, conformisme, nationalisme, lyrisme, racisme, fanatisme, exotisme, catholicisme, humanisme, pessimisme, national-socialisme, sadisme, surréalisme, idéalisme, mysticisme, bouddhisme, dynamisme, exorcisme, fatalisme, athéisme, nazisme, antisémitisme, vandalisme, antagonisme, mimétisme, euphémisme, libéralisme, gaullisme, matérialisme, prisme, impérialisme, paludisme, individualisme, puritanisme, séisme, atavisme, nihilisme, terrorisme, automatisme, judaïsme, narcissisme, psychisme, loyalisme, modernisme, ostracisme, esthétisme, traumatisme, bolchevisme, cyclisme, stalinisme, masochisme, gâtisme, alcoolisme, strabisme, totalitarisme, syndicalisme, banditisme, aphorisme, anticommunisme, anachronisme, attentisme, schisme, exhibitionnisme, despotisme, symbolisme, protestantisme, obscurantisme, altruisme, militantisme, ascétisme, paternalisme, somnambulisme, infantilisme, colonialisme, chauvinisme, machinisme, parasitisme, marxisme-léninisme

Index

49ers 100, 186, 265, 321,
380

AB Player 34

Abortion 233

Acheter 317, 528

Acrobatics 264

Action Word + Action
Word 383, 430, 481

Action words 66, 72

148-196 321

1-49 100

197-245 380

50-98 186

99-147 265

group 1 246, 316

group 1 preview 110

group 1, frequent 264

group 2 362

group 3 317

important 390, 431

présent 269, 327

timeline 79

Adjectives 62, 116, 290,
402, 439

-ain, -ein 335

consonant 209

demonstrative 120

ending in -e 211

irregular 212

-on, -en 336

possessive 64, 118, 276

Adverbs 128, 214, 293,
339

Advice 324

Agir 362

composed tenses 369

présent 109

simple tenses 368

Aller 270, 313

composed tenses 181,
314

présent 110

s'en 498

subjonctif 253

Appartenir 360

Appeler 317, 520

Apprendre 426

Articles 53, 199

definite 122

indefinite 124

partitive 125

Attendre 496

Avoir 76

biotope 77

- composed tenses 90, 102
- future 81
- imperfect tense 80
- present conditional 83
- present subjunctive 84
- present tense 76
- simple tenses 86
- subjonctif 253

- Barack Obama 225
- Battre** 518
- Beau 337
- Boire 522
- Bonjour 146
- Brexit 483

- C'est 166
- Capitalization 343
- Caresser** 111, 246
 - composed tenses 263
 - présent 109
 - simple tenses 262
- Catholic nuns 241
- Celui – celle 449
- Champagne 42
- Climate Change 153
- Coach 273
- Comparisons 454
- Composed tenses 95, 103, 185
- avoir 95, 102
- être 184
- faire l'amour 98, 149
- Comprendre** 426
- Conclure** 536
- Conduire** 531
- Conjunctions 129
- Connaître** 329, 526
- Considérer** 317
- Contraction 132, 133, 139
- Corkscrew 161
- Courir** 511
- Couvrir** 476
- Craindre** 540
- Croire** 329, 510

- Days of the week 296
- de 216
- Découvrir** 476
- Désirer** 56
- Devenir** 360
- Devoir** 327, 495
 - future stem 192
- Dire** 270, 473
- dont 399
- Dormir** 320
- Double Pronouns 393
- Écrire** 330, 527
- Emphasis 406

- en 332, 397
- Endings
 - group 1 261
- Endormir, s'** 319
- Entreprendre** 426
- Envoyer** 317, 537
 - future stem 192
- ES rule 62
- Être** 164
 - action words 183
 - biotope 167
 - composed tenses 184
 - future 173
 - imperfect tense 172
 - present 109
 - present conditional 175, 176
 - simple tenses 179
 - subjonctif 253
 - timeline 172
- Faire** 94, 242
 - expressions with 97, 244
 - l'amour 98
 - présent 109
 - subjonctif 252
- Falloir** 475
 - future stem 192
- fare 432
- Finir 362
- Formal 'you' 275
 - adjectives 275
 - past participles 275
- Free-Climbing 147
- Fuck the rabbit 90
- Futur proche 315
- Future 224
 - irregular stems 192
- Future perfect 224, 361, 369, 375, 380
- Future Stems 268
 - irregular 478
- Gérondif 325
- Gerund 325
- God 29
- h
 - aspirated 451
 - mute 451
- Hardcore 59
- If...then 392
- il y a 197
- il y a eu 197
- il y aura 197
- il y aurait 197
- il y avait 197
- Imparfait

- versus passé composé 184
- Imperative 324
- Imperfect 224
- Imperfect subjunctive 224
- Intervenir** 360

- Jeter** 317, 524
- Jokers** 50, 127, 213, 292, 338, 404, 438
- Junk Food 305

- Lequel, laquelle 446
- Lire** 270, 530

- Manger** 317, 502
- Master Class 48, 161, 198, 240, 272, 311
- Medicine
 - "aesthetic" 349
- Mener** 507
- Mentir** 319
- Mettre** 328, 499
- Months of the year 296
- Mourir** 329, 506
 - future stem 192

- Naître** 523
- Negation 111, 194
- Newspaper article 410

- Nouns 60, 121, 200, 286, 334
 - eau, -eu, -au 207
 - feminine 203
 - feminine, -ion 542
 - masculine 286
 - masculine, -ism 546
 - nationalities 200
 - ou, -al, -ail 289
 - s, -x, -z 207
- Nourrir 362
- Numbers
 - 1-12 140
 - 13-79 218
 - 80-100 294
 - cardinal 140

- Obtenir** 360
 - on 89, 193
- Orders 324
- Ordinal Numbers 408
- Ouvrir** 476

- Participé présent 325
 - pitfalls 387
- Partir** 319
- Passé composé
 - versus imparfait 184
- Past conditional 224

- Past participles 91, 98, 433
- Past perfect 224
- Past perfect subjunctive 224
- Past subjunctive 224
- Payer** 317, 532
- Peanuts 49
- Perfect 224, 361, 369, 375, 380, 434
- Personal object pronouns 280
 - direct 280
 - indirect 281
- Personal pronouns 279
- Personal subject pronouns 279
- Petting 246
- Plaire** 541
- Pleuvoir**
 - future stem 192
- Politeness 90
- POPs 56
- Possessive adjectives 276
- Possessive pronouns 443
- Pouvoir** 270, 474
 - future stem 192
 - subjonctif 252
- Power-Listening 34
- Préférer** 513
- Prendre** 327, 426
- Prepositions 131, 215, 341
 - à 133
 - de 132
- Present 224
 - importance 269
- Present conditional 224
- Present participle 325
- Preterit perfect 224
- Prévenir** 360
- Promener** 317
- Pronominal Action Words 372
- Pronouns 55, 135
 - double 393
 - impératif 397
 - indefinite 341
 - object pronouns 135, 280
 - personal 279
 - personal object 56
 - personal subject 56
 - possessive 443
 - reflexive pronouns 283
 - relative 137
 - subject pronouns 135, 279
 - two pronouns 285
- Pronunciation 27
 - pitfalls 126
- PSPs 56

que 137, 437

Quel 445

Quelqu'un 342

Quelque chose 342

Question words 221

Questions 219

est-ce que 220

inversion 220

qui 137

Reading the News 143,
225, 298, 343

Recevoir 501

Redevenir 360

Réfléchir 362

Reflexive object pronouns
283

Relative clause 137

Reprendre 426

Résister 56

Results & Preview 148,
227, 299, 345

Retenir 360

Réussir 362

Revenir 360

Rire 330, 500

S'envoyer en l'air 379

Savoir 271, 493

future stem 192

présent 110

subjonctif 252

Se caresser 372

Sentir 319

Sequence of Tenses 388

Servir 319

Sextets 67

Sexual connotation 183

S'il te plaît 222

S'il vous plaît 222

Silent letters

b 410

c 141

d 455

f 223

g 456

k 410

l 343

m 456

p 457

q 410

r 297

s 457

t 458

x 458

z 459

Simple past 224

Snowden 465

Sortir 319

- Souffrir** 476
- Soutenir** 360
- Souvenir, se** 360
- Subjonctif 316, 362, 429, 478
- Subjunctive 245
- Sucer** 256, 317, 497
- Suivre** 328, 519
- Superlatives 454
- Surprendre** 426
- Taire, se** 512
- Teacher 240
- Tenir** 271, 360
- Time
telling 140
- Timeline 67, 107
- Toolbox 88, 107, 143, 223
- Tourism 417
- Tout 440
- Tout le monde 342
- Turbo Master Class 48
- Valoir** 535
- Venir** 271, 359
future stem 192
- Vieux 337
- Virgin 311
- Vivre** 329, 505
- Voir** 271, 494
future stem 192
- Vouloir** 270, 425
future stem 192
subjunctif 253
- Word classes 115
- Words 31, 145, 236, 307, 353, 420, 469, 485
- Worksheet 38
- y 331, 395
- Y avoir 196



gigafrench.com
Download Free PDF

Marie de France

GigaFrench / 2016~4

God, abortion and climate change

GigaFrench is for dedicated students. The free multimedia fast track course into the heart of French and the French people offers a refreshingly new approach to one of the most beautiful languages in the world. Your enthusiasm for exploring new worlds will finally meet efficiency. If you consent to daily study sessions of at least 30 minutes, GigaFrench will be yours.

Find the free PDF, free audio files and quick smartphone checks at www.GigaFrench.com

Print copies of GigaFrench are available at Amazon.



FLYING PUBLISHER

GIGA
FRENCH

ISBN 978-3-924774-97-4



9 783924 774974 >